

## California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### Event Data Recorders

**This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR).** The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

### Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

### California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/)

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

## A Few Words About Safety

---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:



You **WILL** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.



You **CAN** be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.



You **CAN** be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

# 2015 ODYSSEY Online Reference Owner's Manual

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual (including the front cover) represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

This owner's manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

## ☞ Safe Driving P. 25

For Safe Driving P. 26      Seat Belts P. 30      Airbags P. 39

## ☞ Instrument Panel P. 69

Indicators P. 70      Gauges and Displays P. 92

## ☞ Controls P. 107

Clock P. 108      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 110  
Security System P. 135      Opening and Closing the Windows P. 138  
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 158  
Heating and Cooling\* P. 194

## ☞ Features P. 205

Audio System P. 206      Audio System Basic Operation P. 211, 234  
Rear Entertainment System\* P. 276      Customized Features P. 295

## ☞ Driving P. 395

Before Driving P. 396      Towing a Trailer P. 401  
Rearview Camera P. 445      Refueling P. 446

## ☞ Maintenance P. 451

Before Performing Maintenance P. 452      Maintenance Minder™ P. 455  
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 486  
Remote Control and Wireless Headphone Care\* P. 502

## ☞ Handling the Unexpected P. 509

Tools P. 510      If a Tire Goes Flat P. 511  
Overheating P. 526      Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 528  
When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate P. 540

## ☞ Information P. 541

Specifications P. 542      Identification Numbers P. 544  
Warranty Coverages P. 549      Authorized Manuals P. 551

**Note: All page numbers referenced in this document are hyperlinked.**

## **2015 ODYSSEY Online Reference Owner's Manual**

Child Safety P. 52

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 66

Safety Labels P. 67

Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 121

Opening and Closing the Moonroof\* P. 141

Adjusting the Seats P. 161

Climate Control System\* P. 198

Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors P. 127

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 142

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 176

Audio Error Messages P. 267

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver\* P. 325    Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® P. 327, 360    Compass\* P. 392

General Information on the Audio System P. 272

## **Contents**

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 25

Instrument Panel P. 69

Controls P. 107

Features P. 205

Driving P. 395

When Driving P. 407

Fuel Economy P. 449

Braking P. 436

Accessories and Modifications P. 450

Parking Your Vehicle P. 440

Maintenance P. 451

Maintenance Under the Hood P. 463

Checking and Maintaining Tires P. 490

Heating and Cooling System\*/Climate Control System\* Maintenance P. 504

Replacing Light Bulbs P. 475

Battery P. 499

Remote Transmitter Care P. 500

Cleaning P. 505

Handling the Unexpected P. 509

Engine Does Not Start P. 520

Fuses P. 533

Jump Starting P. 523

Emergency Towing P. 539

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 525

Information P. 541

Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 545

Customer Service Information P. 552

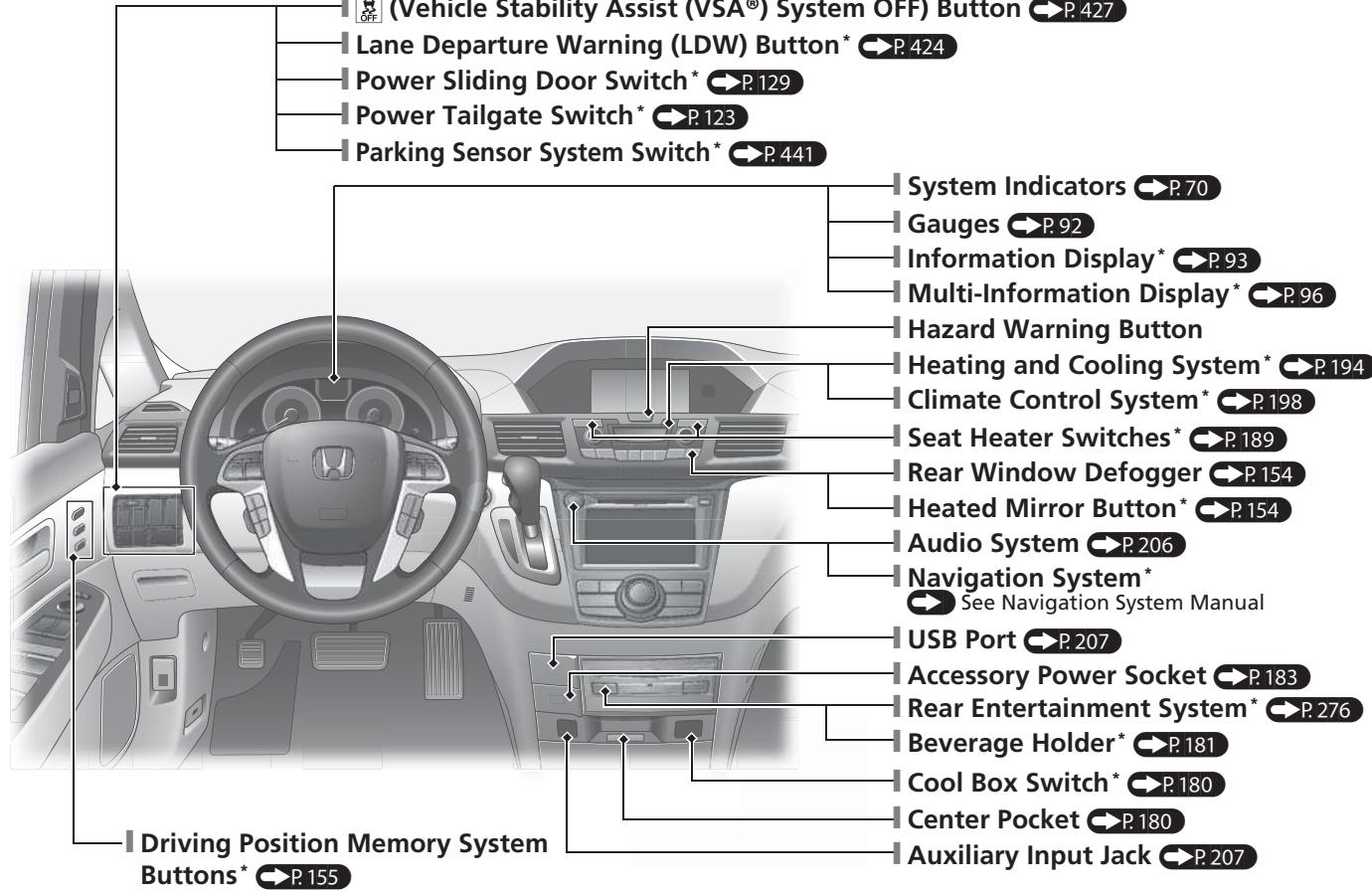
Reporting Safety Defects P. 546

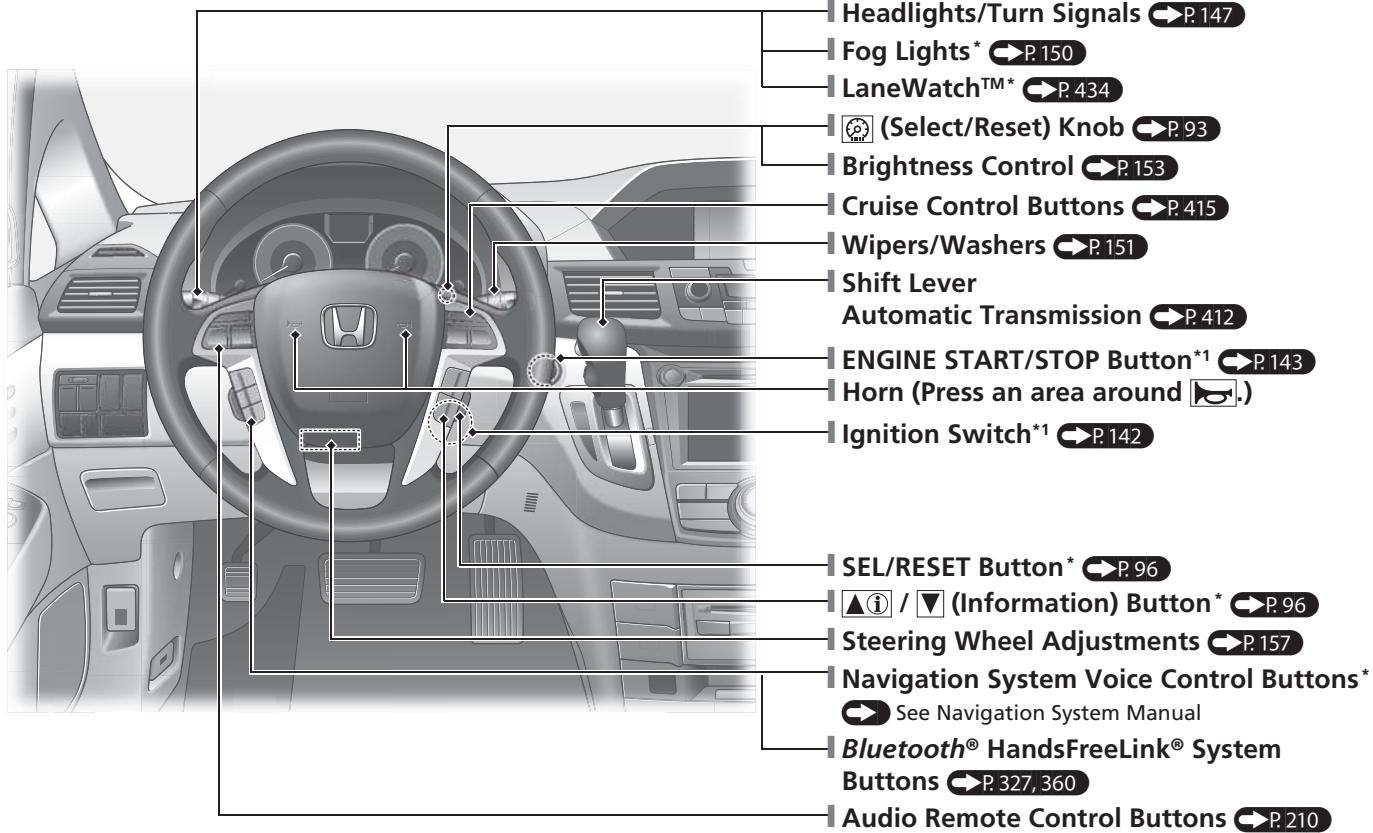
Emissions Testing P. 547

Index P. 553



# Visual Index

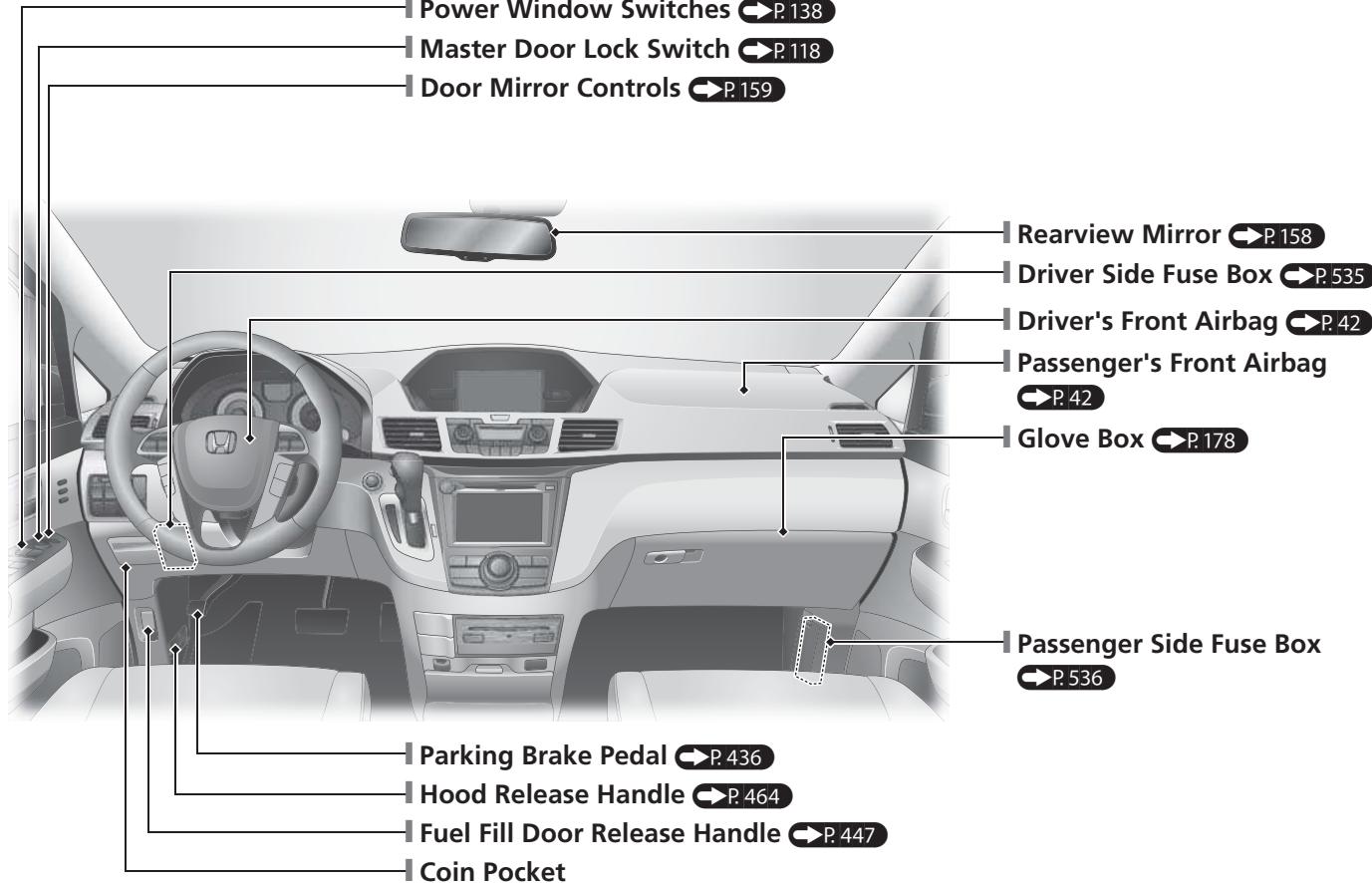


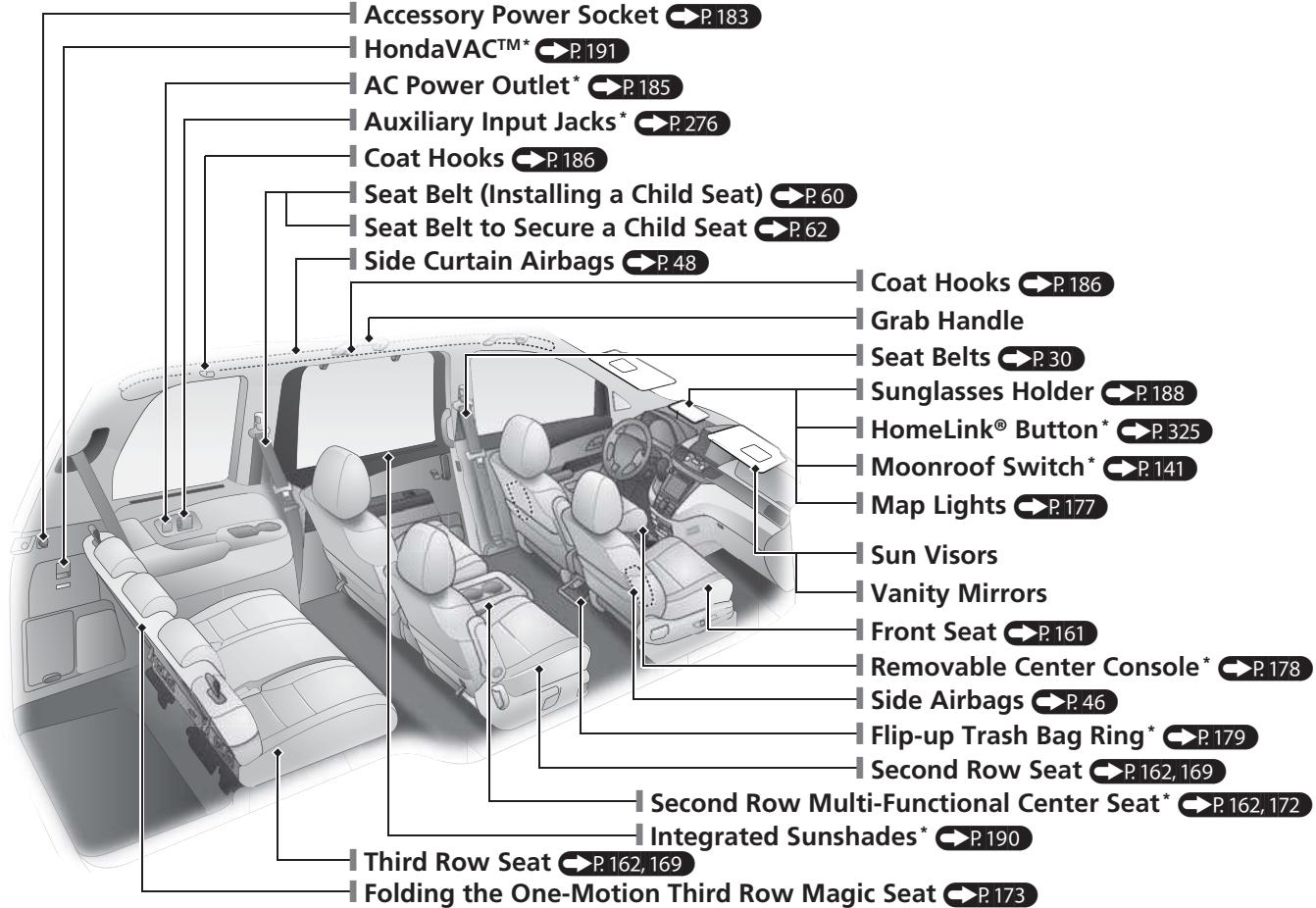


\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



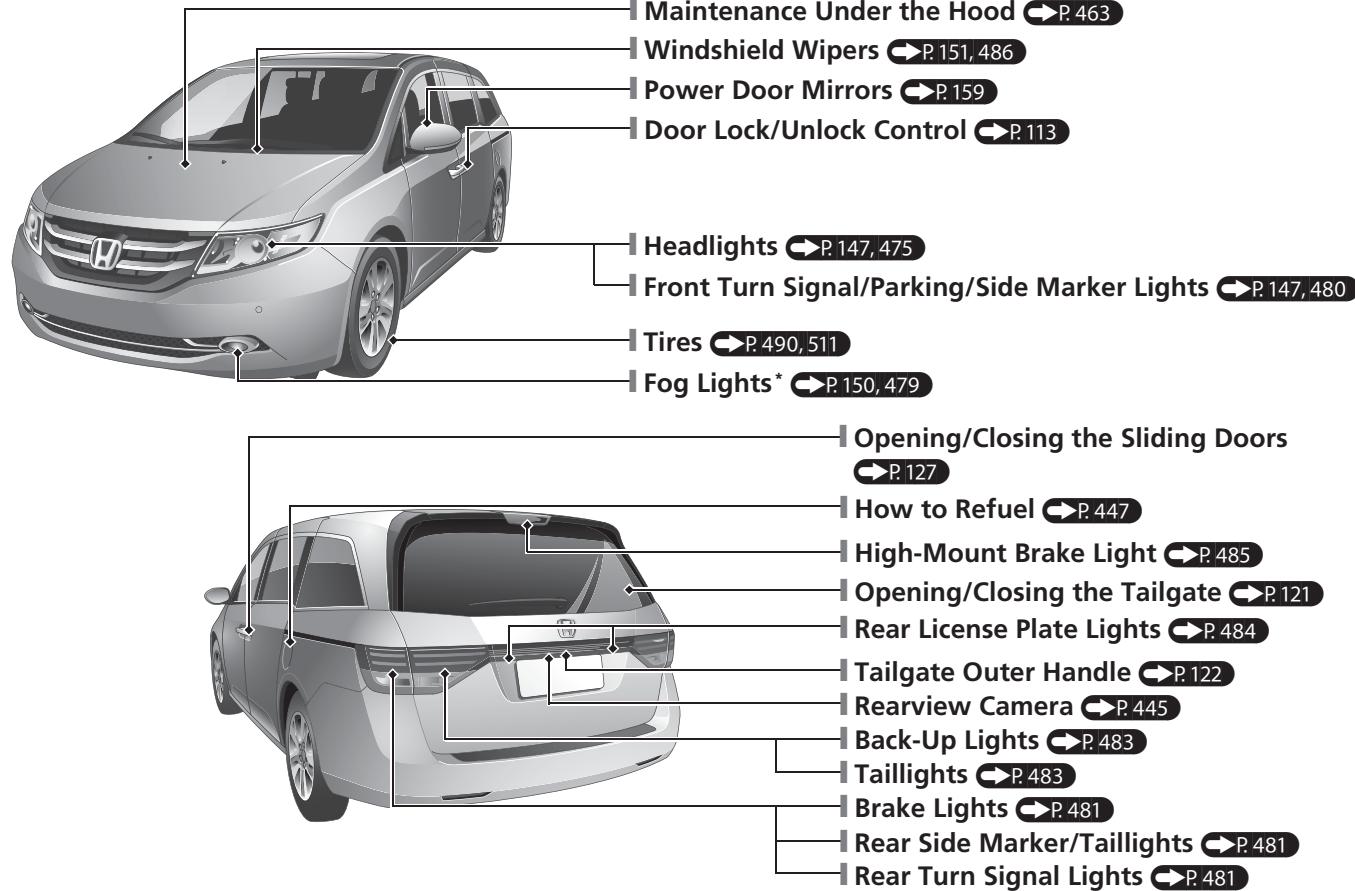
# Visual Index







# Visual Index

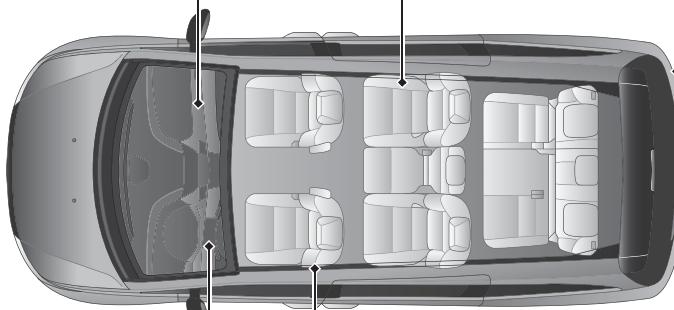




# Safe Driving ➔ P.25

## Airbags ➔ P.39

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.



## Child Safety ➔ P.52

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Smaller children should be properly restrained in a forward-facing child seat.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard ➔ P.66

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts ➔ P.30

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



## Before Driving Checklist ➔ P.29

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



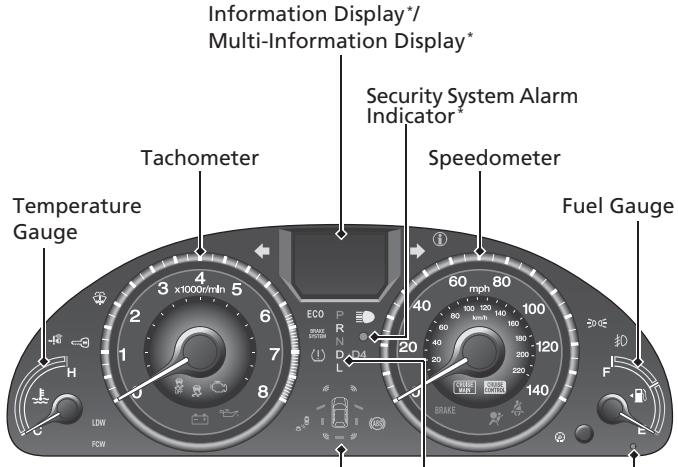
# Instrument Panel

P.69

## Gauges P.92 / Information Display\* P.93 / Multi-Information Display\* P.96 / System Indicators P.70

### System Indicators

	Malfunction Indicator Lamp
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator
	Charging System Indicator
	Daytime Running Lights Indicator*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) System Indicator
	VSA® OFF Indicator
	Power Tailgate Indicator*
	Power Tailgate Indicator*
	Smart Entry System Indicator*
	Forward Collision Warning (FCW) Indicator*
	Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Indicator*
	Brake System Indicator (Amber)
	Brake System Indicator (Amber)
	Blind Spot Information System Indicator*



### System Indicators

	Immobilizer System Indicator
	Fuel Economy Indicator
	TPMS Indicator*
	Maintenance Minder Indicator*
	Washer Level Indicator*

### Lights Indicators

	Lights On Indicator
	High Beam Indicator
	Fog Light Indicator*

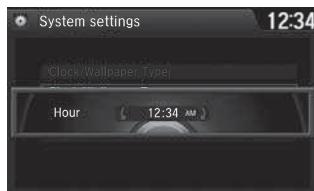
### System Indicators

	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
	Low Tire Pressure Indicator*/ Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator*
	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
	CRUISE MAIN Indicator
	CRUISE CONTROL Indicator
	Starter System Indicator*
	Power Sliding Door Indicator*
	System Message Indicator*
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator



# Controls

## Clock

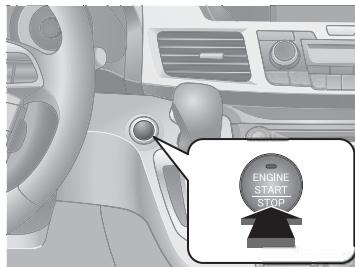


- 1 Enter the **Clock Adjustment** screen.  
2 Adjusting the Clock [P. 108](#)
- 2 Rotate to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate to change minute, then press .

### Models with navigation system

The navigation system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

## ENGINE START/STOP Button\*



Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.

## Turn Signals

### Turn Signal Control Lever

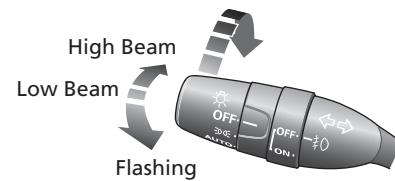
Right



## Lights

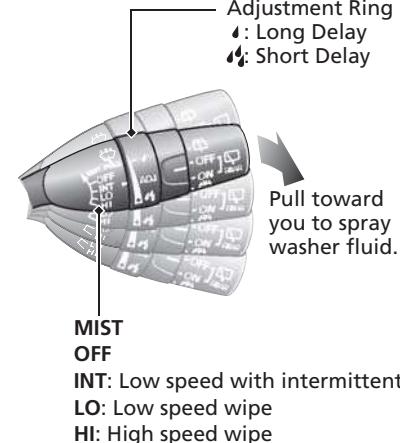
## Lights

### Light Control Switches



## Wipers and Washers

### Wiper/Washer Control Lever

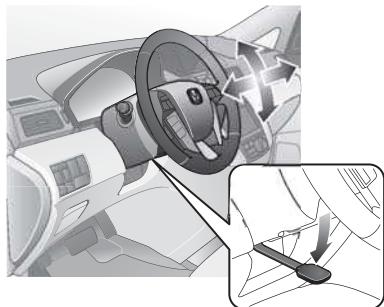


INT: Low speed with intermittent  
LO: Low speed wipe  
HI: High speed wipe



## Steering Wheel ➔ P.157

- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then pull up the lever back in place.



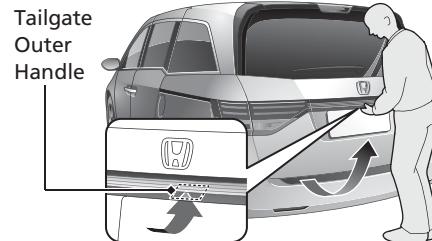
## Power Sliding Door\*

➔ P.129

- When the main switch is **ON**, the power sliding door opens and closes automatically when you press **OPEN** or **CLOSE** side of the switch.



## Tailgate ➔ P.121



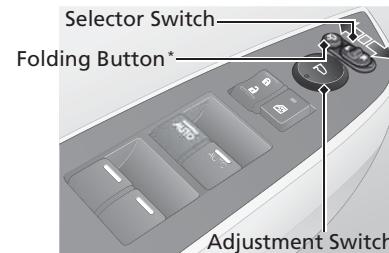
- To open the tailgate, press and hold the tailgate outer handle, and lift up.

### Models with the power tailgate

- Press the power tailgate button on the instrument panel or the smart entry remote to open and close the power tailgate.

## Power Door Mirrors ➔ P.159

- With the ignition switch in **ON** \*<sup>1</sup>, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button\* to fold in and out the door mirrors.



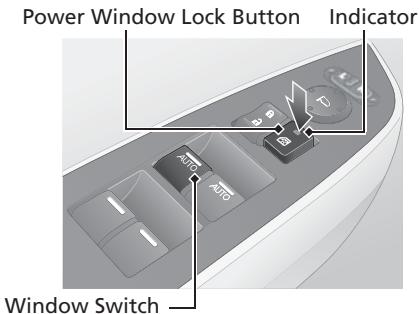
### Models with driving position memory system

- Place the selector switch in the **L** or **R** position to use the reverse tilt door mirror feature.



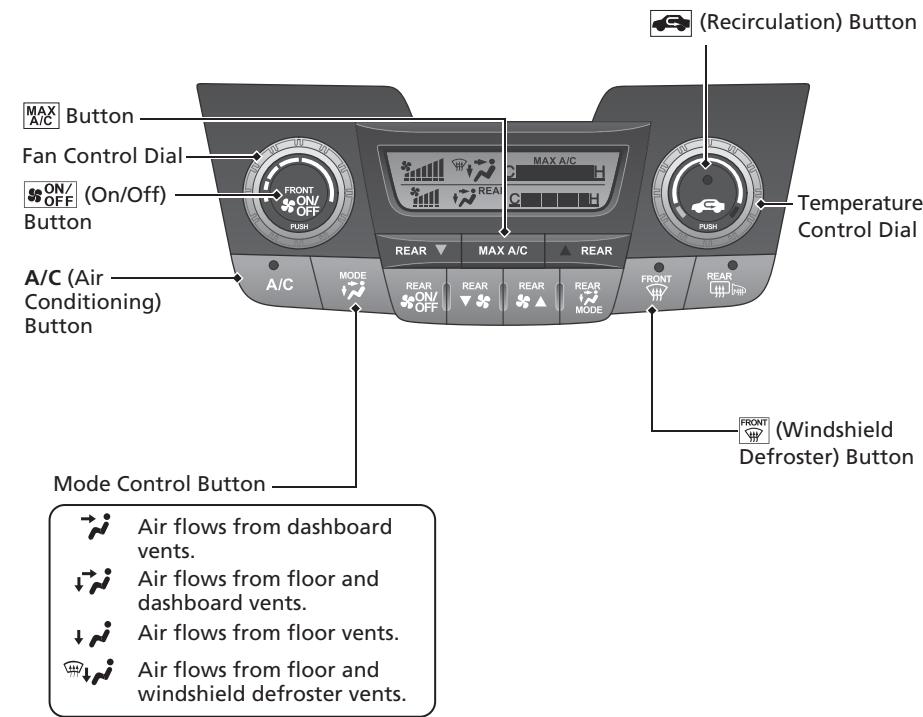
## Power Windows ► P.138

- With the ignition switch in ON \*<sup>1</sup>, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the OFF position, the passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the ON position (indicator is on), the passenger's window switch is disabled.



## Heating and Cooling System\* ► P.194

- Rotate the fan control dial to adjust the fan speed.
- Press the Mode button to select the vents air flows from.
- Rotate the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature.
- Use the button for maximum cool setting.
- Press the button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the button to defrost the windshield.



\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



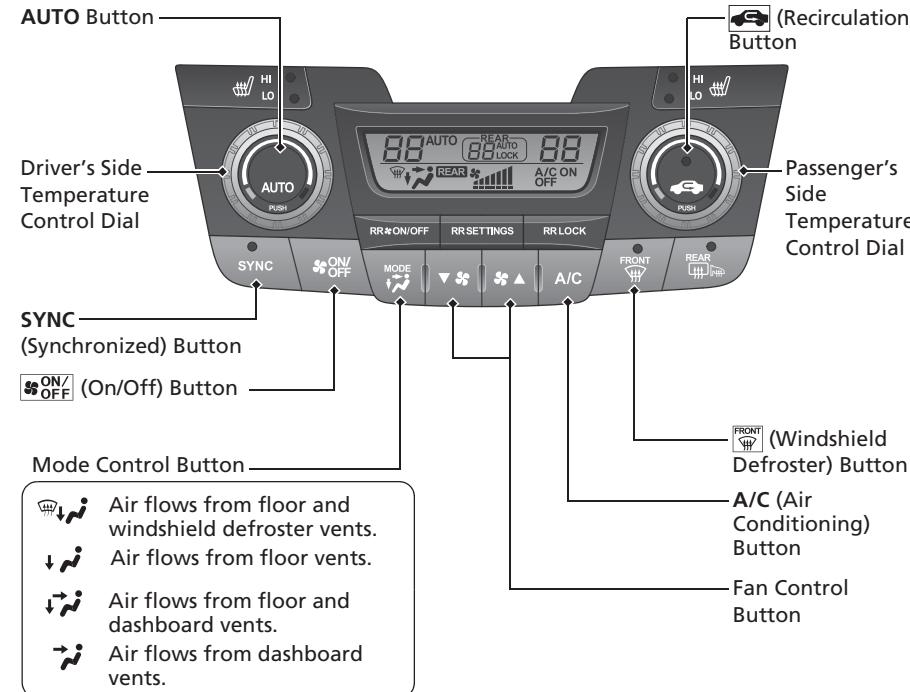
# Climate Control System\*

P.198

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the **ON/OFF** button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the **FRONT** button to defrost the windshield.

## Models with navigation system

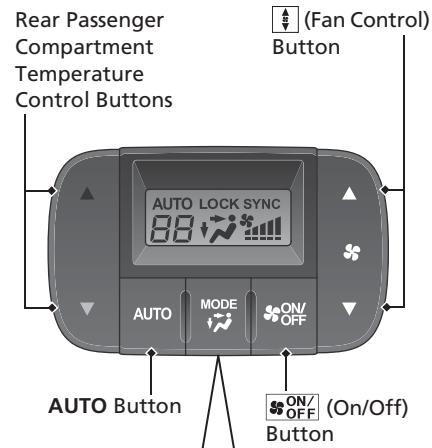
The climate control system is voice operable. See the Navigation System Manual for complete details.



## Rear Climate Control

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the rear climate control system.
- Press the **ON/OFF** button to turn the system on or off.

Rear Passenger Compartment Temperature Control Buttons



Air flows from the rear floor vents.



Airflow is divided between the rear floor vents and rear ceiling vents.



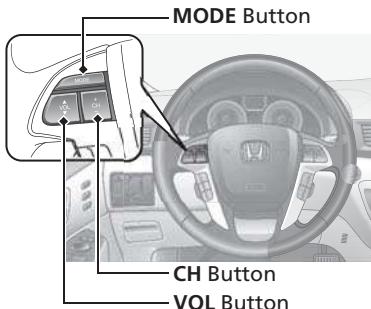
Air flows from the rear ceiling vents.



# Features ➔ P.205

## Audio Remote Controls

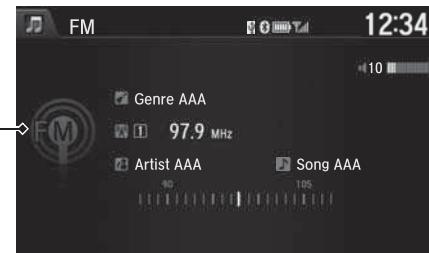
➔ P.210



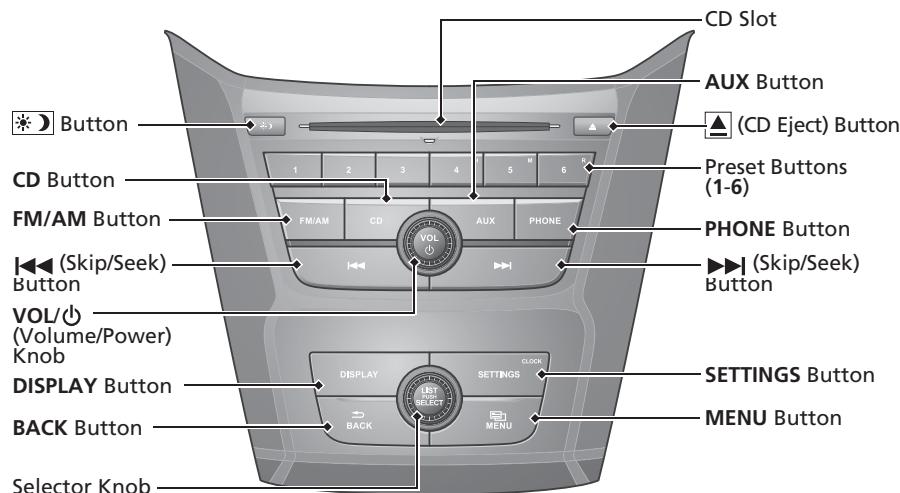
- **VOL (Volume) Button**  
Press **▲** / **▼** to adjust the volume up/down.
- **MODE Button**  
Press to change the audio mode: FM/AM/ SiriusXM®\*/CD/USB/iPod/Bluetooth®/ Audio/Pandora®\*/Aha™\*/AUX.
- **CH (Channel) Button**  
Radio: Press to change the preset station.  
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.
- CD/USB device:  
Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder/album.

## Audio System ➔ P.211, 234

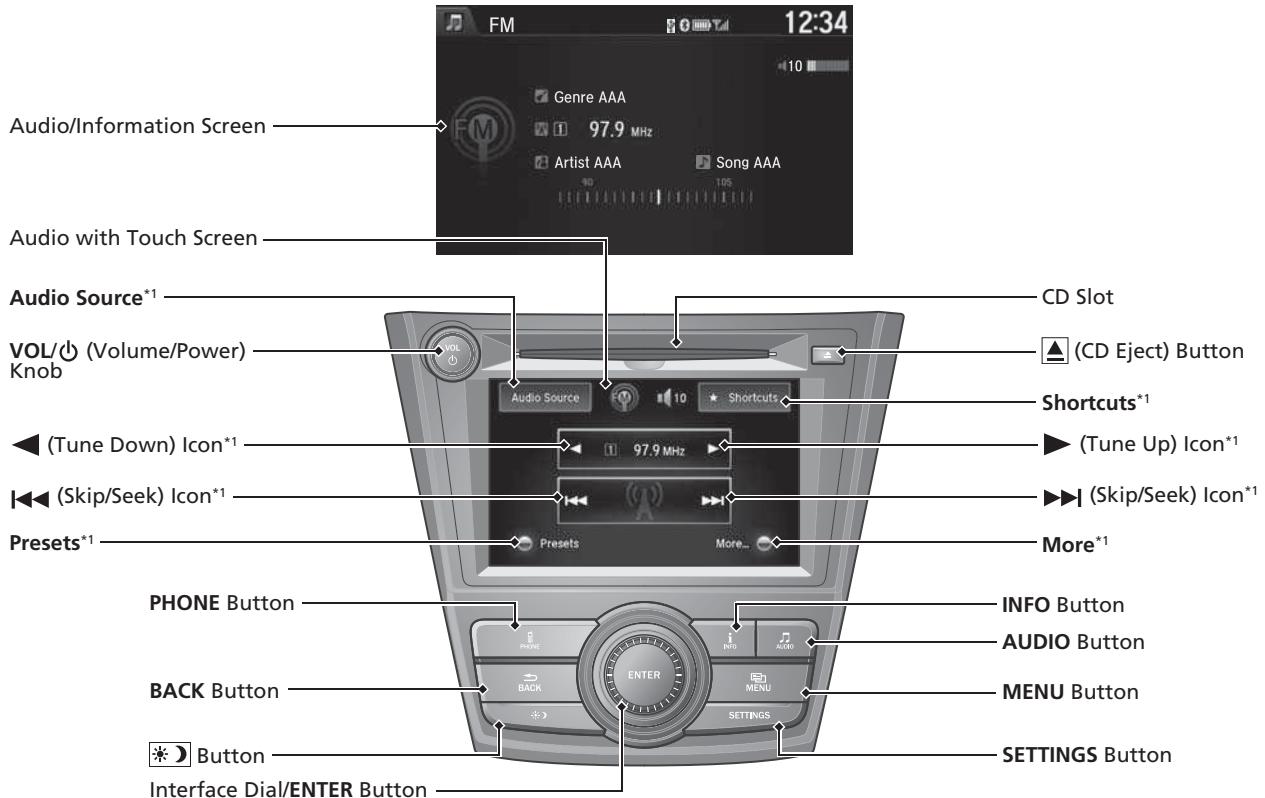
Models with one display ➔ P.211



Audio/Information Screen



\* Not available on all models

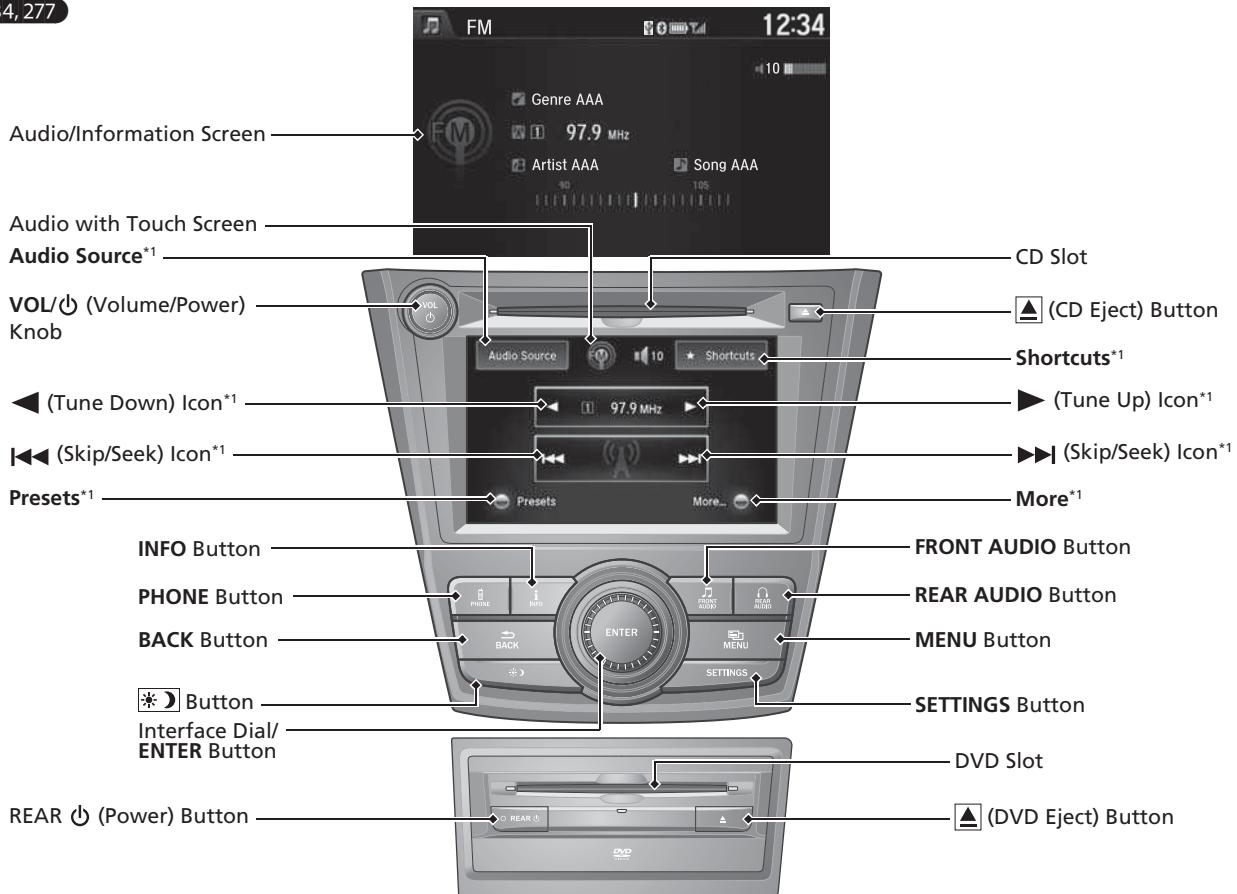


\*1: Icons that appear on the screen vary by the source selected.



Models with two displays and rear entertainment system

► P.234, 277



\*1: Icons that appear on the screen vary by the source selected.



# Driving ➔ P.395

## Automatic Transmission ➔ P.413

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

### Shifting

**Park**

Turn off or start the engine.  
Transmission is locked.

**Reverse**

Used when reversing.

**Neutral**

Transmission is not locked.

**Drive**

Normal driving.

**D4**

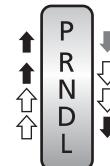
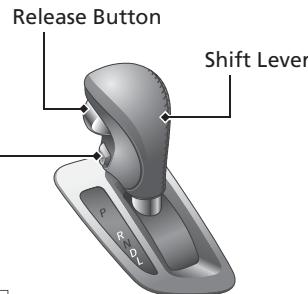
Press the **D4** button while the shift lever is in **D**.

Used when:

- Going up or down hills
- Towing a trailer in hilly terrain

**Low**

Strong engine braking.



Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.

Press the release button to move the shift lever.

Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.



## VSA® OFF Button P. 427

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA®) system helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering, and helps maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA® comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To turn VSA® on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control P. 415

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press **DECEL/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 25 mph or 40 km/h).

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P. 428

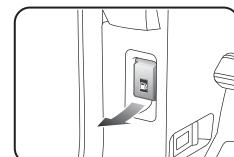
- TPMS monitors tire pressure.
- TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.

## Refueling P. 446

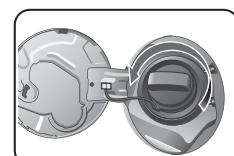
**Fuel recommendation:** Unleaded gasoline with a pump octane number 87 or higher required

**Fuel tank capacity:** 21 US gal (79.5 L)

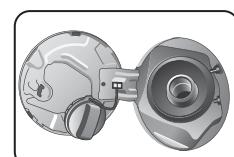
- 1 Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



- 2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 3 Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.



- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



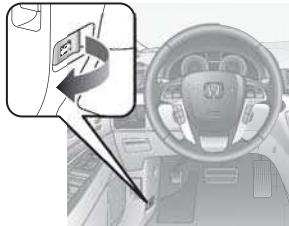


# Maintenance ➔ P. 451

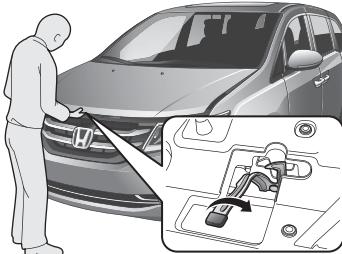
## Under the Hood ➔ P. 463

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and window washer fluid.  
Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1 Pull the hood release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



2 Locate the hood latch lever, slide the lever, and lift up the hood.



3 When finished, close the hood and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades ➔ P. 486

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windshield.



## Tires ➔ P. 490

- Inspect tires and wheels regularly.
- Check tire pressures regularly.
- Install snow tires for winter driving.

## Lights ➔ P. 475

- Inspect all lights regularly.



# Handling the Unexpected

P.509

## Flat Tire

P.511

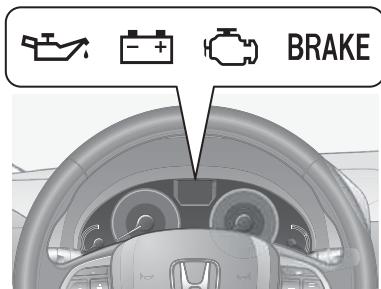
- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tire with the compact spare tire under the floor between the front seats and the second row seats.



## Indicators Come On

P. 528

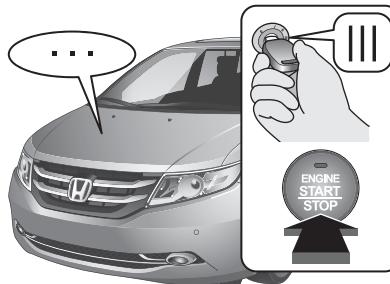
- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Engine Won't Start

P. 520

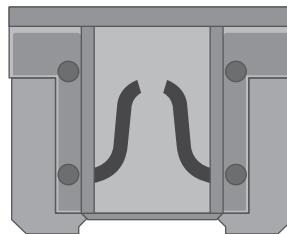
- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Blown Fuse

P. 533

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Overheating

P. 526

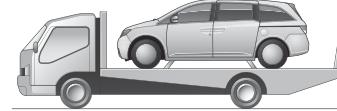
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the hood, open the hood, and let the engine cool down.



## Emergency Towing

P. 539

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.





# What to Do If

**Q** The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **1**<sup>\*1</sup>. Why?

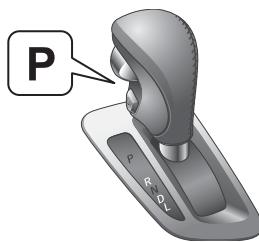
**A**

- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key\*.
- Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\* at the same time.



**Q** The ignition switch does not turn from **1** to **0**<sup>\*1</sup> and I cannot remove the key. Why?

**A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates, and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.



**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the LOCK position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, push the lever to the UNLOCK position.



**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors using a remote transmitter?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The key is left in the ignition switch\*.
- The power mode\* is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake is not fully released.

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.





# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions .....	26
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	28

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	30
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	33
Seat Belt Inspection.....	38

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	39
Types of Airbags .....	42
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	42
Side Airbags.....	46

Side Curtain Airbags .....	48
Airbag System Indicators.....	49
Airbag Care .....	51

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	52
Safety of Infants and Small Children .....	54
Safety of Larger Children .....	64

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	66
--------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	67
-----------------------	----



The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ■ Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.



### ■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

### ■ Control your speed

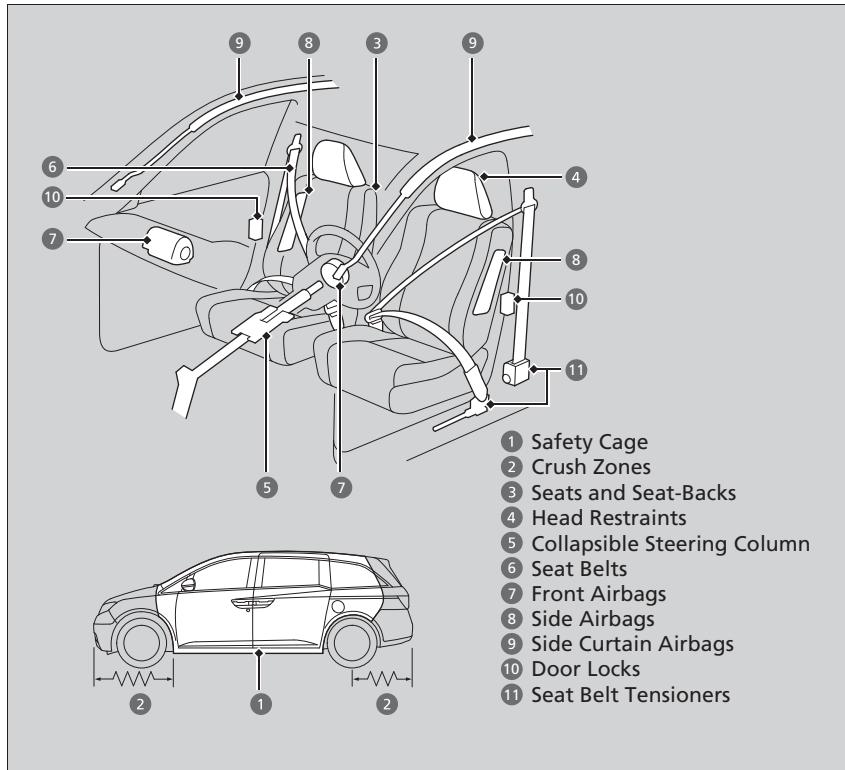
Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

### ■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.



## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### >Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.



## Safety CheckList

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors and the tailgate are closed and locked. Locking the doors helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door.  
**☒ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 118
- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

### **☒ Adjusting the Seats** P. 161

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

### **☒ Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 164

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

### **☒ Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 33

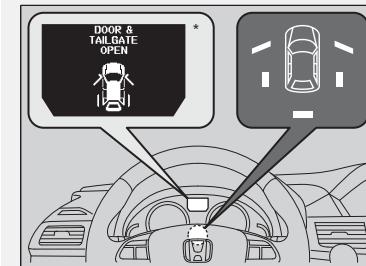
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height and weight.

### **☒ Child Safety** P. 52

## » Safety CheckList

If the door and tailgate open indicator is on, a door or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors tightly until the indicator goes off.

### **☒ Door and Tailgate Open Indicator** P. 75



\* Not available on all models



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All seven or eight seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body. The second and third row passenger's seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

 **Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 60

### About Your Seat Belts

## **WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

The emergency locking retractor may lock if you lean forward too quickly. Slower movements will allow the belt to extend fully without locking.



## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## ■ Seat Belt Reminder



Your vehicle monitors front seat belt use. If the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\* before the driver's seat belt is fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. If the driver does not fasten the belt before the beeper stops, the indicator will remain on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while driving until the driver's and front passenger's seat belts are fastened.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## »About Your Seat Belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## »Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound. The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

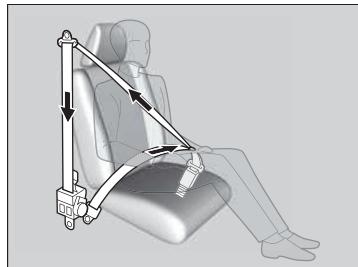
**■ Protecting Child Passengers** P. 52



## ■ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

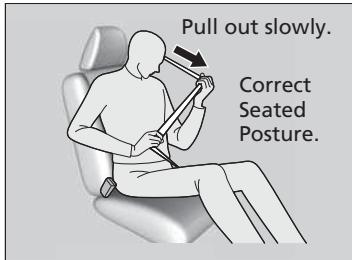
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.



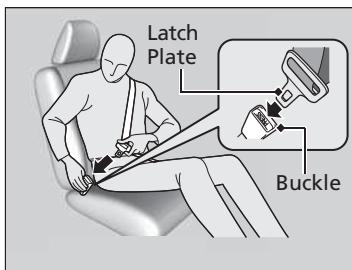
## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

### ► Adjusting the Seats P. 161



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
  - Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### ►Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

#### Fastening a Seat Belt

## WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

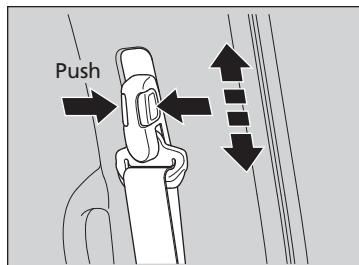
To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

#### Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

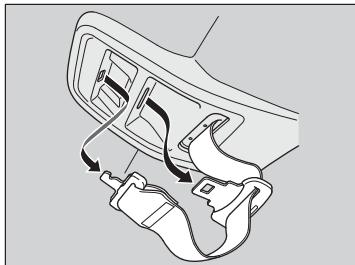
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.



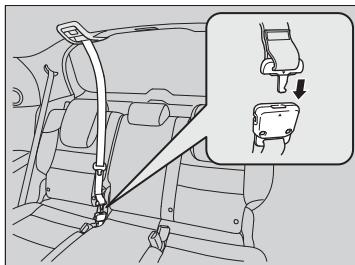
1. Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.



## Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



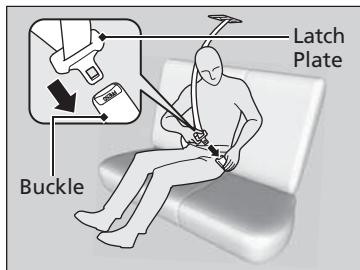
2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle.  
Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.  
Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.

### Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

#### WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

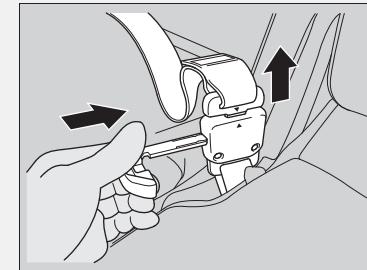
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.



**3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.**  
Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

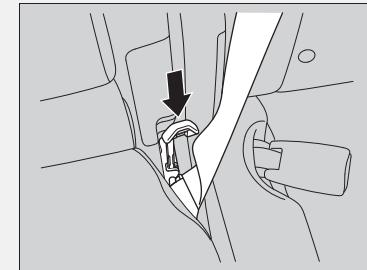
► Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert a key into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



► Second row center seat

Pivot down the anchor buckle forward.  
Insert a key into the slot on the back of the anchor buckle.





## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

**Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.**



**Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.**

### Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.



## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

▶ Seat Belt Inspection

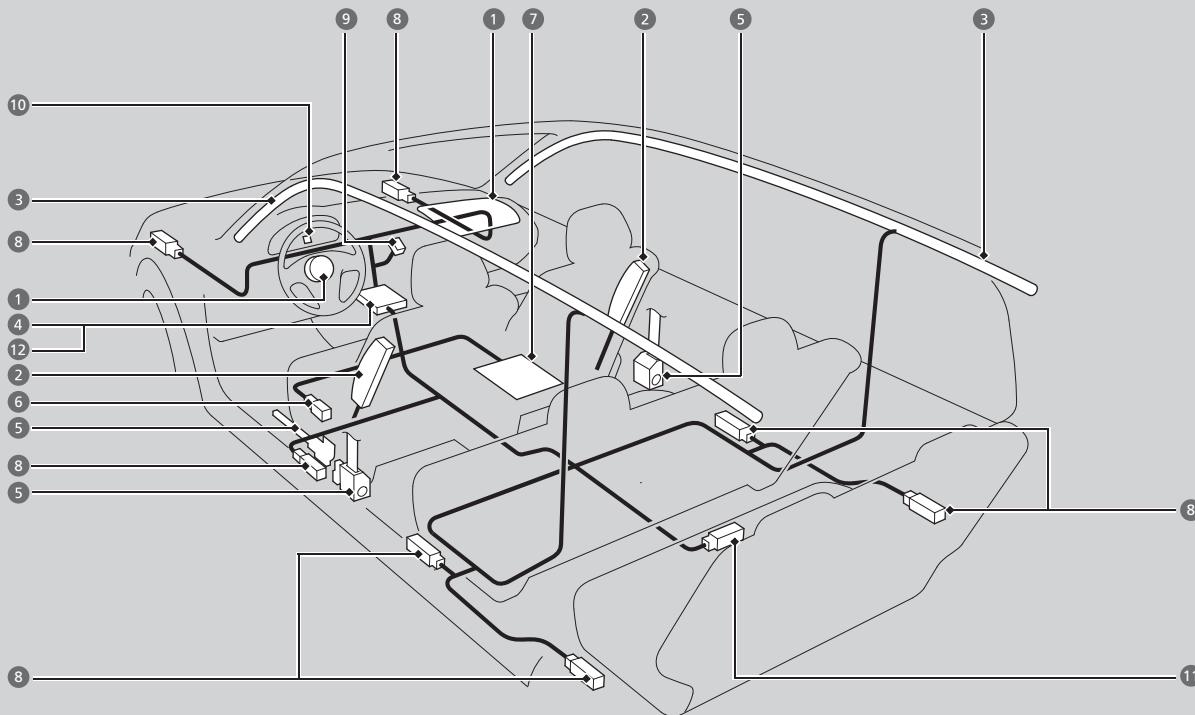
### ⚠ WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.



## Airbag System Components





The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

- ➊ Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- ➋ Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- ➌ Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- ➍ An electronic control unit that continually monitors and can record information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*.
- ➎ Automatic front seat belt tensioners. The driver's and front passenger's seat belts incorporate sensors that detect whether or not they are fastened.
- ➏ A driver's seat position sensor. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force.
- ➐ Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The front passenger's airbag will be turned off if the weight on the seat is 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child).
- ➑ Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- ➒ An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
- ➓ An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- ➔ Safing Sensor
- ➕ A rollover sensor that can detect whether the vehicle is about to roll over.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Important facts about your airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

### **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## Important facts about your airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.



## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

#### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

#### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

#### Front Airbags (SRS)

##### Dual-Stage, Multiple-Threshold Front Airbags (SRS)

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-stage, multiple-threshold front airbags (SRS).

During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

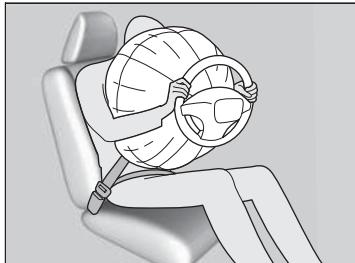


## Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### » How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.



## ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and, in vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side airbags and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

## ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

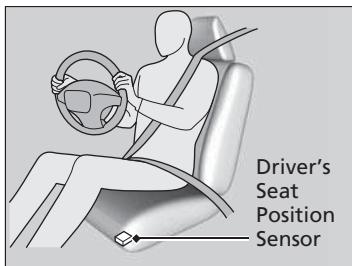
## ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.



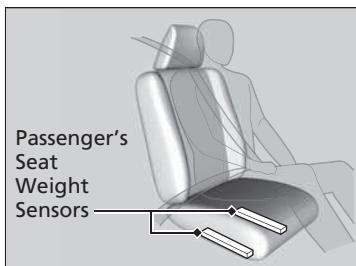
## Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor.

If the seat is too far forward, the airbag inflates with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors.

Although Honda recommends against carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of a child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn off the passenger's front airbag.

### Advanced Airbags

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor, the SRS indicator will come on and the airbag will inflate with full (normal) force, regardless of the driver's seating position.

For both advanced front airbags to work properly:

- Do not spill any liquid on or under the seats.
- Do not put any object under the passenger's seat.
- Make sure any objects are positioned properly on the floor. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- All occupants should sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not place any cover over the passenger side dashboard.

Make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.

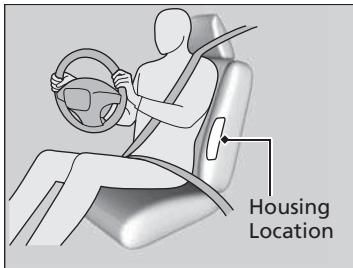
☞ **Floor Mats** P. 506



## Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

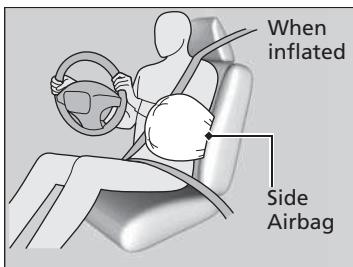
### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### Side Airbags

Make sure you and your front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

If the impact is on the passenger side, the airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the passenger seat.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.



### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag systems senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

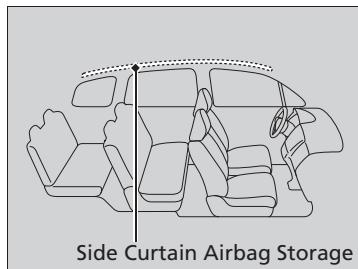
It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.



## Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### Side Curtain Airbags

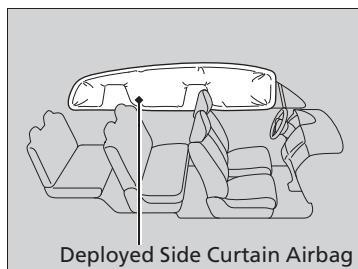
If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

### Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.



## ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

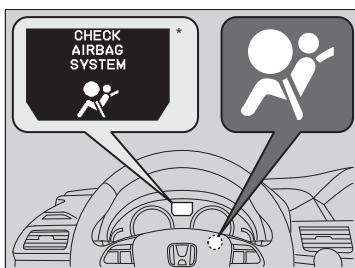
One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

In this case, the side curtain airbags will deploy slightly after the front airbags.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the multi-information display\*.

### SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator



#### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON [II] \*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Indicator

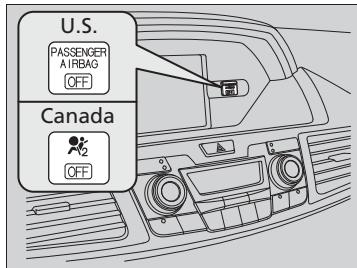
### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.



## Passenger Airbag Off Indicator



### When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off. This occurs when the weight sensors detect 65 lbs (29 kg) or less, the weight of an infant or small child, on the seat.

Infants and small children should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.

#### Child Safety P. 52

Objects placed on the seat can also cause the indicator to come on.

If the front passenger seat is empty, the passenger's front airbag will not deploy and the indicator will not come on.

### Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

If the indicator comes on with no front passenger and no objects on the passenger's seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors, such as:

- An object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- A child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat-back.
- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- The front seat or seat-back is forced back against an object on the seat or floor behind it.
- An object placed under the front passenger's seat.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and goes off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.



## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ■ Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting a dealer

This would likely disable the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer, or for U.S. vehicles, American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 800-999-1009 and for Canadian vehicles, Honda Canada Customer Relations at 888-9-HONDA-9.

### » Airbag Care

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.



## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.



- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the lap belt portion of the lap/shoulder belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

»» Protecting Child Passengers

## ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

☞ **Safety Labels** P. 67



## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the infant reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

☒ **Airbags** P. 39

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

### ☒ Protecting Infants

## ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

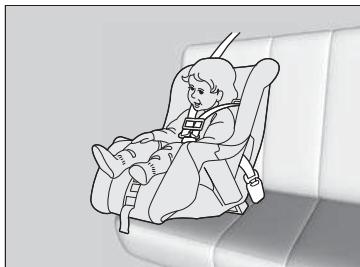
Rear-facing child seats should never be installed in a forward facing position.

Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.



## Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child seat manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat.



### ■ Forward-facing child seat placement

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

### ▶▶ Protecting Smaller Children

## ⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.



## ■ Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector, while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child seat

Make sure the child seat meets the following three requirements:

- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

### ▶Selecting a Child Seat

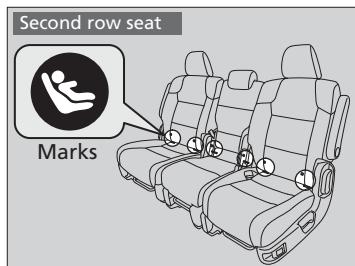
Installation of a LATCH-compatible child seat is simple.

LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

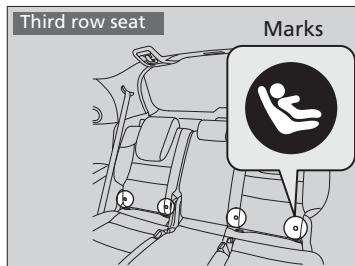


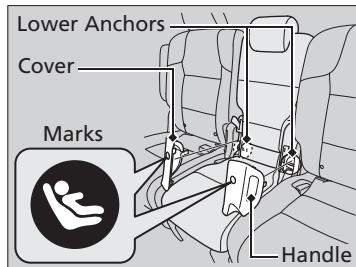
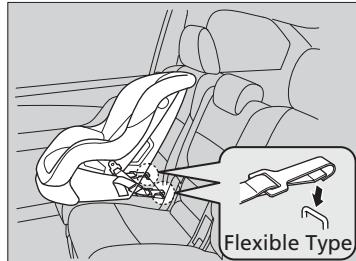
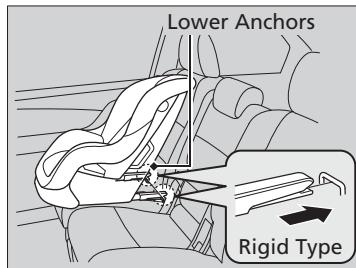
## Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in each of the second and third row seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the lower anchors under the marks.





2. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat then attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.

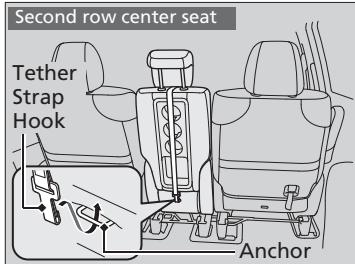
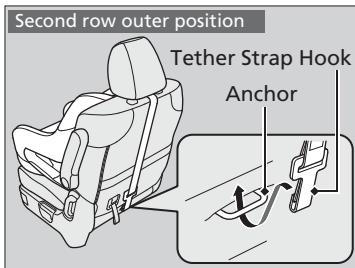
► When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

#### ▶ Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the seat is properly secured to the vehicle. A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

#### Second row center seat

To install a LATCH-compatible child seat in the second row center seat, remove the covers on each lower end of the seat-back by pulling on the handles.



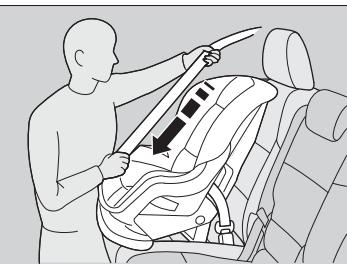
3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat maker.
5. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
6. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.



## ■ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



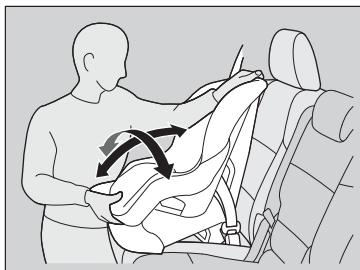
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt completely wind up into the retractor, then try to pull it out to make sure the retractor is locked.
  - ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 4.



5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

## ✖ Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



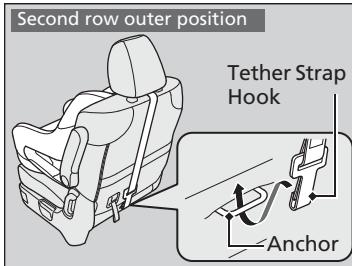
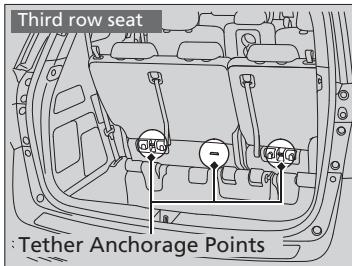
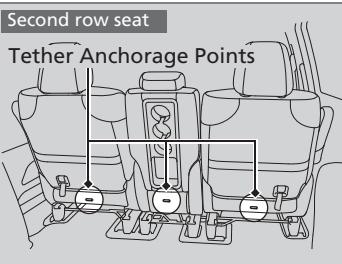
6. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

»»Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



## ■ Adding Security with a Tether



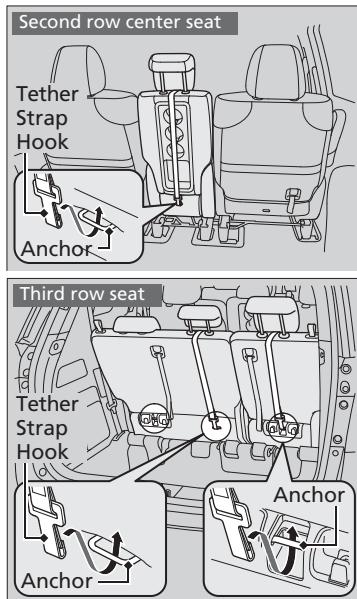
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each second and third row seating position. A child seat that is installed with a seat belt and comes with a tether can use the tether for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.

2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

### ▶ Adding Security with a Tether

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder seat belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is available.



3. Secure the tether strap hook onto the anchor.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.



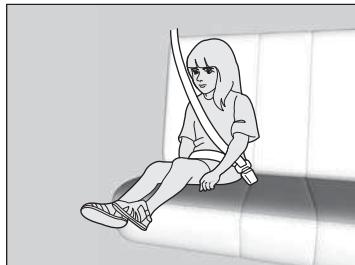
# Safety of Larger Children

## ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

## ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

## ■ Safety of Larger Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.



## ■ Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in a rear seating position. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

### » Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g. 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state or province, or territory where you intend to drive.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children-Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.



## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the heating and cooling\*/climate control\* system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the heating and cooling\*/climate control\* system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### Carbon Monoxide Gas

## WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

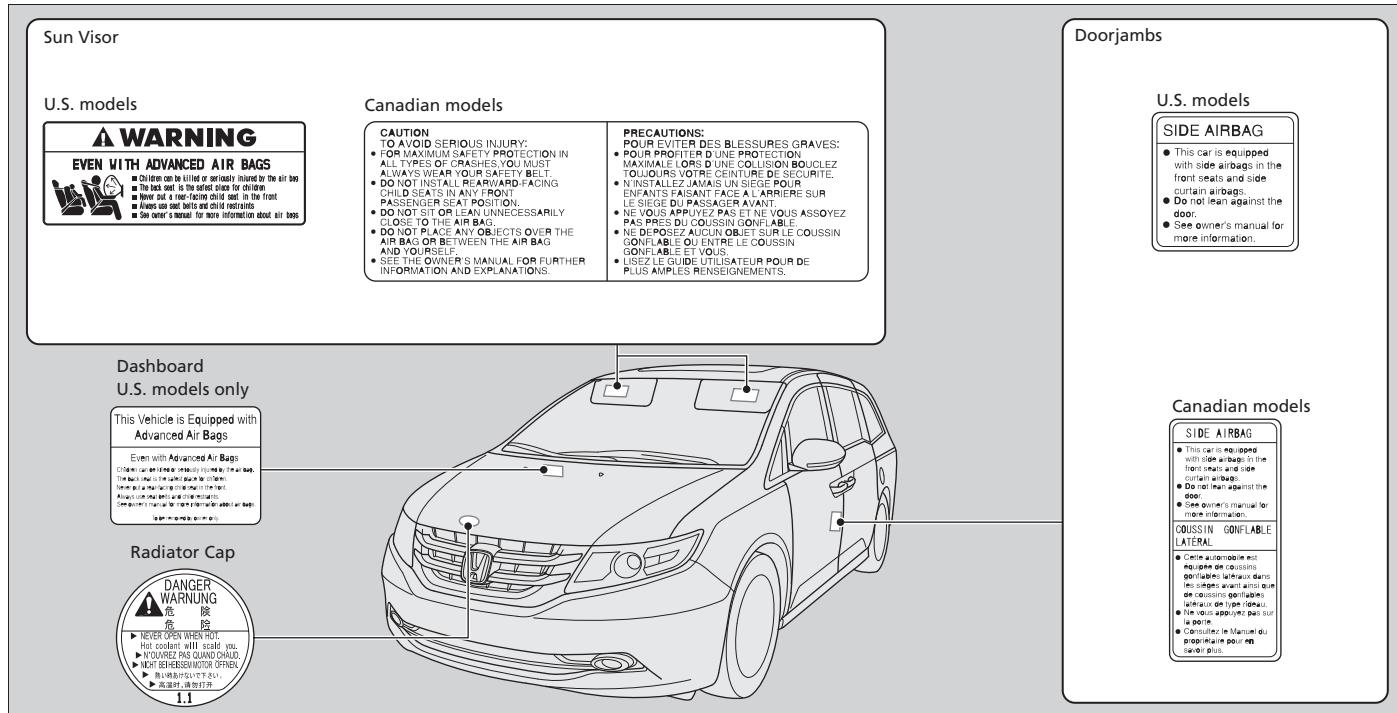
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.

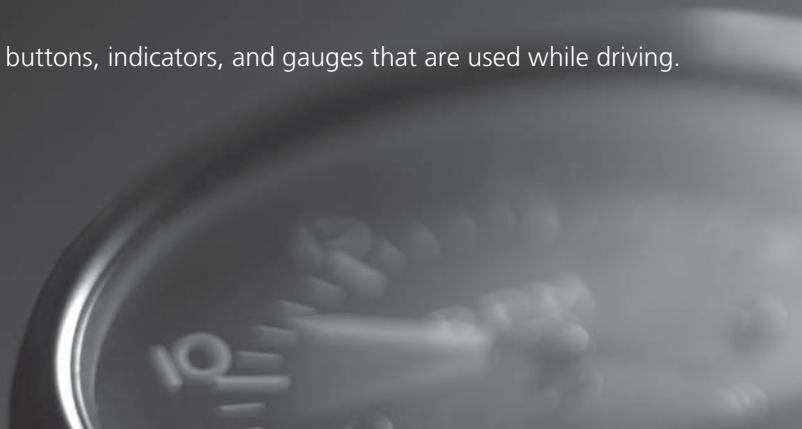






# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



## Indicators

Information Display Warning and Information Messages* .....	84
Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages* .....	86

## Gauges and Displays

Gauges.....	92
Information Display* .....	93
Multi-Information Display*.....	96

\* Not available on all models



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
 <b>Canada</b> 	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.</li> <li><b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 530</li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	       
 <b>Canada</b> 	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake override system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li><li>• Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.  <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 528</li></ul>	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, and goes off either when the engine starts or after several seconds if the engine did not start. If "readiness codes" have not been set, it blinks five times before it goes off.</li><li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control system.</li><li>• Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Readiness codes are part of the on board diagnostics for the emissions control systems.  <b>Testing of Readiness Codes</b> P. 547</li><li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li><li>• <b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer.  <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 529</li></ul>	

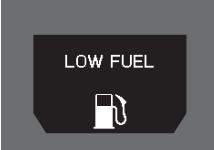
\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li><li>Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on while driving</b> - Turn off the heating and cooling */climate control* system and rear defogger in order to reduce electricity consumption.</li></ul> <p> <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 528</p>	<p><b>Information Display</b></p> <p></p> <p><b>Multi-Information Display</b></p> <p></p>
	Shift Lever Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Indicates the current shift lever position. <b>D4 Indicator:</b></li><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on when you press the <b>D4</b> button while the shift lever is in <b>D</b>.</li></ul>	<p> <b>Shifting</b> P. 413</p>	—
	Transmission Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li></ul>	<p></p>

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on and the beeper sounds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*1.</li><li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on about a few seconds later.</li><li>Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li><li><b>Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <p>☞ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 31</p>	 
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 3.0 U.S. gal./11.4 Liter left).</li><li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li><li><b>Blinks</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	
	ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*1, then goes off.</li><li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.</li></ul> <p>☞ <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 438</p>	

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II<sup>*1</sup></b>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Supplemental restraint system</li><li>- Side airbag system</li><li>- Side curtain airbag system</li><li>- Seat belt tensioner</li></ul></li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	
	VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II<sup>*1</sup></b>, then goes off.</li><li>Blinks when VSA® is active.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <p>☞ <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System</b> P. 426</p>	
	VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) OFF Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II<sup>*1</sup></b>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on when you deactivate VSA®.</li></ul>	<p>☞ <b>VSA® On and Off</b> P. 427</p>	—

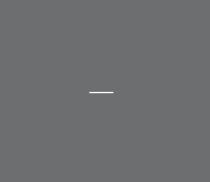
\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.</li><li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Goes off when all doors and tailgate are closed.</li></ul>	
	Parking Sensor Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>A corresponding indicator comes on when an obstacle is detected while parking.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. The beeper sounds.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Comes on without any obstacles or when you are not parking</b> - Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	—
<b>DRL</b>	Daytime Running Lights Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the DRL system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ☞ <b>Daytime Running Lights</b> P. 150</li></ul>	—

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Models with information display TPMS Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II<sup>*1</sup></b>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li></ul>	
	Models with information display Low Tire Pressure Indicator  Models with multi-information display Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II<sup>*1</sup></b>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if the tire pressure of any of the tires becomes significantly low.</li></ul> <b>Models with information display</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a while and then goes off when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.</li></ul> <b>Models with multi-information display</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS, or when a compact spare tire is temporarily installed.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary.</li></ul>  <b>Models with multi-information display</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tire repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li></ul>	

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	System Message Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the multi-information display appears at the same time.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>While the indicator is on, press the <b>▲(i)</b> / <b>▼</b> (information) button to see the message again.</li><li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the multi-information display. Take the appropriate action for the message.</li><li>The multi-information display does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is canceled, or the <b>▲(i)</b> / <b>▼</b> (information) button is pressed.</li></ul>	—
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Blink when you operate the turn signal lever.</li><li>Blink along with all turn signals if you press the hazard warning button.</li></ul>	<b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately. <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 480, 481	—
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li></ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in <b>AUTO</b>* when the exterior lights are on.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If you remove the key from the ignition switch*<sup>1</sup> while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li></ul>	—

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on when the fog lights are on.</li></ul>	—	—
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to ON [II]*<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]*<sup>1</sup>, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON [II]*<sup>1</sup> again.</li><li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li><li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li></ul>	—

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Security System Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li></ul>	<b>➔ Security System Alarm*</b> P. 135	—
	Smart Entry System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the smart entry system or push button starting system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	 
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the starter system.</li></ul>	<p><b>Models with smart entry system</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <p><b>Models without smart entry system</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>As a temporary measure, hold the ignition switch to START  for up to 15 seconds and start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	—

\* Not available on all models



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message <sup>*2</sup>
FCW	Forward Collision Warning (FCW) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b><sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you have customized FCW to turn off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the FCW system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly without FCW off</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 
		<b>Models with information display</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the system detects a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).</li> </ul>	 
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the FCW system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the FCW system is too high. The system activates when the temperature inside the system cools down.  <b>⇒ Automatic shutoff</b> P. 420</li> </ul>	
	Forward Collision Warning (FCW) Indicator*		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.  <b>⇒ Automatic shutoff</b> P. 420</li> </ul>	 
			<b>⇒ Automatic shutoff</b> P. 420	 

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: On the left: Models with information display

On the right: Models with multi-information display



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message <sup>*2</sup>
LDW	Lane Departure Warning (LDW) Indicator <sup>*</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LDW system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	 
		<b>Models with information display</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Blinks when your vehicle is too close to the lane lines. The beeper sounds.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Take appropriate action to keep your vehicle within the lane lines.</li></ul>	— —
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on when the LDW system shuts itself off.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the LDW camera is too high. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ⇒ <b>LDW Camera</b> P. 424</li></ul>	 
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li><li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. ⇒ <b>LDW Camera</b> P. 424</li></ul>	 

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: On the left: Models with information display

On the right: Models with multi-information display

\* Not available on all models

Continued

81



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
<b>ECO</b>	Fuel Economy Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on and stays on while you are driving with good fuel economy.</li></ul>	—	—
<b>CRUISE MAIN</b>	<b>CRUISE MAIN</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li></ul>	⇒ <b>Cruise Control</b> P. 415	—
<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b>	<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.</li></ul>	⇒ <b>Cruise Control</b> P. 415	—
	Washer Level Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on when the washer fluid is low.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Refill the washer fluid. ⇒ <b>Refilling Window Washer Fluid</b> P. 474</li></ul>	—
	Maintenance Minder Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.</li></ul>	⇒ <b>Maintenance Minder™</b> P. 455	—
<b>U.S.</b> <b>TAIL GATE</b> <b>Canada</b> 	Power Tailgate Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b>*<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the power tailgate system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - You can still open or close the tailgate manually. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	—

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
 	Power Sliding Door Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the power sliding door system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Turn off the main switch and manually operate the power sliding doors. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <p> <b>Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors*</b> P. 129</p>	
	BSI (Blind Spot Information) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li><li>Stays on while BSI is turned off.</li><li>Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.</li><li>Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor.</li><li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>	
				
				

\*1:Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*

The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.</li></ul>	<p>⇒ <b>Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message</b> P. 529</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <p>⇒ <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 499</p>



## Models with smart entry system

Message	Condition	Explanation
<b>POWER IS ON SHIFT TO P</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if you push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to <b>P</b>.</li></ul>
<b>POWER IS ON</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li></ul>	—
<b>1-PUSH START 2-TURN WHEEL</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button at the same time.</li></ul>
<b>NO KEY</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.</li></ul>
<b>CHANGE KEY BATT</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the smart entry remote's battery becomes weak.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.  <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 500</li></ul>



## Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*

The following messages appear only on the multi-information display. Press the (information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the fuel fill cap is loose or is not installed.</li></ul>	<b>Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message</b> P. 529
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.</li><li>Consequently, <b>SERVICE DUE NOW</b> and <b>SERVICE PAST DUE</b> follow.</li></ul>	<b>Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display</b> P. 460
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li></ul>	<b>Overheating</b> P. 526
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 499
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. The beeper sounds.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li></ul>



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if there is a problem with the DRL system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ⇒ <b>Daytime Running Lights</b> P. 150</li></ul>
 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the starter system has a problem.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal and manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the washer fluid is low.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Refill the washer fluid. ⇒ <b>Refilling Window Washer Fluid</b> P. 474</li></ul>



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Manually open or close the power tailgate.</li><li>Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if there is a problem with the power sliding door system.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Turn off the main switch and manually operate the power sliding doors.</li><li>Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li></ul> <p>⇒ <b>Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors*</b> P. 129</p>



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).</li></ul> <p>⇒ <b>Forward Collision Warning (FCW)*</b> P. 418</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines. The beeper sounds.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Take appropriate action to keep your vehicle within the lane lines.</li></ul> <p>⇒ <b>Lane Departure Warning (LDW)*</b> P. 422</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears while you are customizing the settings and the shift lever is moved out of <b>P</b>.</li></ul>	<p>⇒ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 99</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if you try to go to <b>CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS</b> from the multi-information display while the audio/information screen shows the <b>Vehicle Settings</b> menu.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select either display to customize a setting. You cannot have <b>CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS</b> displayed on the multi-information display and <b>Vehicle Settings</b> on the audio/information screen simultaneously.</li></ul> <p>⇒ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 99, 295</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li></ul>	<p>⇒ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 407</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li></ul>

\* Not available on all models

Continued



Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if you push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice after moving the shift lever to <b>P</b>.</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li></ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the smart entry remote inside the vehicle.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Disappears when you bring the smart entry remote back inside the vehicle and close the door. ☞ <b>Smart Entry Remote Reminder</b> P. 145</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Replace the battery as soon as possible. ☞ <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 500</li></ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears if the smart entry remote battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. A beeper sounds six times.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Bring the smart entry remote in front of the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to be touched with. ☞ <b>If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 521</li></ul>



Message	Condition	Explanation
 TO SWITCH ACCESSORY ON: PUSH [button icon]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Appears three seconds after the <b>TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON</b>, then <b>TO START VEHICLE</b> messages appeared sequentially.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Unless you bring the smart entry remote in front of the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button, this message does not appear.  <b>If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 521</li></ul>



## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON [II]\*1.

### Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in mph or km/h.

### Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

### Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

### Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

### Fuel Gauge

#### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches [E]. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

### Temperature Gauge

If the temperature gauge pointer is in the upper zone, the engine is in danger or overheating.

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safety to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

#### Overheating P. 526

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

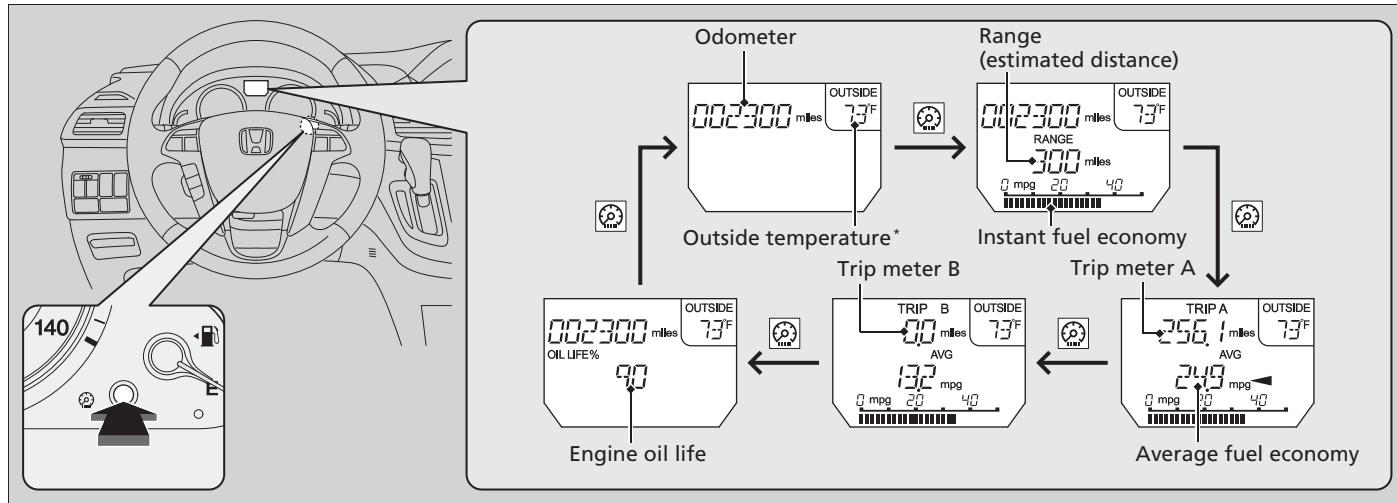


## Information Display\*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, engine oil life and maintenance service item codes, and other gauges.

### Switching the Display

Press the (Select/Reset) knob to change the display.



### Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

\* Not available on all models



## Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada).

## Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

**Maintenance Minder™** P. 455

## Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the knob.

## Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

**Customized Features** P. 295

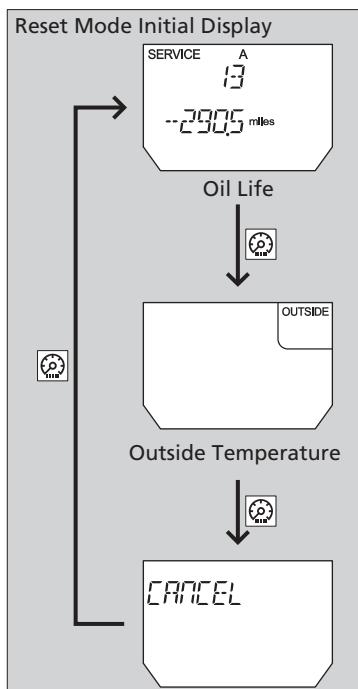


## Outside Temperature\*

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON [II]\*1.
2. Press and hold the [ ] (Select/Reset) knob for 10 seconds or more.
  - The information display shows the reset mode initial display.
3. Select outside temperature with the [ ] knob.
4. Press and hold the [ ] knob for a few seconds to enter the outside temperature setting mode.
5. Turn the [ ] knob to adjust the temperature.
6. Press and release the [ ] knob.
  - The new outside temperature is now entered.

### »Outside Temperature\*

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

### »Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

\* Not available on all models

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



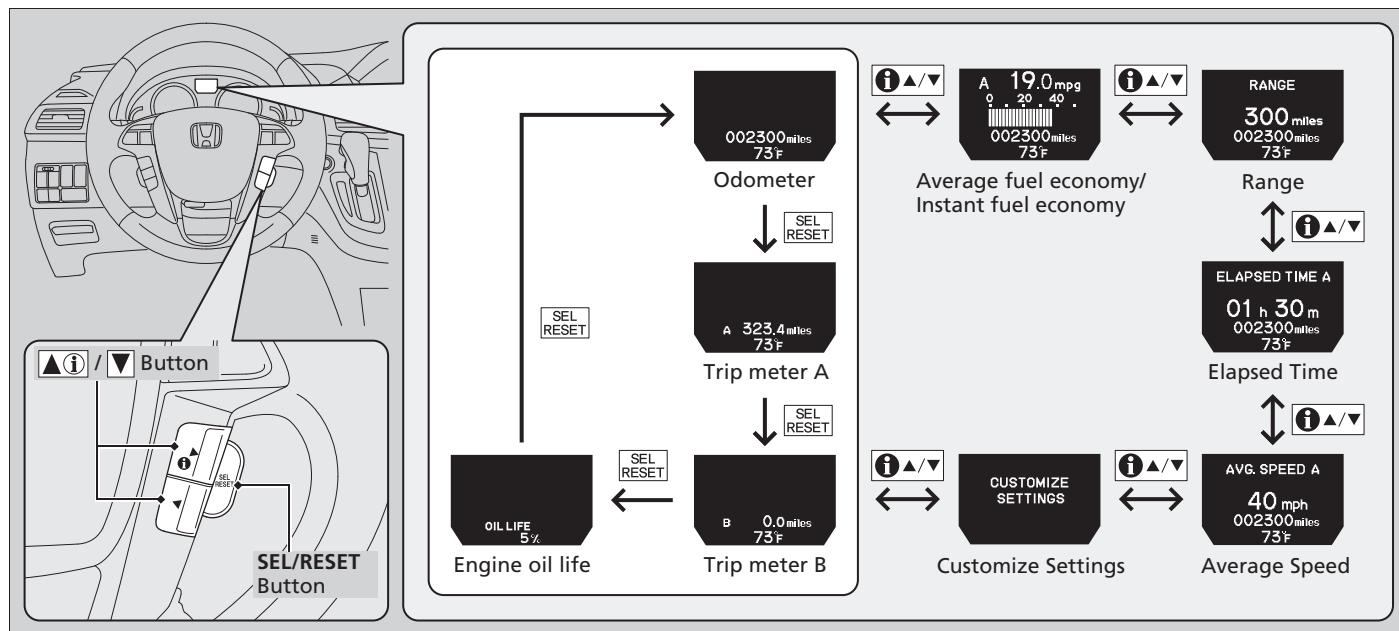
## Multi-Information Display\*

The multi-information display shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### Switching the Display

Press the / (information) button or the **SEL/RESET** button to change the display.





## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada). The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in mpg (U.S.) or l/100 km (Canada).

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### » Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.

### » Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

### » Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295



## Average Speed

Shows the average speed in mph (U.S.) or km/h (Canada) since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## Engine Oil Life

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

☞ **Maintenance Minder™** P. 455

## Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Fahrenheit (U.S.) or Celsius (Canada).

### Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 5^{\circ}\text{F}$  or  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

### Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

### Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the multi-information display's customized features to correct the temperature.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

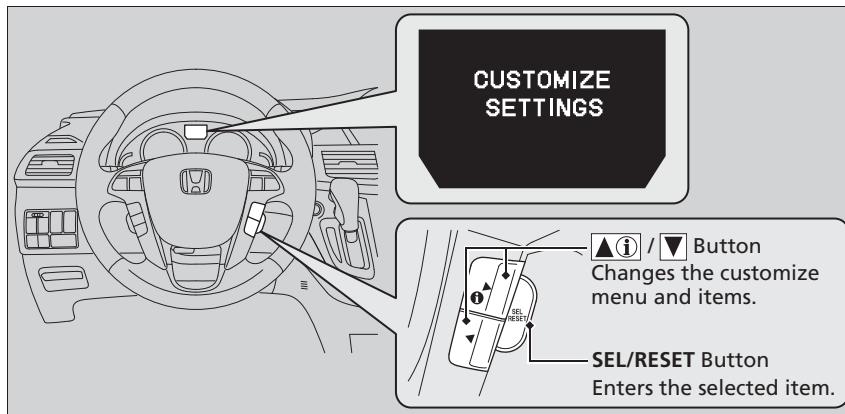


## Customized Features

Use the multi-information display to customize certain features.

### How to customize

Select the **CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS** by pressing the **▲(i) / ▼** button while the power mode is in ON. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.



### Customized Features

To customize other features, press the **▲(i) / ▼** button.

▶ **List of customizable options** P. 102

▶ **Example of customization settings** P. 105

Customization is possible when you see the driver's ID (**DRIVER 1** or **DRIVER 2**) on the **GROUP** screen.

The driver's ID indicates which remote transmitter you have used to unlock the driver's door.

The customized settings are recalled every time you unlock the driver's door with that remote.

When you customize settings:

Shift to **P**.

Customizing is also available from the audio/information screen.

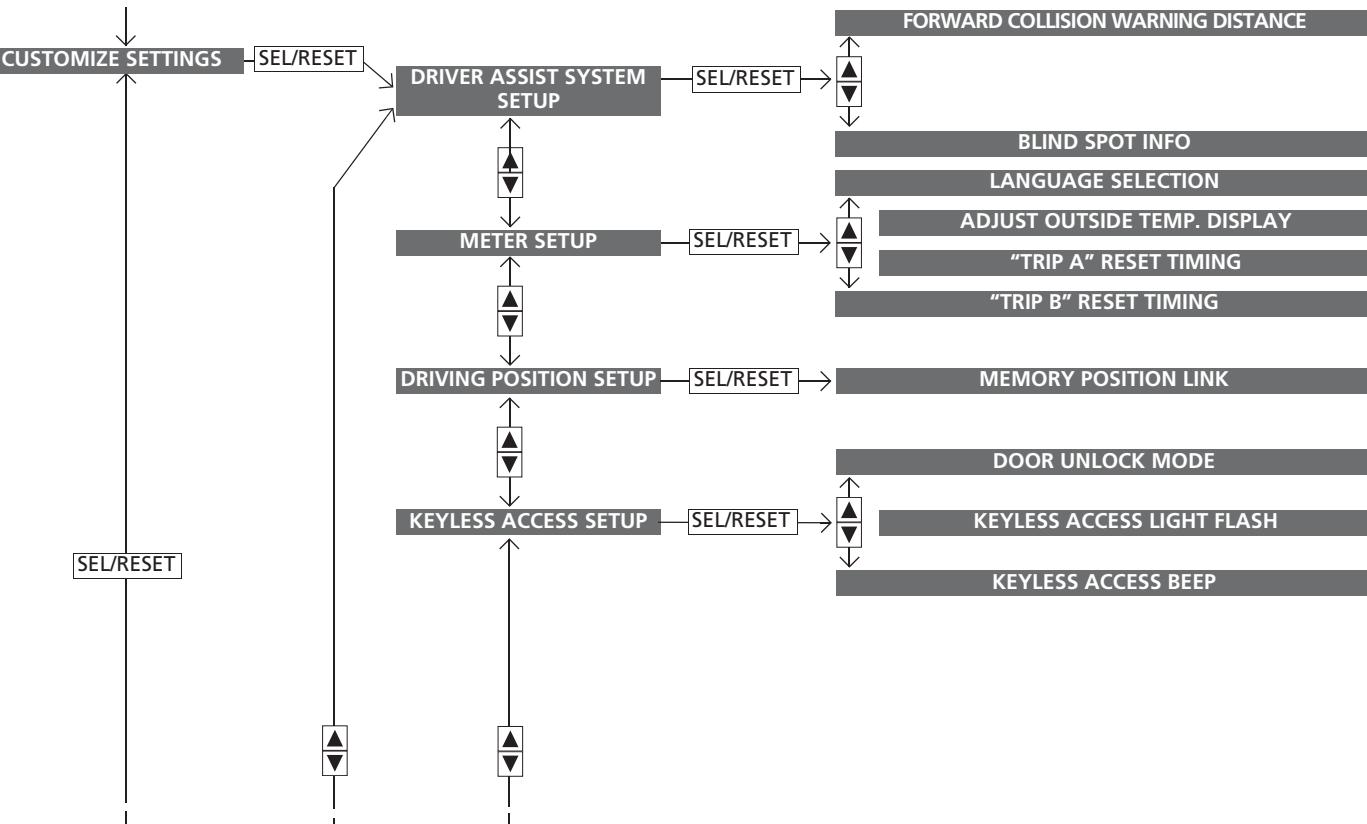
You cannot have **CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS** displayed on the multi-information display while the audio/information screen shows the **Vehicle Settings** menu.

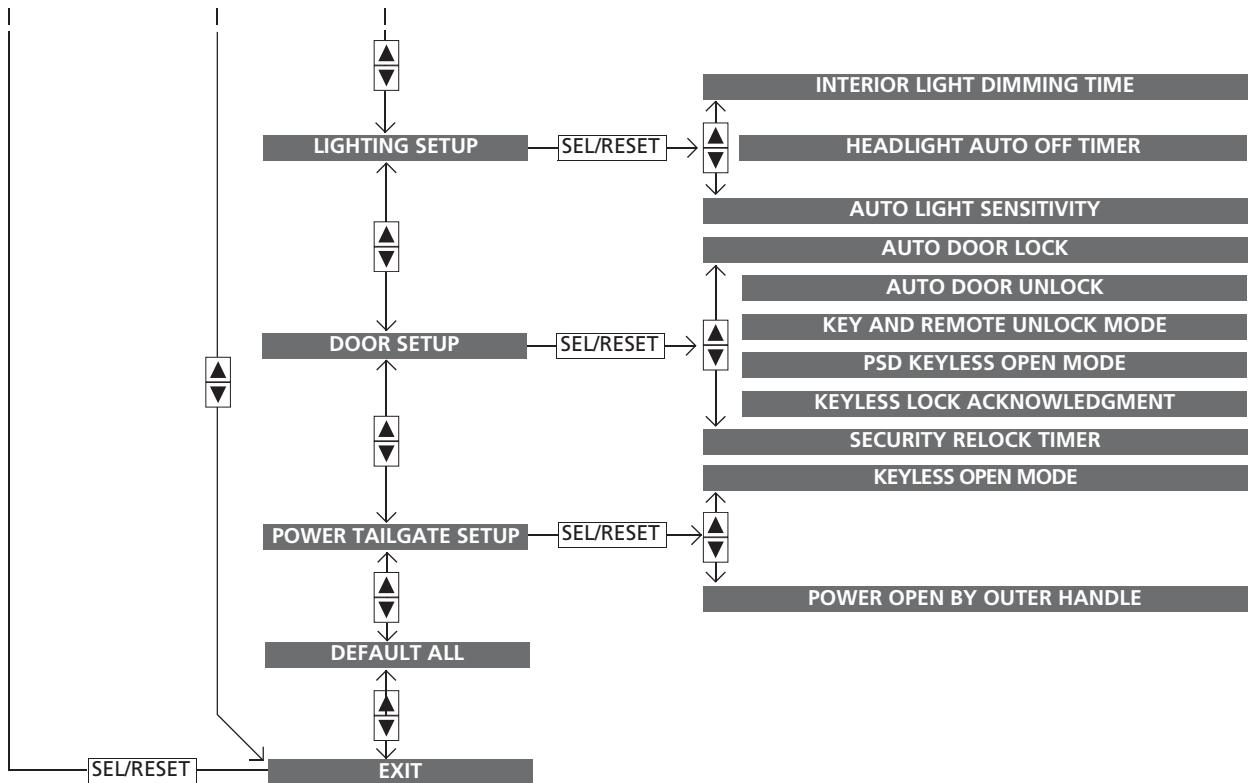
▶ **Customized Features** P. 295



## ■ Customization flow

Press the  /  button.







## ■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
<b>DRIVER ASSIST SYSTEM SETUP</b>	<b>FORWARD COLLISION WARNING DISTANCE</b>	Changes at which distance FCW alerts, or turns FCW on and off.	<b>LONG/NORMAL<sup>*1</sup>/SHORT/OFF</b>
	<b>BLIND SPOT INFO</b>	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	<b>AUDIBLE AND VISUAL ALERT<sup>*1</sup>/VISUAL ALERT/OFF</b>
<b>METER SETUP</b>	<b>LANGUAGE SELECTION</b>	Changes the displayed language.	<b>ENGLISH<sup>*1</sup>/FRENCH/SPANISH</b>
	<b>ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-5°F ~ ±0°F<sup>*1</sup> ~ +5°F (U.S.) -3°C ~ ±0°C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +3°C (Canada)</b>
	<b>"TRIP A" RESET TIMING</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	<b>WITH REFUEL/IGN OFF/MANUALLY RESET<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>"TRIP B" RESET TIMING</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	<b>WITH REFUEL/IGN OFF/MANUALLY RESET<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>MEMORY POSITION LINK</b>	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM SETUP</b>	<b>DOOR UNLOCK MODE</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>DRIVER DOOR<sup>*1</sup>/ALL DOORS</b>
	<b>KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH</b>	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1: Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
LIGHTING SETUP	INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec <sup>*1</sup> /15sec
	HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec <sup>*1</sup> /0sec
	AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	MAX/HIGH/MID <sup>*1</sup> /LOW/MIN
	AUTO DOOR LOCK	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically lock.	WITH VEH SPD <sup>*1</sup> /SHIFT FROM P/OFF
DOOR SETUP	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock.	DRIVER DOOR WITH SHIFT TO P <sup>*1</sup> /ALL DOORS WITH SHIFT TO P/DRIVER DOOR WITH IGN OFF/ALL DOORS WITH IGN OFF/OFF
	KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock with the remote transmitter on a first push.	DRIVER DOOR <sup>*1</sup> /ALL DOORS
	PSD KEYLESS OPEN MODE	Changes the keyless setting for when the power sliding door opens.	ANYTIME <sup>*1</sup> /WHEN UNLOCKED
	KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT	LOCK/UNLOCK - The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push) - The beeper sounds.	ON <sup>*1</sup> /OFF
	SECURITY RELOCK TIMER	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec <sup>*1</sup>

\*1: Default Setting



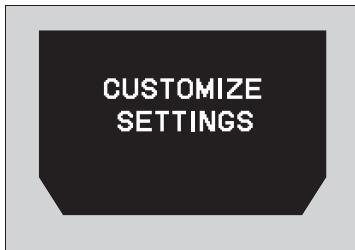
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable settings
<b>POWER TAILGATE SETUP</b>	<b>KEYLESS OPEN MODE</b>	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	<b>ANYTIME<sup>*1</sup>/WHEN UNLOCKED</b>
	<b>POWER OPEN BY OUTER HANDLE</b>	Changes the setting to open the power tailgate by the tailgate outer handle.	<b>OFF (MANUALLY)/ON (POWER/MANUAL)<sup>*1</sup></b>
<b>DEFAULT ALL</b>		Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	<b>CANCEL/SET</b>

\*1: Default Setting

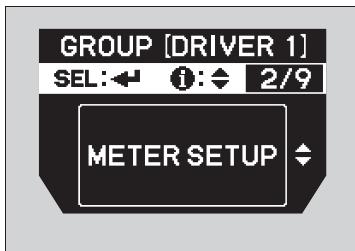


## ■ Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the “TRIP A” RESET TIMING setting to **WITH REFUEL** are shown below. The default setting for “TRIP A” RESET TIMING is **MANUALLY RESET**.



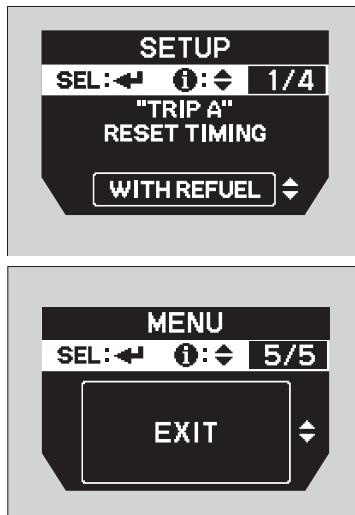
1. Press the **▲ (i) / ▼** button to select **CUSTOMIZE SETTINGS**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.



2. Press the **▲ (i) / ▼** button until **METER SETUP** appears on the display.
3. Press the **SEL/RESET** button.  
► **LANGUAGE SELECTION** appears first on the display.



4. Press the **▲ (i) / ▼** button until “TRIP A” **RESET TIMING** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.  
► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **WITH REFUEL**, **IGN OFF**, **MANUALLY RESET**, or **EXIT**.



5. Press the **▲** / **▼** button and select **WITH REFUEL**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

► The **WITH REFUEL SETUP** screen appears, then the display returns to the customize menu screen.

6. Press the **▲** / **▼** button until **EXIT** appears on the display, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.



# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



<b>Clock</b> .....	108
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>	
Key Types and Functions .....	110
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength* .....	112
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside....	113
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside... <td>118</td>	118
Childproof Door Locks .....	119
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	120
<b>Opening and Closing the Tailgate</b> .....	121
<b>Opening and Closing the Sliding Doors</b> .....	127
<b>Security System</b>	
Immobilizer System .....	135
Security System Alarm* .....	135
<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> .....	138
<b>Opening and Closing the Moonroof*</b> .....	141

<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b>	
Ignition Switch* .....	142
ENGINE START/STOP Button* .....	143
Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison .....	146
Turn Signals.....	147
Light Switches.....	147
Fog Lights* .....	150
Daytime Running Lights .....	150
Wipers and Washers .....	151
Brightness Control .....	153
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror* Button ..	154
Driving Position Memory System* .....	155
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	157

<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b> .....	158
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	158
Power Door Mirrors .....	159
<b>Adjusting the Seats</b>	
Adjusting the Seat Positions.....	161
<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	176
Interior Lights .....	176
Interior Convenience Items .....	178
<b>Heating and Cooling*</b>	
Using Vents, Heating and A/C.....	194
<b>Climate Control System*</b>	
Using Automatic Climate Control ....	198
Automatic Climate Control Sensors... <td>203</td>	203

\* Not available on all models



## Adjusting the Clock

### Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch is in ON [II] \*1.

### Adjusting the Time

#### Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.

##### Models with one display

2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.

##### Models with two displays

2. Move or to select **Clock**.  
Rotate to select **Clock Adjustment**, then press .

##### All models

3. Rotate to change hour, then press .
4. Rotate to change minute, then press .



### Adjusting the Clock

#### Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

##### Models with one display

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

##### Models with two displays

These indications are used to show how to operate the interface dial.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Move , , or to select secondary menu.

##### All models

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

► **Customized Features** P. 295

You can turn the clock display on and off.

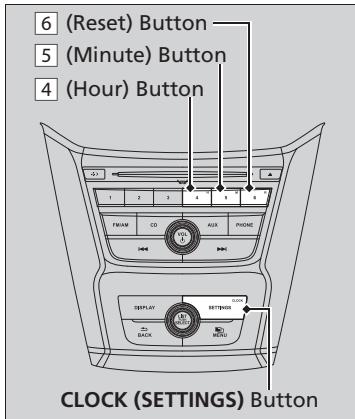
► **Customized Features** P. 295

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Models with one display

## ■ Using the SETTINGS button



1. Press and hold the **CLOCK (SETTINGS)** button until the clock display blinks.
2. Press Preset **4** (Hour) or **5** (Minute) to adjust the time.
3. Press the **CLOCK** button again to set the time.

## » Using the SETTINGS button

To set the time to the nearest hour: Press and hold the **CLOCK** button until the clock display blinks, then press the **6** (Reset) button.

Depending on the displayed time, the clock sets forward or backward.

Example:

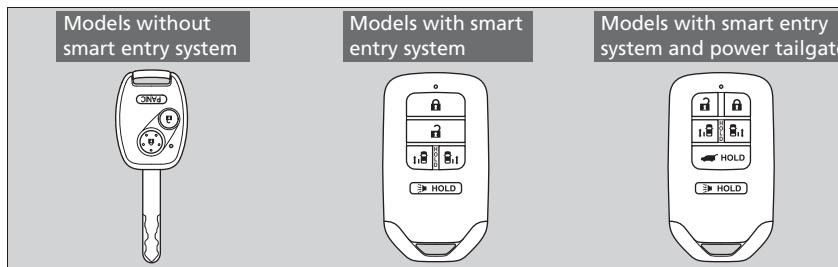
1:06 will reset to 1:00  
1:53 will reset to 2:00



## Key Types and Functions

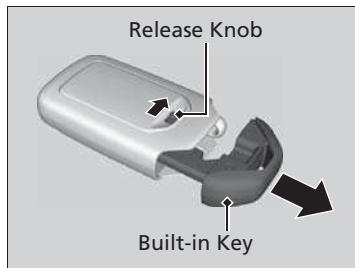
This vehicle comes with the following keys:

### Master Keys



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock the doors and tailgate. You can also use the remote transmitter or smart entry system\* to lock and unlock the doors and to open the tailgate.

### Smart entry remote\*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the smart entry remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, pull it out while sliding the release knob. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the smart entry remote until it clicks.

### Key Types and Functions

All of the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### Immobilizer System P. 135

The keys contain precision electronics.

Adhere to the following advice to prevent damage to the electronics:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.



## ■ Valet Key\*

Gray



Can be used to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock driver's door.

## »Valet Key\*

When you need to leave a key with a third party, leave the valet key.

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

## »Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

\* Not available on all models



## Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength\*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the smart entry remote when locking/unlocking the doors and the tailgate, opening the power sliding door and the power tailgate\*, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors, opening the power sliding door and the power tailgate\*, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the smart entry remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the smart entry remote.

### ▶ Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength\*

Communication between the smart entry remote and the vehicle consumes the smart entry remote's battery.

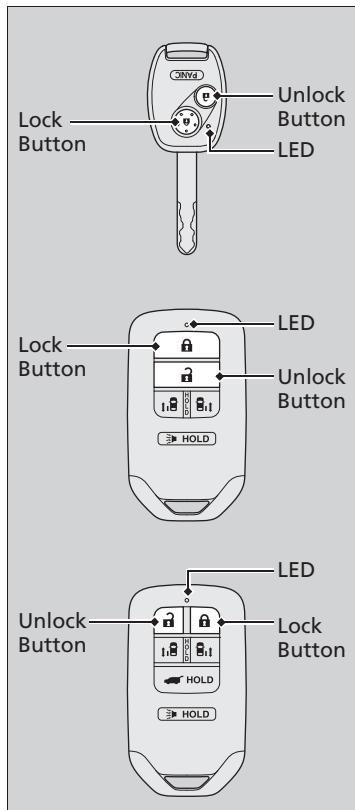
Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

The battery is consumed whenever the smart entry remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.



## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### Using the Remote Transmitter



#### Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

**Once:**

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors and the tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

**Twice (within five seconds after the first push):**

- ▶ A beeper sounds and verifies the security system\* is set.

#### Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

⇒ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the unlock button.

No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.

⇒ **Interior Lights** P. 176

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

#### Models without smart entry system

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

#### Models with smart entry system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or smart entry system only when the power mode is VEHICLE OFF.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ **Unlocking the doors**

Press the unlock button.

### Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

### Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock.

## ▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If the distance at which it works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

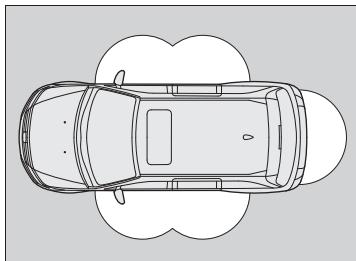
## ▶ Replacing the Button Battery P. 500

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

## ▶ Customized Features P. 99, 295

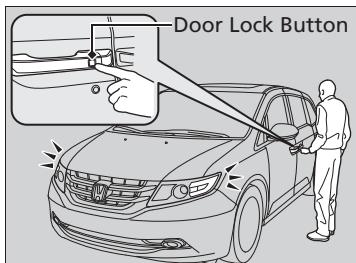


## Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System\*



When you carry the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate.

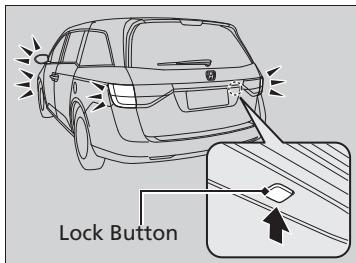
You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) of the outside door handle. You can open the tailgate within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the tailgate outer handle.



### Locking the doors and the tailgate

Press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



### Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System \*

- Do not leave the smart entry remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the smart entry remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the smart entry remote is within range.
- If you grip a door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- You cannot unlock the door by gripping the handle after two seconds of unlocking it.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the smart entry remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The smart entry remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

If the distance at which it works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

### Replacing the Button Battery P. 500

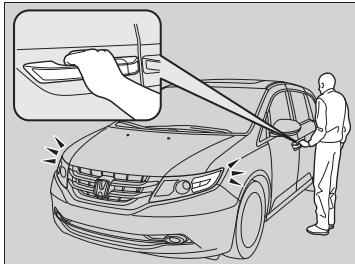
You can customize the door lock mode and keyless lock acknowledgement setting.

### Customized Features P. 99, 295

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Unlocking the doors and the tailgate

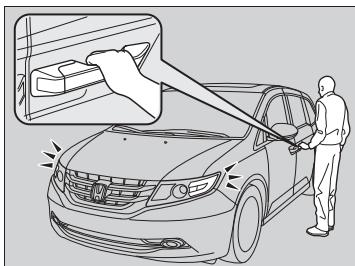


Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door or rear door handle:

- ▶ All doors and the tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

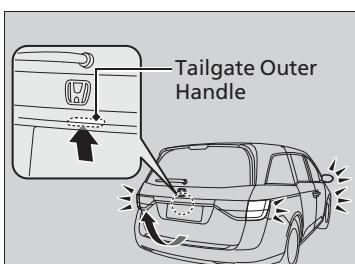


Press and hold the tailgate outer handle.

- ▶ All doors and the tailgate unlock and open.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

### ☒ Opening/Closing the Tailgate Using the Tailgate Outer Handle and Inner Handle

P. 122



## ☒ Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System\*

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep and unlock settings can be customized.

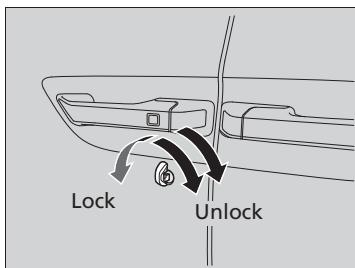
### ☒ Customized Features P. 99, 295

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

### ☒ Opening/Closing the Tailgate Using the Tailgate Outer Handle and Inner Handle P. 122

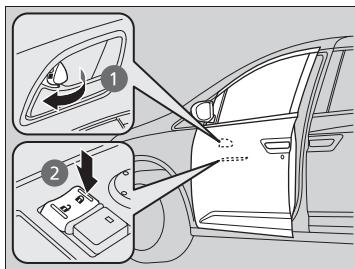


## Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key



Fully insert the key and turn it.

## Locking a Door Without Using a Key



### Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab rearward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, and close the door.

### Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab rearward and close the door.

### Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch<sup>\*1</sup>, or the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

### Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all of the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

### Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time.

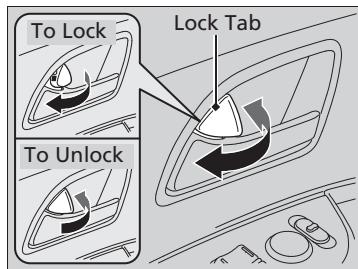
Make sure you have the key in your hand before locking the door to prevent it from being locked in the vehicle.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### Using the Lock Tab



#### Locking a door

Pull the lock tab.

#### Unlocking a door

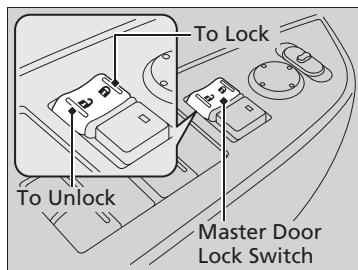
Push the lock tab in.

### Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all of the other doors and the tailgate lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

### Using the Master Door Lock Switch\*



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors and the tailgate.

### Using the Master Door Lock Switch\*

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

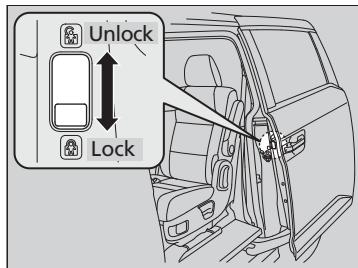
The front passenger's door also has the master door lock switch.



## Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks

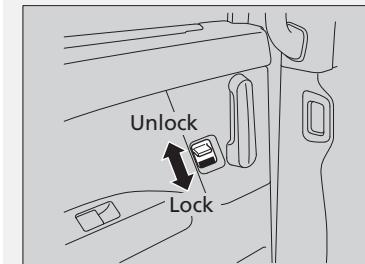


Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

### ■ When opening the sliding door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ▶▶ Childproof Door Locks



To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

#### Models with power sliding doors

The door pillar switches become disabled.

⇒ **Power Sliding Door Switches** P. 131



## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks all doors and the tailgate and unlocks the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

### Auto Door Locking

#### Drive lock mode

All doors and the tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

### Auto Door Unlocking

#### Park unlock mode

The driver's door unlocks when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

### Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen or multi-information display\*.

→ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295



# Opening and Closing the Tailgate

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

### ■ Opening the tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

### ■ Closing the tailgate

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

☒ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 66

»»Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

### ⚠ WARNING

Closing a power tailgate while anyone is in the path of the tailgate can cause serious injury.

Make sure everyone is clear before closing the tailgate.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the cargo area.

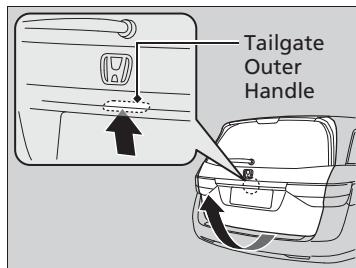
When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits their head or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the cargo area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the cargo space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.



## Opening/Closing the Tailgate Using the Tailgate Outer Handle and Inner Handle



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press and hold the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

### Models with smart entry system

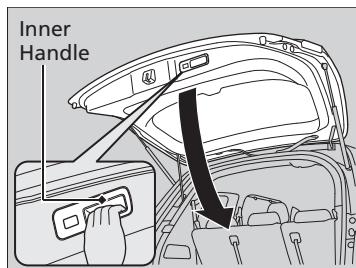
Even if the tailgate is locked, you can open the tailgate if you carry the smart entry remote.

### Models with power tailgate

When the **Power Tailgate Open By Outer Handle** setting is **On (Power/Manual)**, you can operate the power tailgate by pressing and releasing the tailgate outer handle.

#### ⇨ Customized Features P. 99, 295

To manually close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.





## Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the smart entry remote or instrument panel, or pressing the handle or button on the tailgate.

### ■ The power tailgate can be opened when:

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- The shift lever is in **[P]**.
- Press and hold the tailgate button on the smart entry remote for about one second when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
  - If you have changed the **Power Tailgate Keyless Open Mode** setting to **When Unlocked**, you need to unlock the tailgate before you press the tailgate button to open it.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

### ■ The power tailgate can be closed when:

- The tailgate is fully open.
- The shift lever is in **[P]**.
- Press and hold the tailgate button on the smart entry remote for about one second when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

»»Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

#### NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed.

Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

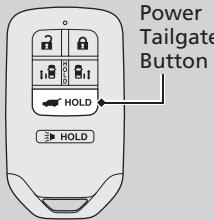
Installing aftermarket components other than genuine Honda accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.



## ■ Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate.

To reverse direction while the power tailgate is in operation, press the button again. The beeper sounds three times and the tailgate reverses direction.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. Three beeps sound.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

## ■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

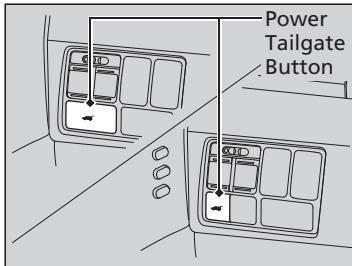
**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

**When Unlocked:** The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295



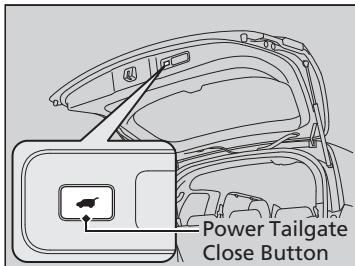
## Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second. The beeper sounds and some exterior lights flash.

To reverse direction while the power tailgate is in operation, press the button again. The beeper sounds three times and the tailgate reverses direction.

## Power Tailgate Close Button



Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is closing, it stops and reverses direction.

### » Power Tailgate Close Button

If you press the power tailgate close button while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing, the power tailgate operation stops. Use caution if the tailgate stops in the middle of either operation. It may suddenly swing up or down.



## ■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

## ■ Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate release button while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

## ■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

## ■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.



## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Sliding Doors

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the sliding doors.

### ■ Opening the sliding doors

Open the door all the way until it stops.

- If it is not fully opened, the door may close again by its own weight.

» Precautions for Opening/Closing the Sliding Doors

### ⚠ WARNING

Closing a sliding door while any part of a passenger is in the door's path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers are clear of the doorway before closing a sliding door.

Do not leave the sliding door open while parking on a slope. The door may slide close by its weight.

When opening or closing the sliding doors, do not grab the door or place your hand on the vehicle body. Use the handle.

Do not put your foot and hand on the sliding door rail and on the rollers.

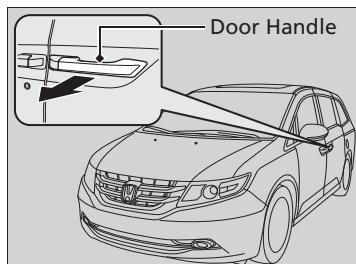
If a small child is in the vehicle, use the childproof door locks to prevent the child in the rear seat from accidentally opening the sliding doors.

⇒ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 119

Do not put any items that stick out from the pocket in the door pockets. It may prevent the doors from properly opening or closing, and damage the vehicle.



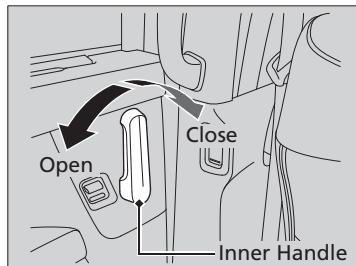
## Opening/Closing a Sliding Door



### ■ From outside

**To open:** Pull the door handle rearward and slide the door.

**To close:** Pull the door handle forward and slide the door.



### ■ From inside

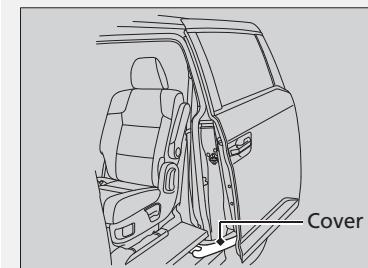
**To open:** Grab the inner handle and pull it rearward. Slide the door.

**To close:** Grab the inner handle and pull it forward. Slide the door.

### ▶Opening/Closing a Sliding Door

Once a door is fully opened, the door position is locked.

Do not step on the cover that stores the wiring for the sliding door. The wiring is likely to get damaged, causing the sliding door operation to malfunction.



If you try to open the sliding door with the window open more than 3 inch (8 cm), the door stops halfway. Close the door, close the window, and then open the door again.

While the fuel fill door is open, you cannot open the driver side sliding door. Operate the door after the fuel fill door is closed.

### Models with power sliding doors

If you try to open the driver side power sliding door while the fuel fill door is open, the beeper sounds and the door stops.



## Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors\*

The power sliding doors can be operated by pressing the power sliding door button on the smart entry remote, pressing the power sliding door switches on the dashboard or door pillars, or using the door handle.

The power sliding doors can be operated when:

- The sliding door main switch is in the **ON** position.
- The power sliding door is unlocked.
- The fuel fill door is closed (on the driver side sliding door only).
- The power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) when using the smart entry remote.
- The shift lever is in **P**, the brake pedal is depressed, or the parking brake is applied (with the power mode in ON) when using the power sliding door switches on the dashboard.

### »Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors\*

If you move the shift lever out of **P**, and release the brake pedal and the parking brake:

While opening – The sliding door stops and is left ajar.

While closing – The beeper sounds until the door closes.

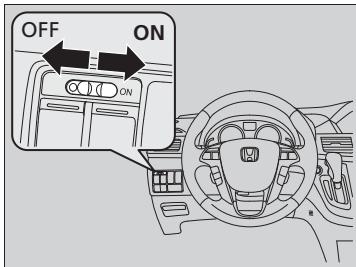
Check that passengers, especially children, do not have their hands on the sliding doors or on the door pillars before its operation. If someone is caught in the opening or closing sliding door, it can cause serious injury.

Before replacing a rear tire, turn the power sliding door main switch to OFF.

Operate the power sliding doors only when the vehicle is at a complete stop. Make sure you apply the brake when rear passengers are boarding or exiting.



## ■ Switching between manual and automatic operations



**Automatic operation:** Select the **ON** position of the sliding door main switch.

**Manual operation:** Select the **OFF** position of the sliding door main switch.

☒ **Opening/Closing a Sliding Door** P. 128

## ☒Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors\*

Do not turn the main switch off while the power sliding door is in operation on a slope. The power sliding door's fail-safe mode activates and the beeper sounds continuously.

When the fail-safe mode is active, turn the main switch on and close the door automatically.

The following can deactivate the fail-safe mode and the sliding door may close by its own weight.

- Using the door handle
- Turning the main switch from **ON** to **OFF**

If you replace the battery or the power sliding door fuse while the door is open, the power sliding door may be disabled. The power sliding door resumes once you manually close the door.

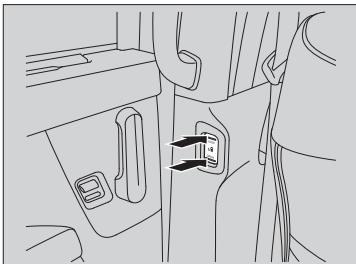


## Power Sliding Door Switches



The power sliding door opens when you press the **OPEN** side of the / switch, and closes when you press the **CLOSE** side of the / switch.

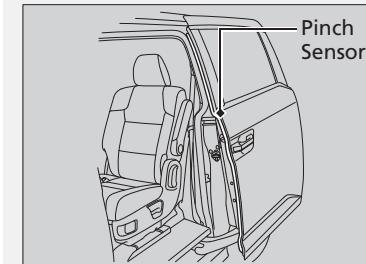
While the power sliding door is in operation, if you press the switch that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.



To resume the power sliding door operation, press the same switch again.

## Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors\*

### Auto Reverse



Do not touch the pinch sensor located at the front edge of the power sliding door. Do not damage the sensor. The power sliding door may not operate properly.

If the power sliding door senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction. The beeper sounds.

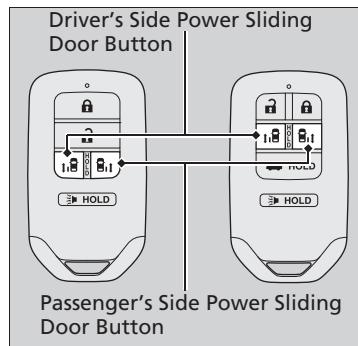
Before the power sliding door operation, make sure there are no people or obstacles near the door. The auto reverse function should be activated in case of emergency only. If someone is caught in the opening or closing sliding door, it can cause serious injury. Pay special attention to children.

Closing a power sliding door on someone's hand or fingers can cause serious injury. Some parts of the door edge do not sense resistance when the door is near closing.

\* Not available on all models



## Smart Entry Remote



Press the power sliding door button for more than one second to operate.

While the power sliding door is in operation, if you press the button that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

If you press the same button again, the sliding door reverses its direction.

### Smart Entry Remote

When you press the power sliding door button to open the door, the front door on the same side unlocks.

## Customizing when to open the sliding doors

**Anytime:** The power sliding door unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

**When Unlocked:** The door opens when all doors are unlocked.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

### Customizing when to open the sliding doors

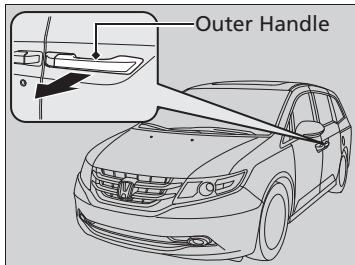
When you select **When Unlocked**, you will hear three short beeps.

When you select **Any Time**, you will hear one long beep.

In **When Unlocked**, trying to operate the power sliding door without unlocking the door triggers the beeper to sound.

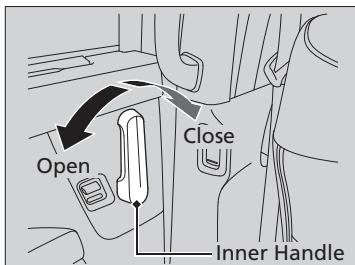


## Door Handles



### Outer handles

Pull up on the outer handle towards you. The sliding door starts opening or closing.



### Inner handles

Pull it rearward to automatically open the sliding door, and pull it forward to automatically close the door.

## ▶▶Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Doors\*

The beeper sounds and the power sliding door does not open when you pull the inner or outer handle under the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The shift lever is in other than **P**.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The parking brake is released.

If you leave the power sliding door half open on a steep hill with the engine off, the door starts to sliding down towards the hill bottom after 30 minutes. While the door is sliding down, the beeper sounds.

While the power sliding door is in operation, if you pull either handle that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

To resume the power sliding door operation, pull the same handle in the same direction again.

\* Not available on all models



## Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power sliding door, it latches automatically.

### Models with power sliding door

The auto-closer feature activates with or without the main switch **ON**. The only exception is when the fuel fill door is open with the main switch **ON**.

### Auto-Closer

Keep your hands away from the power sliding door. The manually closed door latches automatically when it is half-shut.

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you keep pulling the inner or outer handle and while the sliding door is closing.

Do not put any force on the power sliding door while the door is latching.



## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch.

## Security System Alarm\*

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, hood, or doors are opened without the key, remote transmitter, or smart entry system\*.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and all of the exterior lights flash.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter, or smart entry system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### » Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the ignition key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

### » Security System Alarm\*

The security alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system deactivates.



## ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK **0**<sup>\*1</sup>, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The hood is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked with the key, the remote transmitter or smart entry system.

## ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

## ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key, remote transmitter, or smart entry system, or the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

## ▶Security System Alarm\*

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.

### Models with power tailgate

- Opening the tailgate with the power tailgate button on the dashboard.

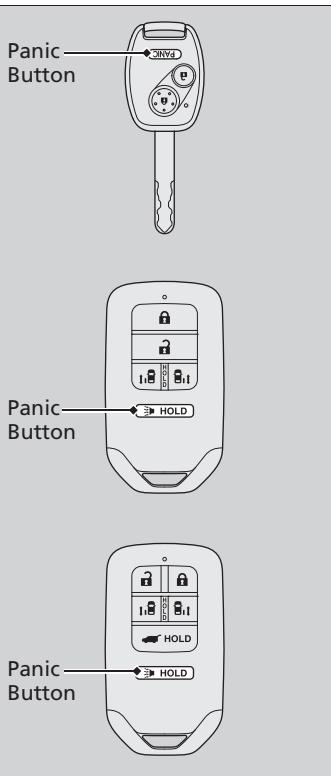
If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key or remote transmitter.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Panic Mode



### ■ The panic button on the remote transmitter

If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

### ■ Canceling panic mode

Press any button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



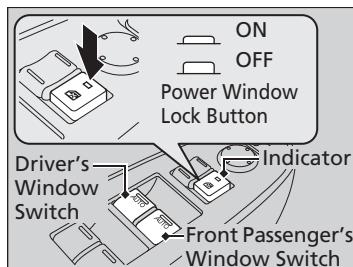
## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON [II]<sup>\*1</sup>, using the switches on the doors. The driver side switches can be used to open and close all of the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on when children are in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



#### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.  
**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

#### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.  
**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

## WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off. Opening either front door cancels this function.

#### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

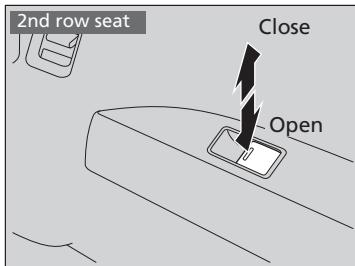
The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function

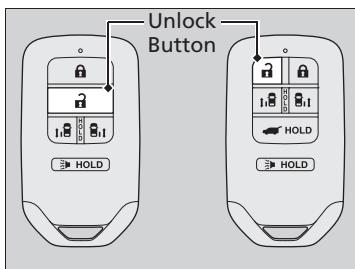


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## Opening the Windows and Moonroof\* with the Remote Transmitter

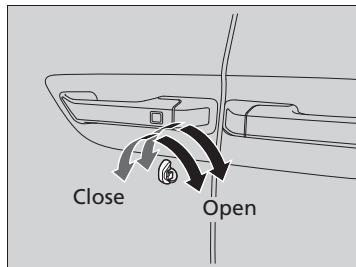


**To open:** Press the unlock button twice within 10 seconds and hold it down for the second time. If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof\* with the Key



**To open:** Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

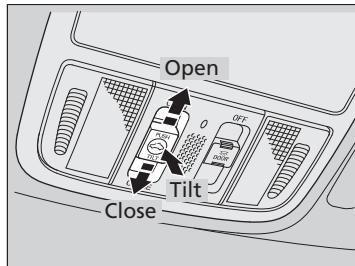
Release the key to stop the windows/moonroof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.



# Opening and Closing the Moonroof\*

## Opening/Closing the Moonroof

You can only operate the moonroof when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.



### ■ Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof will automatically open or close all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, touch the switch briefly.

### ■ Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

### ■ Tilting the moonroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the center of the moonroof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

## Opening/Closing the Moonroof

### ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

### NOTICE

Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

The power moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off. Opening either front door cancels this function.

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof.

☒ **Opening the Windows and Moonroof\* with the Remote Transmitter** P. 139

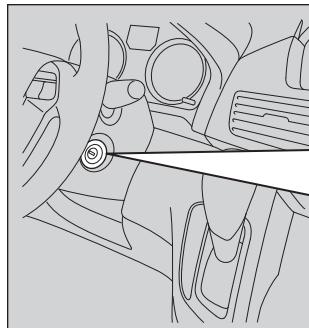
☒ **Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof\* with the Key** P. 140

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



## Ignition Switch\*



**0** LOCK: Insert and remove the key in this position.

**1** ACCESSORY: Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

**II** ON: This is the position when driving.

**III** START: This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

### Ignition Switch\*

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.

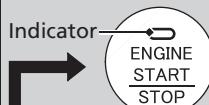
If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **1**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **1**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.



## ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

### Changing the Power Mode



#### VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)

Indicator in the button is off.  
The steering wheel is locked. The power to all electrical components is turned off.



#### ACCESSORY

Indicator in the button is on.  
Indicator in the button blinks (from ON to ACCESSORY). Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.



#### ON

Indicator in the button is on.  
All electrical components can be used.

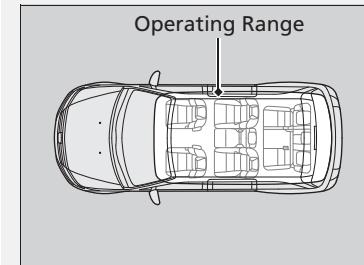
#### Without pressing the brake pedal

- Press the button.
- Press the button without the shift lever in **P**.
- Shift to **P** then press the button.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶▶ ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the smart entry remote is inside the vehicle.

The engine may also run if the smart entry remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

#### ON mode:

Indicator in the button is off, if the engine is running.

If the smart entry remote battery is weak, the beeper sounds and the **TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON** message appears on the multi-information display\*.

- **If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 521

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.



## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the smart entry system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).



## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

## ■ Smart Entry Remote Reminder

Models with information display



Models with multi-information display

KEYLESS  
REMOTE NOT  
DETECTED



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/ and outside the vehicle to remind you that the smart entry remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzers sound from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the information display or multi-information display notifies the driver inside that the remote is out.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

### »Smart Entry Remote Reminder

When the smart entry remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the smart entry remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the smart entry remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the smart entry remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.



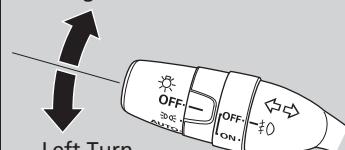
## Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key)		ACCESSORY (I)		ON (II)		START (III)	
Without Smart Entry System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li><li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li><li>• No electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off.</li><li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Normal key position while driving.</li><li>• All electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use this position to start the engine.</li><li>• The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.</li></ul>				
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)		ACCESSORY		ON Indicator is: On		START Off	
With Smart Entry System and <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> Button	Indicator-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li><li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li><li>• No electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	Indicator-On or blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Engine is turned off.</li><li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li></ul>	Indicator-On (engine is turned off) Off (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• All electrical components can be used.</li></ul>	Indicator-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.</li></ul>				



## Turn Signals

Right Turn



Left Turn

The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON [II]<sup>\*1</sup>.

### ■ One-touch turn signal

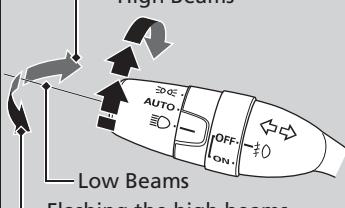
When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times.

The feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

## Light Switches

### Manual Operation

High Beams



Low Beams  
Flashing the high beams

Turns on parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Turns on headlights, parking, side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the position of the ignition switch<sup>\*1</sup>.

### ■ High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### ■ Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### ■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### » Light Switches

#### Models with smart entry system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the lights on, a light on reminder chime sounds when you open the driver's door.

#### Models without smart entry system

If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

#### → Lights On Indicator P. 77

#### Models with high voltage discharge tube bulb

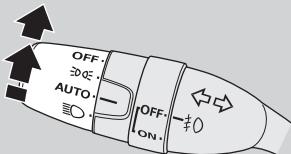
Repeatedly turning the headlights on and off reduces the life of the HID headlight bulbs. If you sense that the level of the headlights is abnormal, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Automatic Lighting Control\*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON [II]\*<sup>1</sup>.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

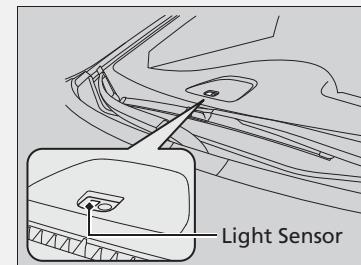
► You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

### Automatic Lighting Control\*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
<b>MAX</b>	Bright
<b>HIGH</b>	
<b>MID</b>	
<b>LOW</b>	
<b>MIN</b>	Dark

\*<sup>1</sup>: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Headlight Integration with Wiper\*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.  
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

- ▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
- ☒ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*<sup>1</sup> with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (three minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

### ▶▶ Headlight Integration with Wiper \*

This feature activates during the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

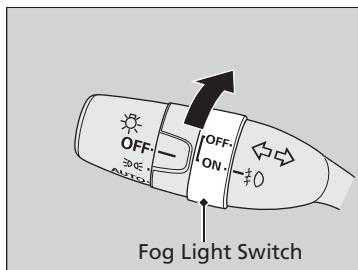
At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



## Fog Lights\*



When the low beam headlights are on, turn the fog light switch on to use the fog lights.

### ▶Fog Lights\*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

▶ **Fog Light Indicator\*** P. 78

## Daytime Running Lights

The high beam headlights come on slightly dimmer than normal when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>.
- The headlight switch is off.
- The parking brake is released.

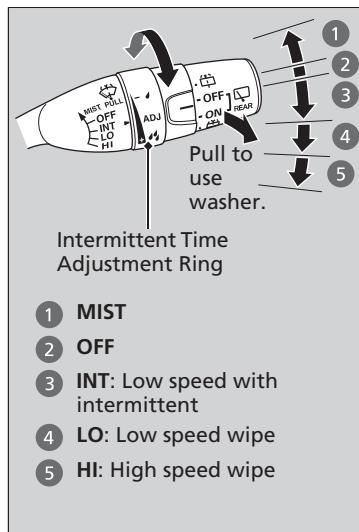
The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake. Turning off the ignition switch or setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.

The high beam headlights return to the original brightness once the headlight switch is turned on.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Wipers and Washers



- 1 **MIST**
- 2 **OFF**
- 3 **INT**: Low speed with intermittent
- 4 **LO**: Low speed wipe
- 5 **HI**: High speed wipe

The windshield wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON [II]<sup>\*1</sup>.

### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Adjusting the delay

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper delay.



Long delay

Short delay

### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers make two or three more sweeps before stopping.

### »Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield, becoming stuck. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defroster to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep.

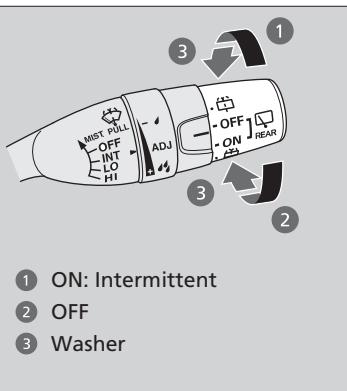
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (4) and the LO setting become the same.

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Rear Wiper/Washer



- ① ON: Intermittent
- ② OFF
- ③ Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, ON)

The wiper operates intermittently after completing a few sweeps.

### ■ Washer (喷)

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.

Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

## ▶Wipers and Washers

If the wiper stops operating due to any obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to OFF, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **□**\*<sup>1</sup>, then remove the obstacle.

The wiper motor is equipped with a breaker that may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

## ■ Operating in reverse

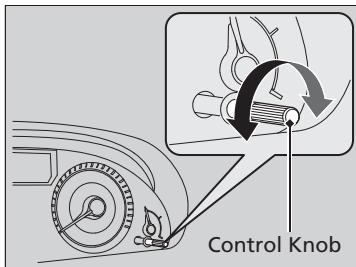
When you shift the transmission to **R** with the front wiper activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe)	Continuous
HI (High speed wipe)	

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Brightness Control

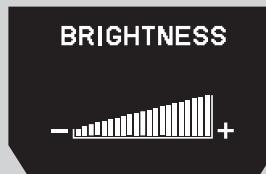


When the parking lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.  
**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. The information display\*/multi-information display\* will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.

On multi-information display



On information display



\* Not available on all models

### ▶ Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

Pressing the (Select/Reset) knob or the / (information) button\* changes to a different display.

If you turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on.

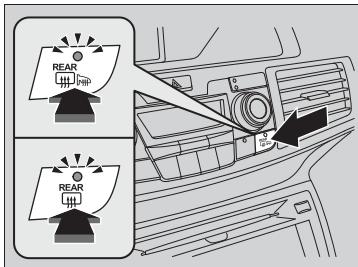
### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the information display\*/multi-information display\* while you are adjusting it.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror\* Button



Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>.

### Models with heating and cooling system

The rear defogger and heated door mirrors\* automatically switch off after 20 minutes.

### Models with climate control system

The rear defogger and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F (0°C) or below, they do not automatically switch off.

### ▶Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

#### NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the defogger heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged.

Also, do not use the system for a long period when the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Driving Position Memory System\*

You can store two driver's seat and outside mirrors position with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote, the seat and outside mirrors adjust automatically to one of the two preset positions.

The multi-information display shows you which remote transmitter you used to unlock the vehicle when you enter.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



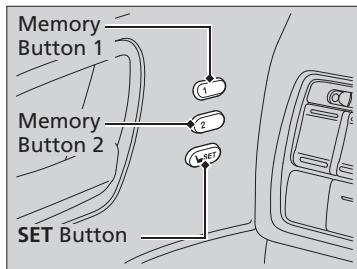
### »Driving Position Memory System\*

Using the audio/information screen or multi-information display, you can disable the automatic seat and door mirrors adjustment function.

☞ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295



## ■ Storing a Position in Memory



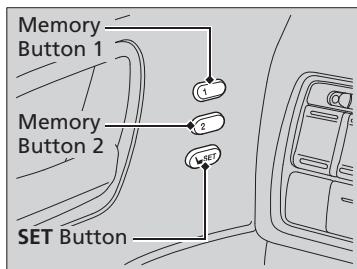
1. Adjust the driver's seat and the door mirrors to the desired position, and set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the **SET** button.
  - ▶ You will hear the beeper, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button **1** or **2** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
  - ▶ Once the seat and the outside mirrors position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

### ▶ Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You readjust the door mirrors.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

## ■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Move the shift lever to **P**.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (**1** or **2**).
  - ▶ You will hear the beeper, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat and the door mirrors will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

### ▶ Recalling the Stored Position

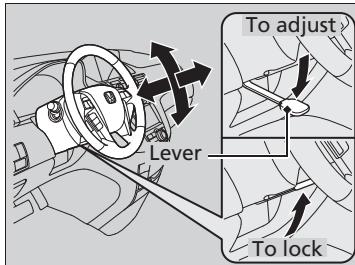
The seat and the door mirrors will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (**1** or **2**).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Adjust the door mirrors.
- Shift into any position except **P**.



## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
  - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

»»Adjusting the Steering Wheel

### ⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

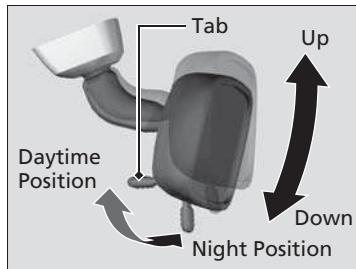
Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.



## Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

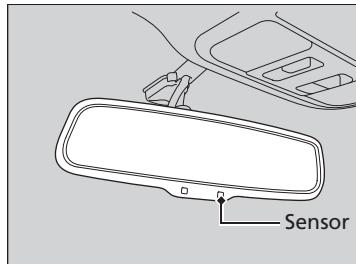
### Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

### Adjusting the Seat Positions P. 161

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



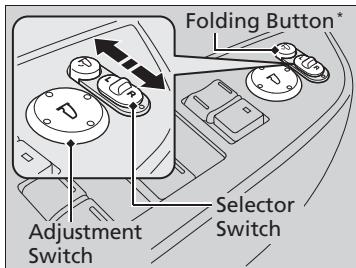
When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based on inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in **R**.



## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors\*

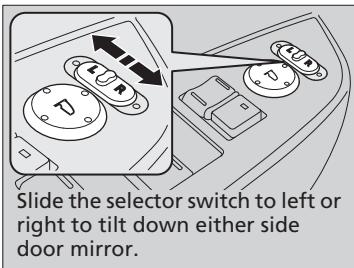
Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



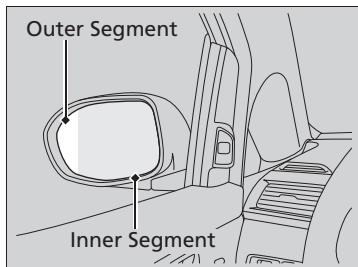
## Reverse Tilt Door Mirror\*



If activated, either side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the shift lever in **R**; this improves close-in visibility on the selected side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you shift out of **R**.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON and slide the selector switch to the left or right side.

## Expanded View Driver's Mirror



The driver side door mirror has outer and inner segments.

The outer segment is slightly curved to provide a wider angle view than a standard flat mirror. This wider view may help you check areas that are not visible using a standard door mirror.

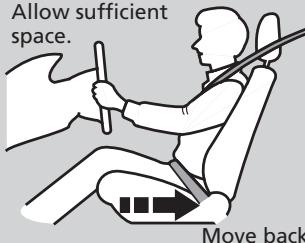
### Expanded View Driver's Mirror

Objects visible in the outer segment of the driver side door mirror appear smaller than objects in the rest of the mirror. But in fact, they are closer than they appear.

Do not rely on your mirrors. Always look to the side and behind your vehicle before changing lanes.

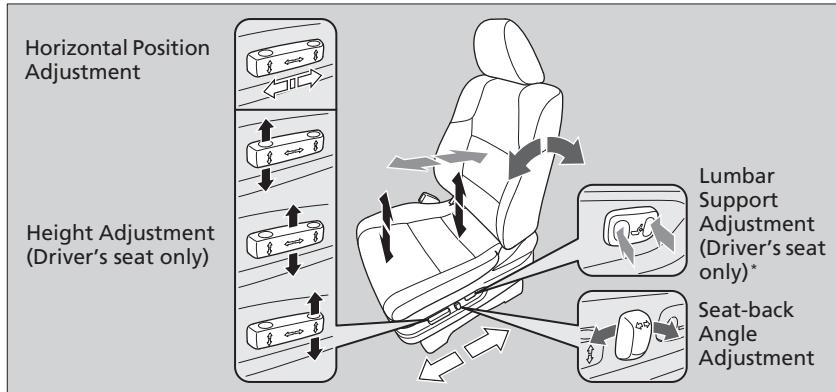


## Adjusting the Seat Positions



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### ■ Adjusting the front power seats



\* Not available on all models

### » Adjusting the Seats

#### ⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

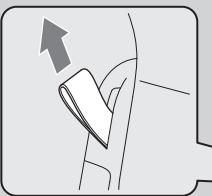
#### The second and third row seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



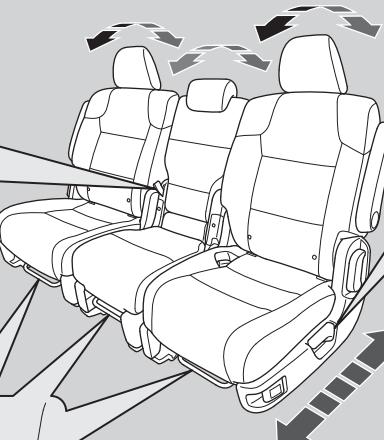
## ■ Adjusting the passenger's manual seats

### Second row seat



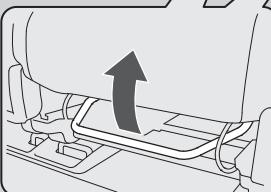
#### Seat-back Angle Adjustment\*

Pull the strap to change the angle.



#### Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Pull up the lever to change the angle.



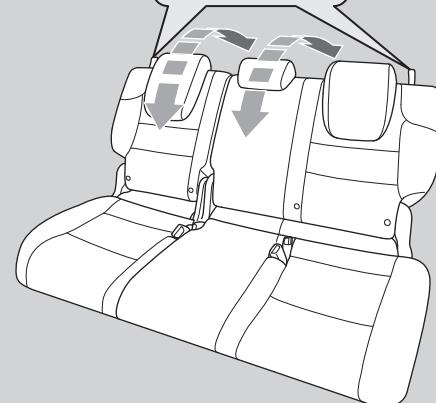
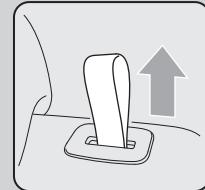
#### Horizontal Position Adjustment

Pull up the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

### Third row seat

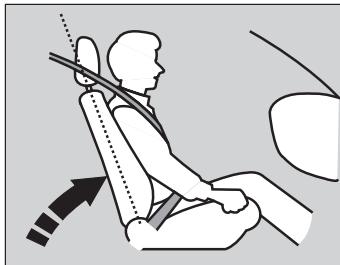
#### Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Pull up strap on the right to change the angle of the right halves of the seat-back, and left for the left halves.





## Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

#### ⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

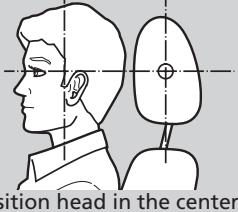
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.



## Adjusting the Head Restraints



Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

### Adjusting the Head Restraints

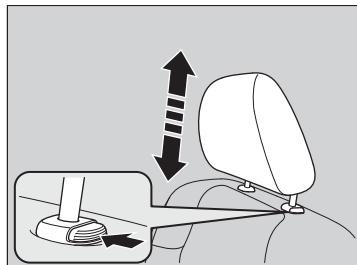
#### **WARNING**

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

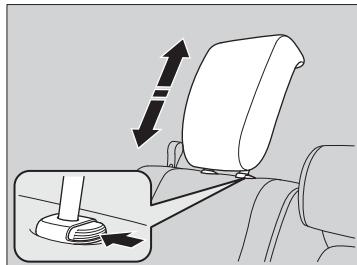


## ■ Adjusting the front and second row outer and third row outer head restraint positions



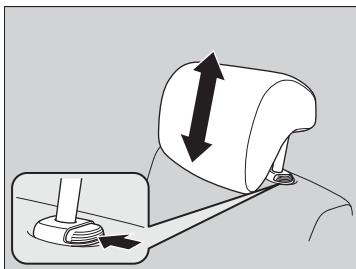
**To raise the head restraint:** Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:** Push it down while pressing the release button.





## ■ Changing the Second Row\*/Third Row Center Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the second row/third row center seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

### **To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

### **To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### **To remove a head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### **To reinstall a head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

## **WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

To remove the third row seat outer head restraints, fold down the seat-back first.

▶ **Adjusting the passenger's manual seats**  
P. 162



## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### » Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

#### ⚠ WARNING

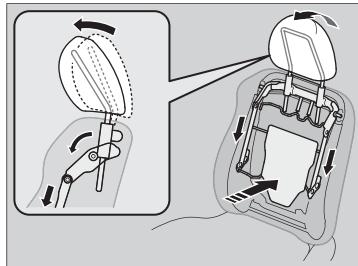
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.



## ■ Active Head Restraints

The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. In a rear impact, an occupant properly secured by a seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will move forward. This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head, which helps reduce the likelihood of whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.



### ► Active Head Restraints

In order for the active head restraints to operate properly:

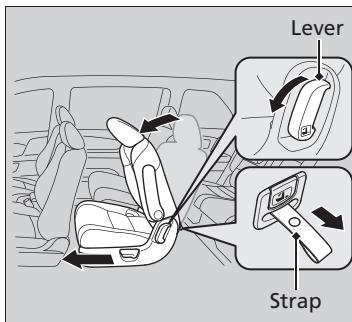
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position. If the restraint does not return to its normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.



## Rear Seats

### Third Row Seat Access



Pull up on the seat-back angle adjustment lever, or pulling the release strap tilts the second row outer seat's seat-back forward.

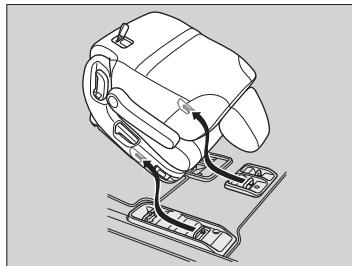
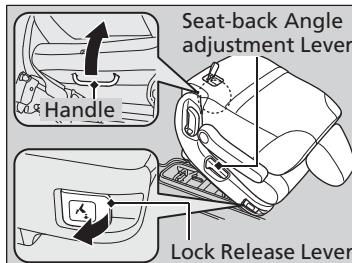
Slide the whole seat forward.

### Third Row Seat Access

When you enter the third row seat, be careful not to trip over the second row seat belt. If necessary, move the seat forward after tilting the seat-back forward.



## ■ Removing a Second Row Outer Seat



1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Move the seat to its rearmost position.
3. Fold the seat-back down.
4. Pull the lock release lever, and lift the rear of the seat.
  - To lift the seat, grab the handle under the rear side of the seat cushion.
5. Pull the seat-back slightly, then pivot it upward.
  - This unhooks the front of the seat from the floor.

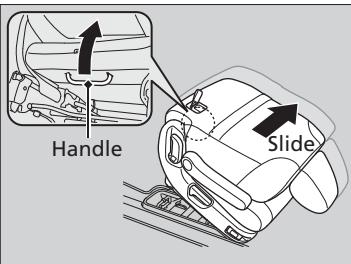
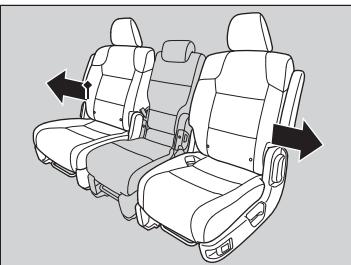
### ✖ Removing a Second Row Outer Seat

Do not remove the seat while driving.

To reinstall the seat, hook the front of the seat to the floor first. Pushing the rear of the seat-back locks the seat in place. Make sure the seat is latched before driving.



## Sliding the Second Row Outer Seats Outward



1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Move the seat to its rearmost position.
3. Fold the seat-back down.
4. Pull the lock release lever, and lift the rear of the seat.  
► To lift the seat, grab the handle under the rear side of the seat cushion.
5. With the front of the seat hooked to the floor, slide the seat laterally to the outer position until it stops.
6. Lower the seat and push the rear of the seat-back until it locks. Make sure the seat is latched before driving.

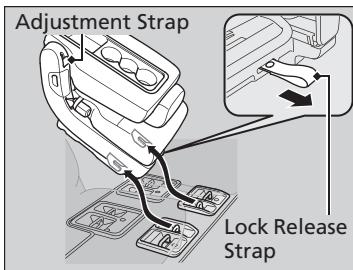
### Sliding the Second Row Outer Seats Outward

When the second row outer seats are in the original (center) position, passengers have easier access to the third row seats. When they are in the outer position, you can install two or three child seats in the second row seats.



## ■ Removing the Second Row Center Seat\*

Your vehicle's multi-functional second row center seat is removable.



1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert a key into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.  
     **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 35**
3. Pull up the adjustment strap, and fold down the seat-back.
4. Pull the lock release strap under the seat cushion, and lift the rear of the seat.  
    ► To lift the seat, hold the seat-back.
5. Pull the seat-back slightly, then pivot it upward.  
    ► This unhooks the front of the seat from the floor.

## ■ Removing the Second Row Center Seat\*

Do not remove the seat while driving.

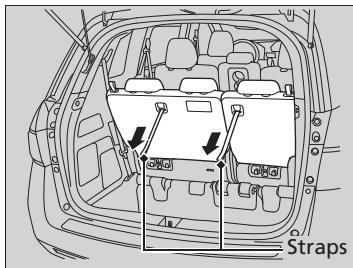
The multi-functional center seat can be used as the beverage holder when folded down.

### ► Beverage Holders P. 181

To reinstall the seat, hook the front of the seat to the floor first. Pushing the rear of the seat-back locks the seat in place. Make sure the seat is latched before driving.



## Tucking away the One-Motion Third row magic Seat®



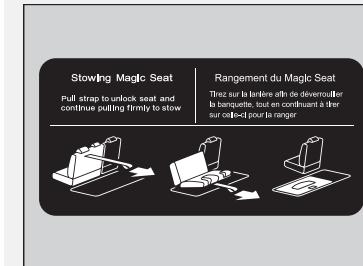
1. Store the center seat belt first. Insert a key into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
3. Lower the head restraints to their lowest position.
4. The right and left halves can be tucked away separately. Pull either strap to release the front leg lock of the third row seat.
5. Continue pulling the strap to tuck the seat and strap away into the cargo area.

### Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 35

## ▶▶Tucking away the One-Motion Third row magic Seat®

Remove any items from the cargo area before you tuck away the third row seat.

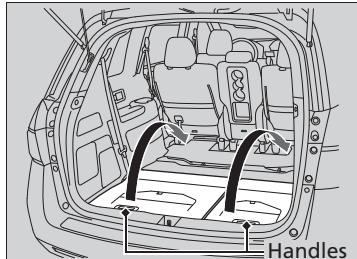
The instruction label is attached at the back of the third row seat-back.



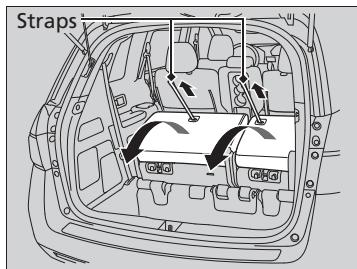
When you tuck away one side of the third row seats and use the non-recessed part of the cargo area, make sure to secure the cargo. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard.



■ To return the seat to the upright position:



1. Grab the handle from outside.  
Pull up the folded seat and pivot it forward.



2. The front leg automatically latches.  
Pull the strap to put the seat-back(s) upright.

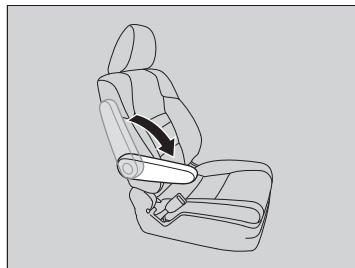
➤ To return the seat to the upright position:

Make sure the seat is latched before driving.



## Armrest

### Using the Front and Second Row Outer Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest.

#### Front seat with adjustable armrest

Pivot down the armrest all the way, then pull it up to a desired angle.

### Using the Second and Third Row Seat Armrest\*

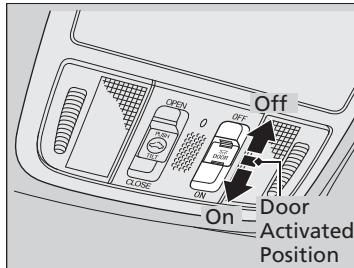


Pull down the armrest of the center seat-back.



## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors or the tailgate are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

##### Front:

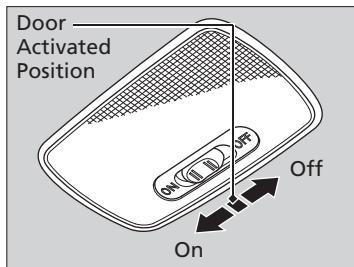
- When any of the doors or the tailgate are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

##### Models with smart entry system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)

##### Models without smart entry system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.



#### Cargo area:

When the tailgate is open.

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors or the tailgate are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

##### Models with smart entry system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

##### Models without smart entry system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

You can change the interior light dimming time.

#### → Customized Features P. 99, 295

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1.

##### Models with smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

##### Models without smart entry system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

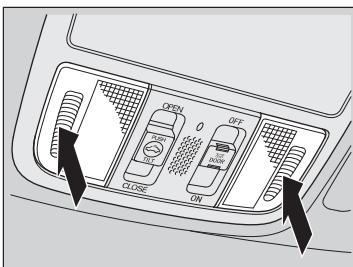
If you leave any of the doors open without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

If you leave the tailgate open without the ignition switch in ON **II**\*1, the cargo area light goes off after about 30 minutes.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

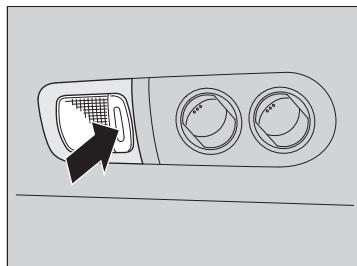


## Map Lights



### Front

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.



### Second and third row

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses when the front interior light switch is in the door activated position.

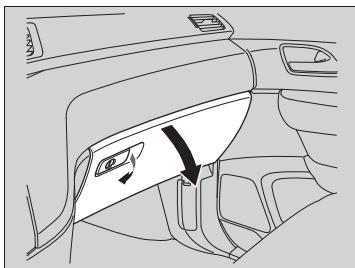
## Map Lights

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.



## Interior Convenience Items

### Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the master key or built-in key\*.

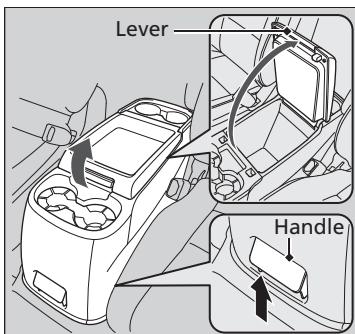
### Glove Box

#### **WARNING**

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

### Removable Center Console\*



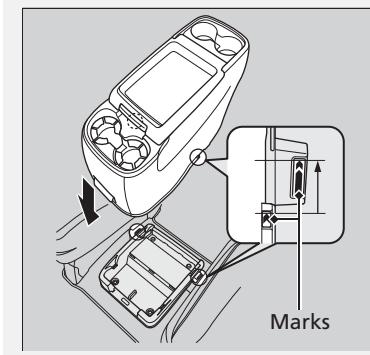
Pull up on the lever to open the console compartment.

#### ■ Removing the center console

Pull up the handle on the front lower side and unlock the console from the floor. Raise it forward to remove.

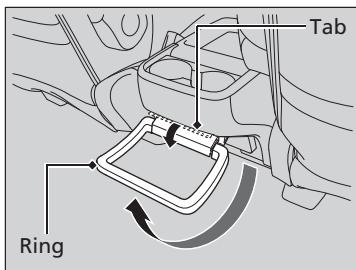
### Removable Center Console\*

When you reinstall the center console, place the rear side on the floor first, and align the marks on the sides with the marks on the floor. Push the center console down and lock it. Make sure it is securely latched before driving.





## Flip-up Trash Bag Ring\*



Pull up the ring until it clicks, and lift the tab. Put a plastic bag in the ring. Push the tab down to hold the bag.

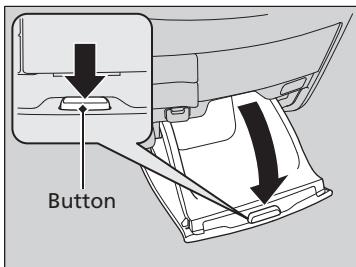
### Flip-up Trash Bag Ring\*

The ring is designed to hold light items only. Store the ring when it is not in use.

\* Not available on all models

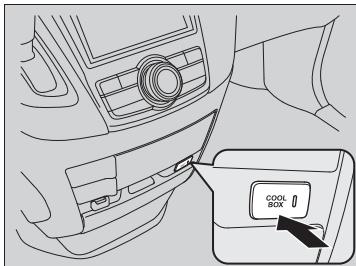


## Center Pocket



Press the button to open the center pocket.

## Using the center pocket as a cool box\*



While the air conditioner is in use, you can store items in the center pocket to keep them cool.

Press the **COOL BOX** button to cool inside the center pocket (indicator on).

## Using the center pocket as a cool box\*

### NOTICE

Do not put opened cans, or uncovered containers with loose ice inside the cool box. Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery and electrical components in and around the cool box.

The cool box is not a refrigerator. It only keeps chilled beverages cool.

The climate control system continues to cool the cool box when the heater is turned on.

Pressing the **COOL BOX** button automatically turns on the air conditioning system.

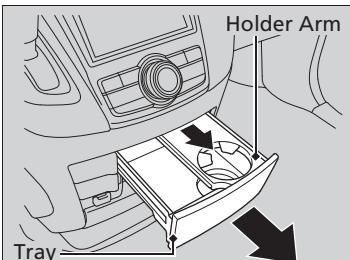
The cool box automatically turns off if:

- The air conditioning system is turned off.
- You turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

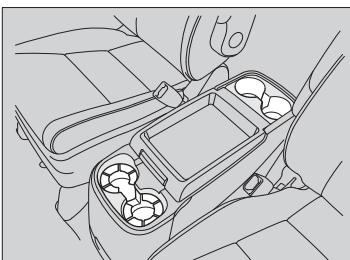


## Beverage Holders

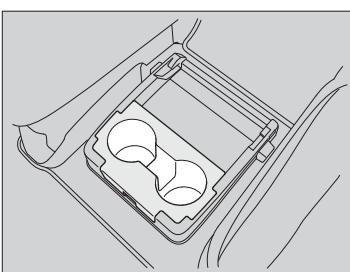


### ■ Front panel beverage holder\*

Pull the beverage holder arm inside the front panel tray until the arm contacts the tray front.



### ■ Removable center console beverage holders\*



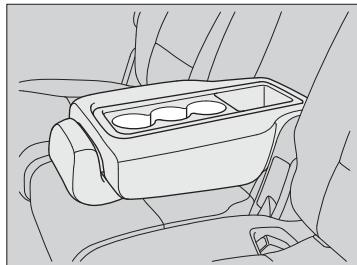
### ■ Front seat beverage holders\*

## »Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

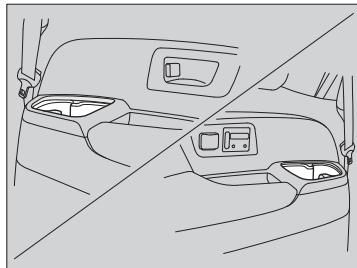
Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ **Second row seat beverage holders\***

To use the beverage holder, fold the seat-back.

☞ **Using the Second and Third Row Seat  
Armrest\*** P. 175

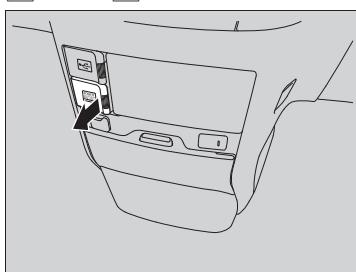


■ **Third row seat beverage holders**



## Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>.



### Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.

## Accessory Power Sockets

### NOTICE

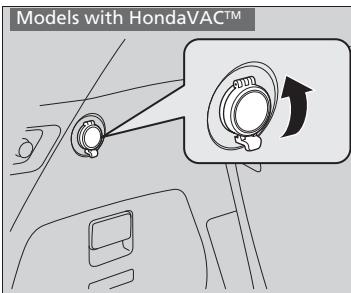
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts (10 amps) or less.

To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine run.

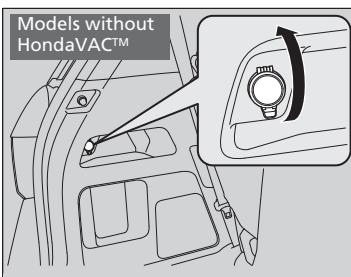
When each socket is being used simultaneously, the combined power rating of the accessories should not exceed 120 watts (10 amps).

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



**■ Accessory power socket (cargo area)**

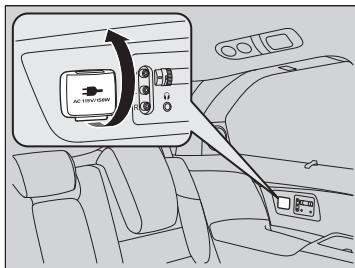
Open the cover to use it.





## AC Power Outlet\*

The AC power outlet can be used when the engine is running.



Open the cover to use it. Plug in the appliance slightly, turn it 90° clockwise, then push it all the way.

### AC Power Outlet\*

#### NOTICE

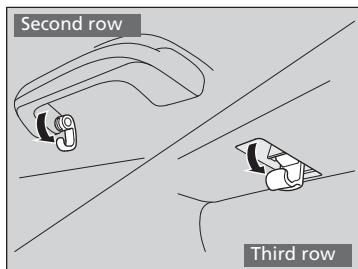
Do not use the AC power outlet for electric appliances that require high initial peak wattage, such as cathode-ray tube type televisions, refrigerators, electric pumps, etc. It is not suitable for devices that process precise data, such as medical equipment, and that require an extremely stable power supply, such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.

The AC power outlet is designed to supply power for up to 115 volt appliances that are rated 150 watts or less.

\* Not available on all models



## Coat Hooks

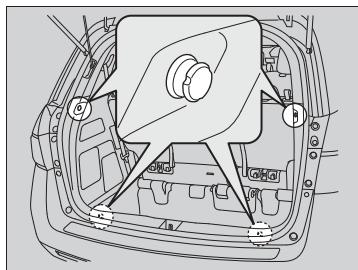


There are coat hooks on the both side of the grab handle and the window frame. Pull it down to use it.

## Coat Hooks

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

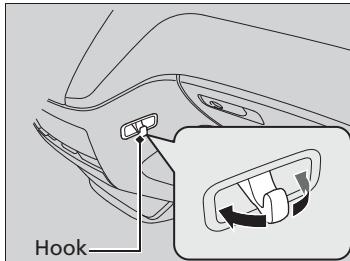
## Cargo Hooks



Use the cargo hooks to secure luggage in the cargo area.

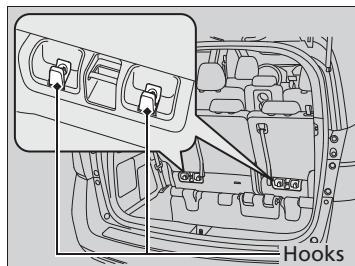


## Grocery Bag Hooks



### Front

Pull out the hook on the instrument panel from the side.



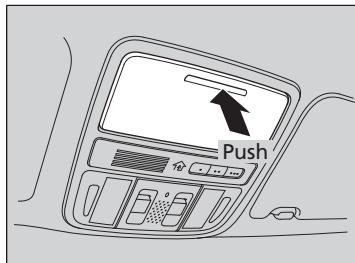
### Rear

### Grocery Bag Hooks

The hooks are designed to hold light items. Heavy objects may damage the hook.

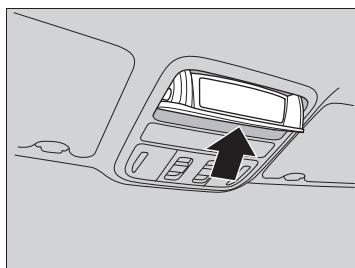


## Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.



### ■ Conversation mirror\*

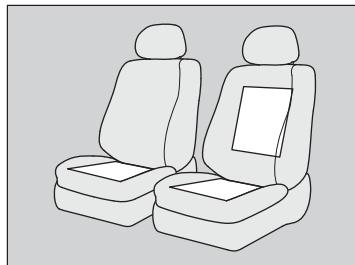
The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent. You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

## Sunglasses Holder

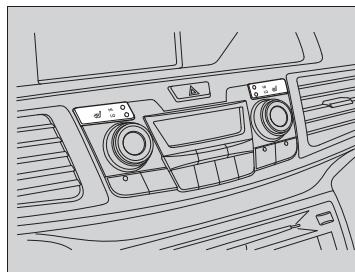
Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.



## Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters. The **HI** setting heats the seats faster than the **LO** setting.



The appropriate indicator will be on while the seat heater is on. Each time you press the switch, the mode changes to **HI**, **LO** and off.

### »Seat Heaters\*

#### ⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

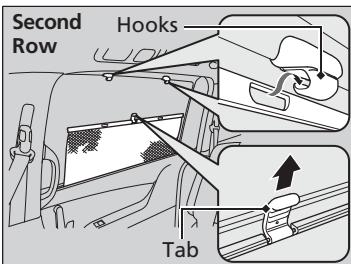
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

\* Not available on all models

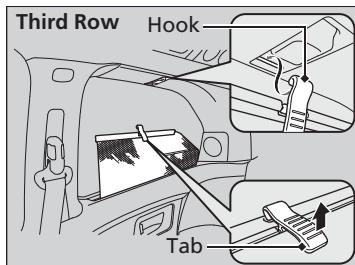


## ■ Integrated Sunshades\*



### ■ Second row sunshades

Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.



### ■ Third row sunshades

Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Attach the tab to the hook.

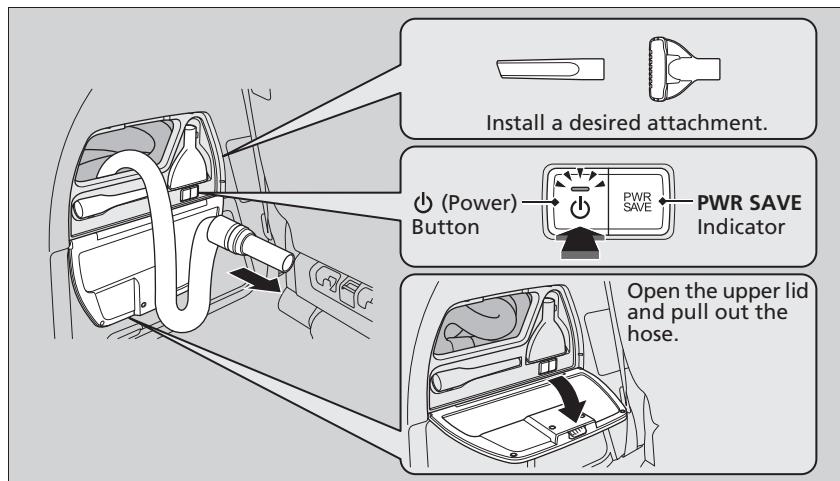
## ■ Integrated Sunshades\*

Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. Using the shade while a window is open can unhook and blow off the shade, hitting and hurting anyone sitting near the window.



## HondaVAC™\*

Is an in-car vacuum system for cleaning the inside of your vehicle. The vacuum can be operated with the engine running or for up to eight minutes without the engine running.



## HondaVAC™\*

### WARNING

- Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide that builds up rapidly in enclosed areas. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you. If running the engine to power the vacuum, park the vehicle outdoors and lower all windows to ensure adequate ventilation.
- Do not vacuum flammable liquids or in an area with flammable vapors. A fire or explosion could result, causing death or serious injury.

### NOTICE

The vacuum is intended for dry use only. Water and other liquids can damage the vacuum.



**■ To operate:**

1. Set the parking brake.

**Without engine running**

2. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY.

**With engine running**

2. Start the engine.
3. Press the  button to turn on the system.

**■ To operate:**

The vacuum automatically shuts off and the **PWR SAVE** indicator comes on if the system detects that running the vacuum is over discharging the battery.

**Without engine running**

**After seven minutes of operation:**

The beeper sounds intermittently.

**When eight minutes elapse:**

The beeper sounds once and the **PWR SAVE** indicator comes on. The vacuum automatically shuts off.

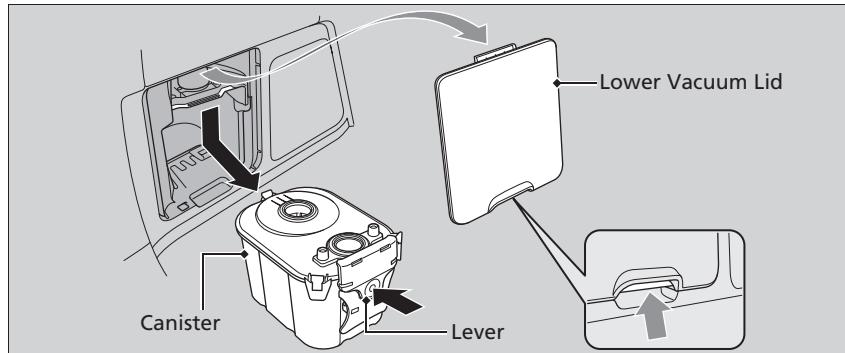
To continue vacuuming, start the engine.

**With engine running**

Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.



## ■ To empty the canister or change the debris bag

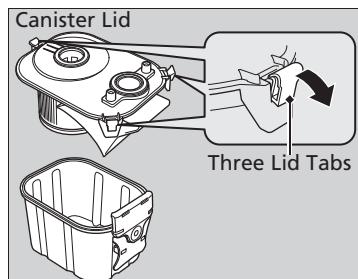


1. Open the lower vacuum lid.

2. Push the lever in.

3. Rotate the canister down, then slide out from the track.

4. Push the three lid tabs outward and remove the canister lid.  
► The debris bag and canister can be accessed.



### To reinstall the empty canister:

After sliding the canister into the track, push the lever in to lift the canister up. Release the lever to lock the canister in position.

► The orange unlocked decal should not be visible.

### » To empty the canister or change the debris bag

Both the debris bag and the filter are replaceable. Contact a dealer for component replacement information.

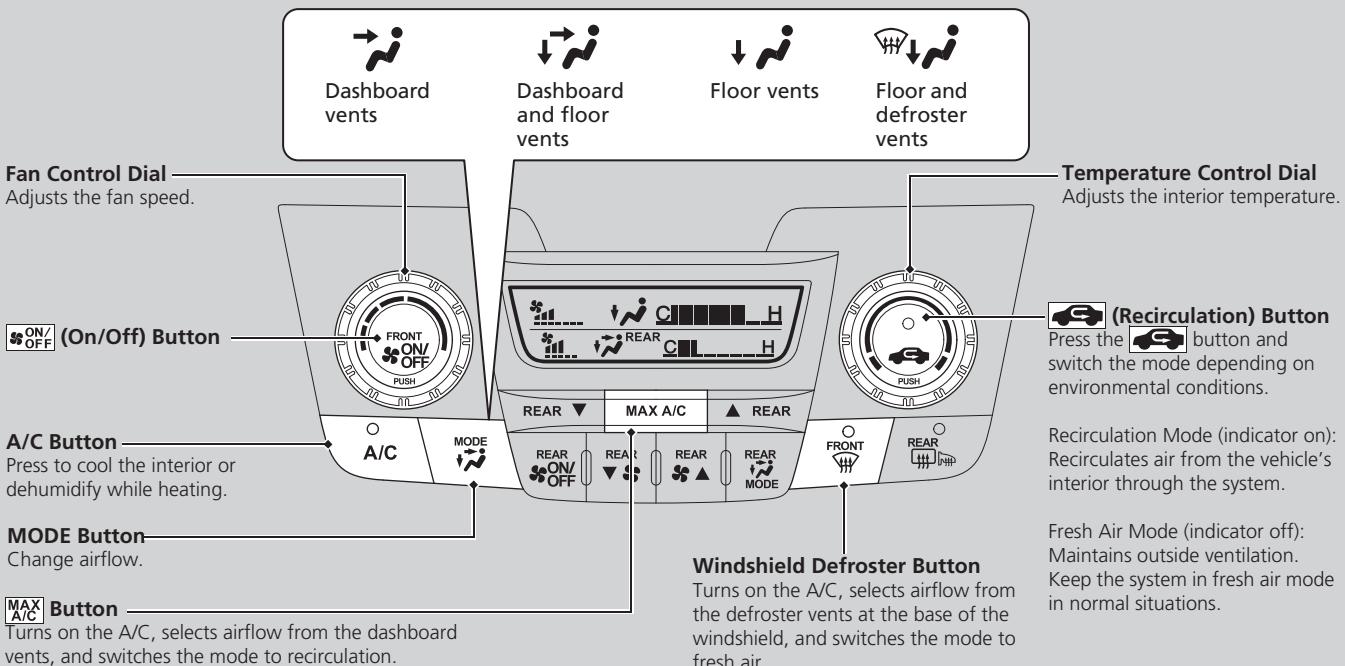
The vacuum can be used with or without the bag.

If you find the vacuum performance poor or there is no suction:

- Check if the canister is locked in position.
- Check if the hose is attached to the vacuum.
- Empty the canister or change the bag.
- Clean or replace the filter.
- Check the hose for clogs or damage.

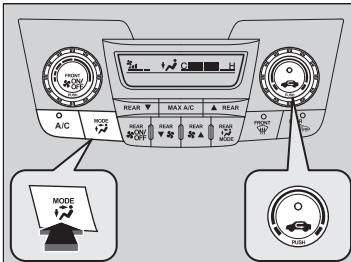


### Using Vents, Heating and A/C





## ■ Heating



The heater uses heat from the engine coolant to warm the air.

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Press the mode button to select .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.

### ■ To rapidly warm up the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Select .
3. Set the temperature to maximum heat.
4. Press the  button (indicator on).

### ■ To dehumidify the interior

When used in combination with the heater, the air conditioning system makes the interior warm and dry and can prevent the windows from fogging up.

1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Press the **A/C** button to turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select .
4. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.

## » Heating

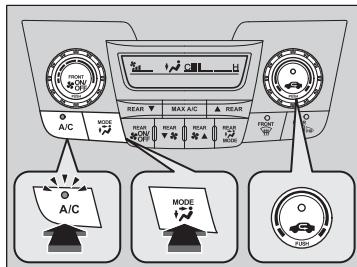
When you select , the mode automatically switches to fresh air.

## » To rapidly warm up the interior

Change to fresh air mode as soon as the interior gets warm enough. The windows may fog up if kept in recirculation mode.



## Cooling



1. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control dial.
2. Press the mode button to select .
3. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control dial.
4. Press the **A/C** button (indicator on).

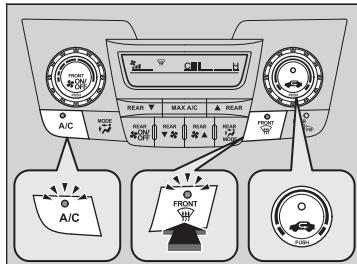
### ■ To rapidly cool down the interior

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Set the temperature to maximum cool.
3. Press the **MAX A/C** button (indicator on).

### ■ To rapidly cool down the interior

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows.

## Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

1. Set the fan to the maximum speed.
2. Press the  button.
3. Press the  button.
4. Set the temperature to maximum heat.

### ■ Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

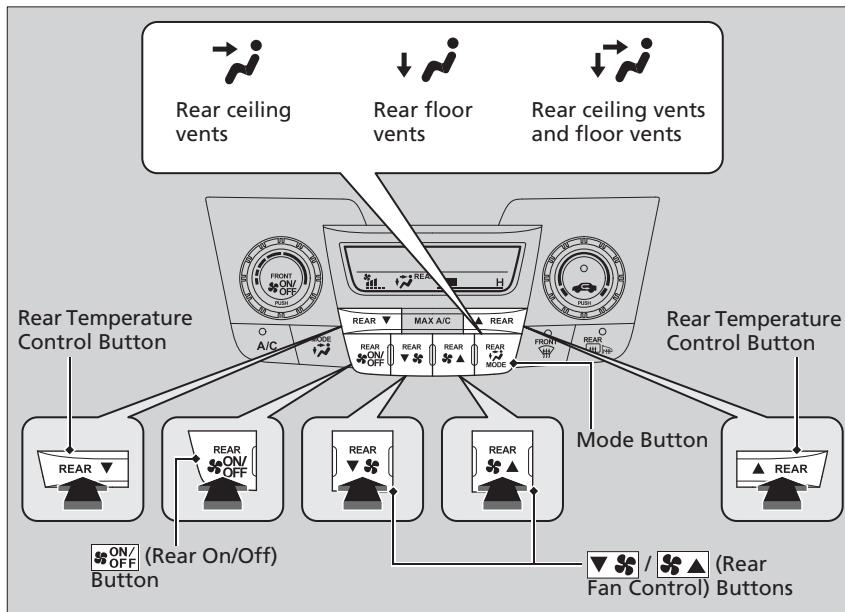
### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.



## Rear A/C Controls



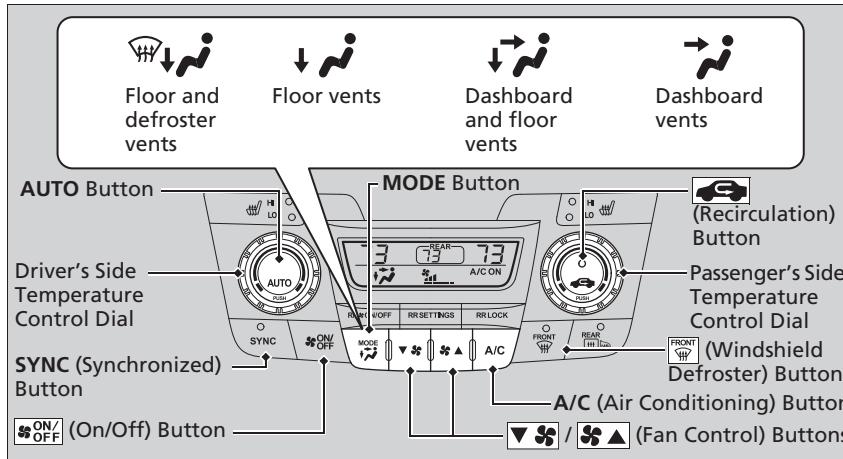
Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **REAR ON/OFF** button.
2. Adjust the temperature and the fan speed using the appropriate buttons. Select the airflow to the rear passenger compartment using the mode button.
3. To turn off the rear A/C, press the **REAR ON/OFF** button again.



## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **(ON/OFF)** button to cancel.

### ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the **(Recirculation)** button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

**Recirculation Mode (indicator on):** Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

**Fresh Air Mode (indicator off):** Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

### ■ Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

The compressor may turn on to prevent window fogging, even if the display reads **A/C OFF**.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

Once you have set the desired temperature, do not use the temperature control dials more than necessary. Doing so may delay the time it takes to reach the set temperature.

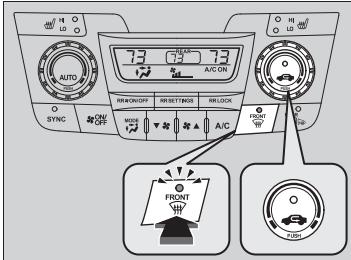
If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the **(ON/OFF)** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

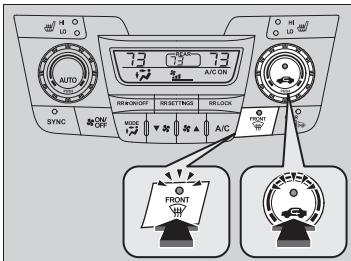


## Defrosting the Windshield and Windows



Pressing the  button turns the air conditioner system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

### To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

### Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

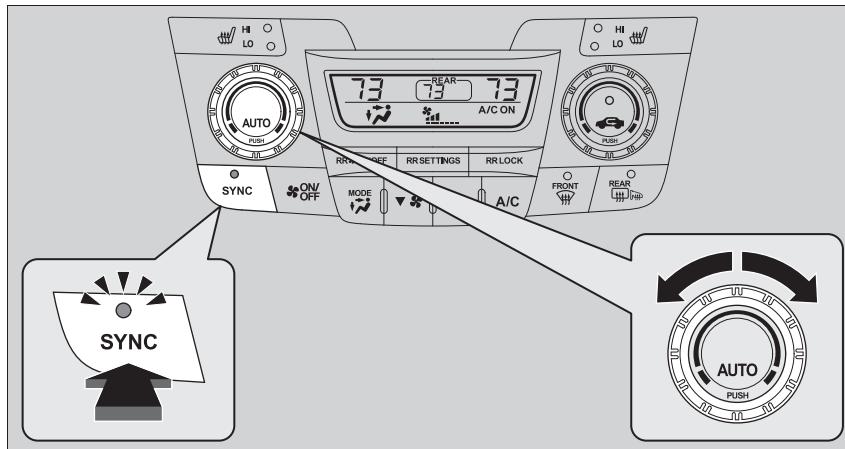
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

### To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.

If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver side, the passenger side and the rear passenger compartment in synchronized mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.  
▶ The system switches to synchronized mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

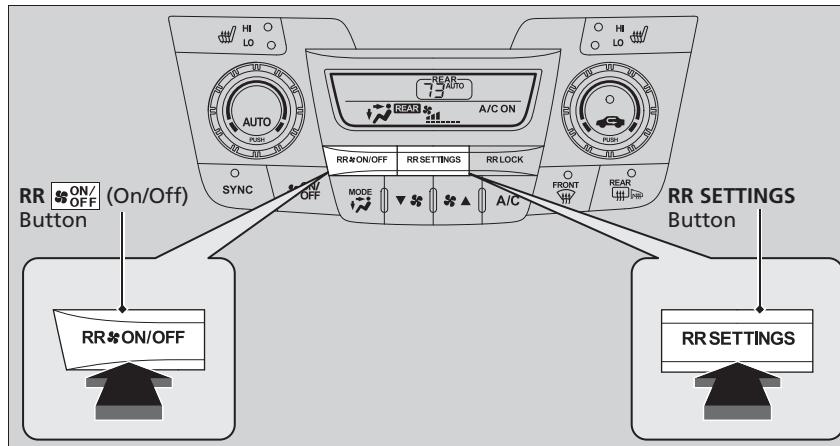
#### ▶Synchronized Mode

When the system is in dual mode, the driver side temperature, the passenger side temperature and the rear passenger compartment (if it is on) can be set separately.



## Rear Climate Control System

### Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Front Panel



Use the system when the engine is running.

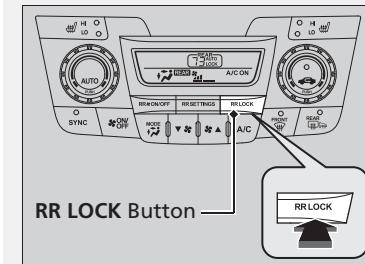
1. Press the **RR ** button.
2. Press the **RR SETTINGS** button.
  - ▶ The system switches to the rear control mode for 10 seconds. The **REAR** indicator appears on the display.
3. Press the **AUTO** button.
  - ▶ The rear system changes to AUTO mode.
  - ▶ The system automatically adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the set rear temperature. Change the temperature if necessary.
  - ▶ To turn off the rear climate control system, press the **RR SETTINGS** button, then **RR ** button within 10 seconds.

### ▶▶ Rear Climate Control System

**LOCK** appears on the rear control panel while the rear lock is on.

If the rear lock is on while in SYNC mode, the rear control panel is disabled. **LOCK SYNC** appears on the rear control panel.

### ▶▶ Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Front Panel



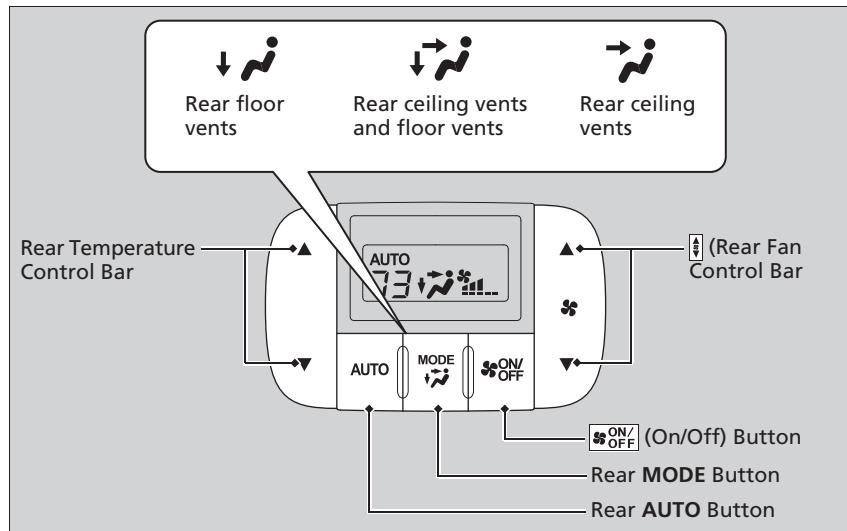
Press the **RR LOCK** button to turn the rear lock mode on and off.

While the rear lock mode is on, the rear control panel is disabled.

▶ **REAR LOCK** appears on the display.



## Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Rear Panel



Use the system when the engine is running.

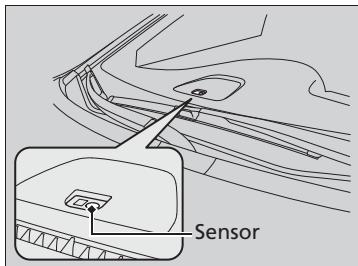
1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the rear temperature control bar.
3. To turn off the rear climate control system, press **ON/OFF** button.

### Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Rear Panel

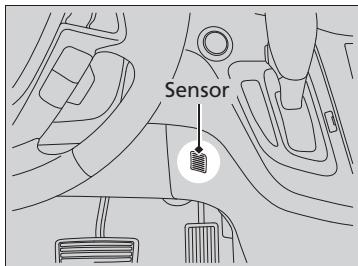
When the rear lock mode is off, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment can be controlled independently.



## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.







# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

<b>Audio System</b>	
About Your Audio System.....	206
USB Port .....	207
Auxiliary Input Jack .....	207
Audio System Theft Protection* .....	208
Region Setting .....	209
Audio Remote Controls.....	210
<b>Models with one display</b>	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	211
Audio/Information Screen .....	212
Display Setup .....	217
Adjusting the Sound .....	216
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	218

\* Not available on all models

Playing a CD .....	221
Playing an iPod .....	224
Playing Internet Radio .....	227
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	229
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> Audio.....	232
<b>Models with two displays</b>	
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	234
Audio with Touch Screen .....	235
Audio/Information Screen .....	238
Display Setup .....	244
Adjusting the Sound .....	243
Playing AM/FM Radio.....	245
Playing SiriusXM <sup>®</sup> Radio* .....	249
Playing a CD .....	252
Playing an iPod .....	255
Playing Internet Radio .....	259
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	262
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> <sup>®</sup> Audio .....	265
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	267
<b>General Information on the Audio System</b> .....	272
<b>Rear Entertainment System*</b> .....	276
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	295
<b>HomeLink<sup>®</sup> Universal Transceiver*</b> .....	325
<b>Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> HandsFreeLink<sup>®</sup></b> .....	327, 360
<b>Compass*</b> .....	392

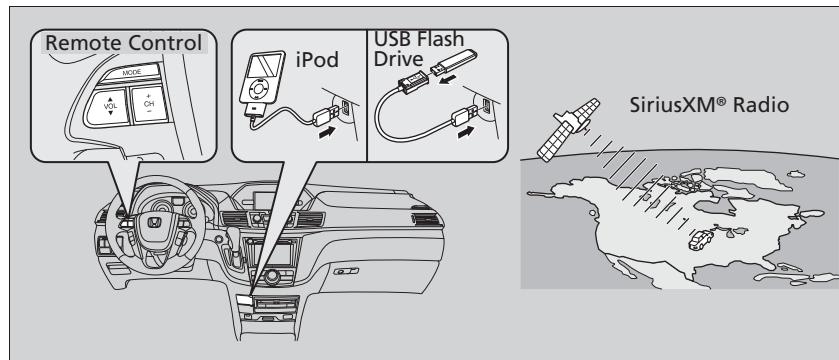


## About Your Audio System

On models with navigation system, see the Navigation System Manual for operation of the audio system, *Bluetooth®HandsFreeLink®*, and voice commands for these features.

The audio system features AM/FM radio and SiriusXM® Radio Service\*. It can also play audio CDs, WMA/MP3/AAC files, USB flash drives, and iPod and *Bluetooth®* devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface\*.



### >About Your Audio System

SiriusXM® Radio is available on a subscription basis only. For more information on SiriusXM® Radio, contact a dealer.

**General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 272

SiriusXM® Radio is available in the United States and Canada, except Hawaii, Alaska, and Puerto Rico.

SiriusXM® Radio is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio, Inc.

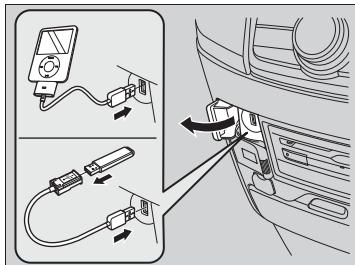
Video CDs, DVDs\*, and 3-inch (8-cm) mini CDs are not supported.

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.



## USB Port



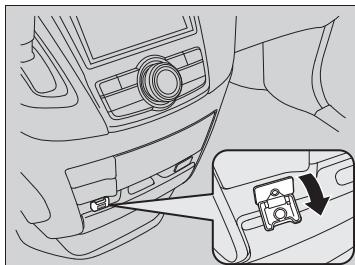
Install the iPod dock connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

### » USB Port

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

## Auxiliary Input Jack

Use the jack to connect standard audio devices.



1. Open the **AUX** cover.
2. Connect a standard audio device to the input jack using a 1/8 inch (3.5 mm) stereo miniplug.
- ▶ The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

If the audio system does not recognize the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

### » Auxiliary Input Jack

#### Models with one display

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **AUX** button.

#### Models with two displays

You can return to AUX mode by selecting **Change Source** on the Audio menu screen or **Audio Source** on the touchscreen.

You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.



## Audio System Theft Protection\*

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display **Enter code**. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.

► The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.



Models with two displays

## Region Setting

The audio system's region setting will be lost when the battery is disconnected or goes dead.

If the **Region Select** screen appears, you need to set the region for the audio system. Follow the steps below:

1. Press to select **OK**.
2. Rotate to select the region you live in, then press .
3. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

### » Region Setting

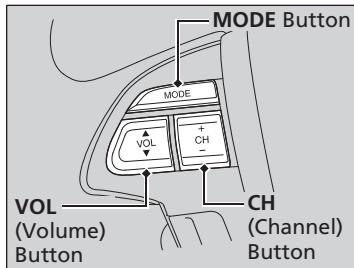
The region setting is required only when the battery power is temporarily disconnected. It is set to your vehicle's region type by the factory.

You cannot change the setting once you have completed the setting procedure. Contact a dealer if you selected an incorrect region.



## Audio Remote Controls

Allows you to operate the audio system while driving.



### MODE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:  
FM → AM → SiriusXM\* → CD → USB → iPod →  
Bluetooth® Audio → Pandora®\* → Aha™\* → AUX

### VOL Button

**Press  $\triangle$ :** To increase the volume.  
**Press  $\square$ :** To decrease the volume.

### CH Button

- When listening to the radio  
**Press  $+$ :** To select the next preset radio station.  
**Press  $-$ :** To select the previous preset radio station.  
**Press and hold  $+$ :** To select the next strong station.  
**Press and hold  $-$ :** To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a CD, iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio  
**Press  $+$ :** To skip to the next song.  
**Press  $-$ :** To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a CD or USB flash drive  
**Press and hold  $+$ :** To skip to the next folder/album.  
**Press and hold  $-$ :** To go back to the previous folder/album.
- When listening to Pandora®\*  
**Press  $+$ :** To skip to the next song.  
**Press and hold  $+$ :** To select the next station.  
**Press and hold  $-$ :** To select the previous station.

### ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

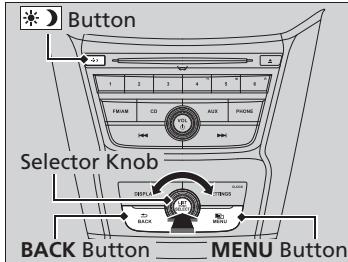
The CD mode appears only when a CD is loaded. Pandora®, Bluetooth® Audio, and Aha™ appear when a connection (Bluetooth® or USB) is established with a device.



# Audio System Basic Operation

## Models with one display

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY or ON .



Use the selector knob or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

**MENU button:** Press to select any mode. The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **Radio Text**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.

**BACK button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

**\*<img> button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press **\*<img>** once and make an adjustment.

- ▶ Each time you press **\*<img>**, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.



## »Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

### Audio Menu Items

- ▶ **Station List** P. 219
- ▶ **Radio text** P. 220
- ▶ **Music Search** P. 222, 225, 230
- ▶ **Scan** P. 223, 231
- ▶ **Random/Repeat** P. 223, 226, 231

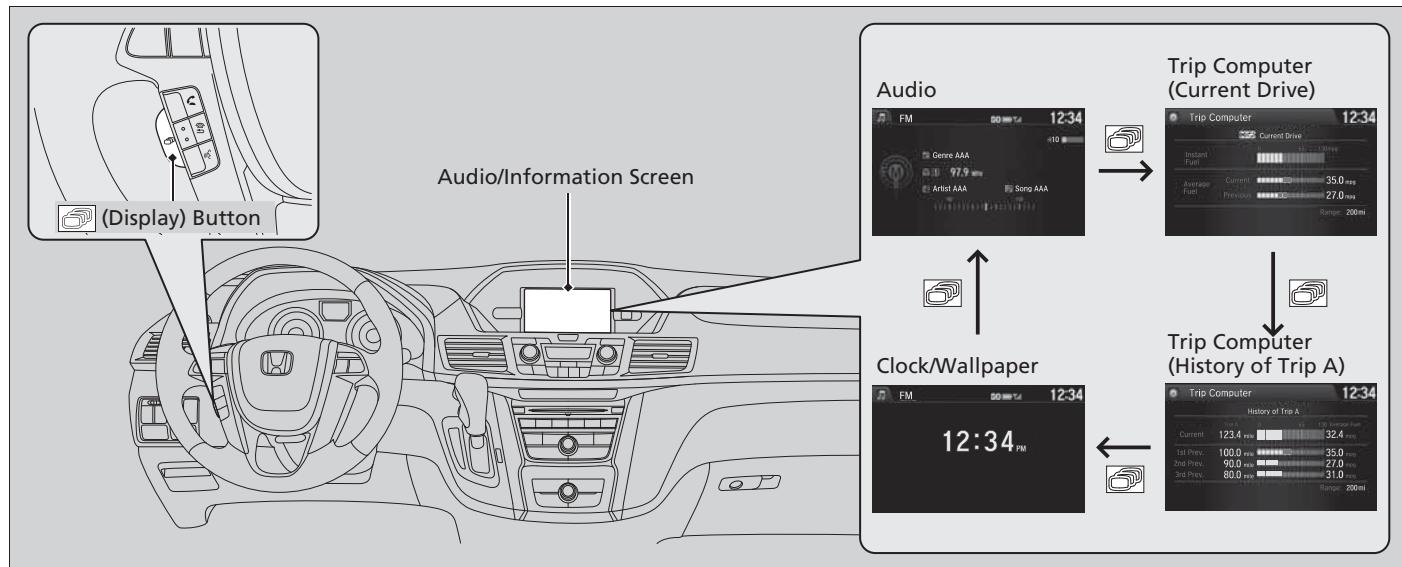


## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display

Press the  (display) button to change the display.



**■ Audio**

Shows the current audio information.

**■ Trip computer (Current Drive)**

Shows the range, and instant and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

**■ Trip computer (History of Trip A)**

Shows the range, average fuel economy and distance traveled for the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distances traveled during the last three driving cycles.

Each time you reset the trip meter A, the information on the display updates. The history of the previous three driving cycles is kept.

**■ Clock/Wallpaper**

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.



## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
► **USB Port** P. 207
2. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
3. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press   
► Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
4. Rotate to select **Add New Wallpaper**, then press   
► The preview of the imported data is displayed.
5. Rotate to select a desired picture.  
► The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
6. Press to save the data.  
► The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.



## ■ Select wallpaper

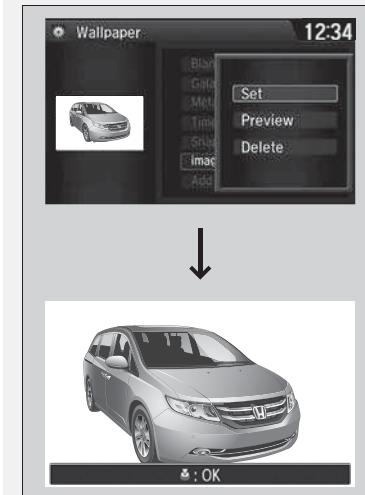
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
- ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press .
- ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate to select **Set**, then press .

## ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then **Wallpaper**.
- ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
3. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
- ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
- ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
5. Rotate to select **OK**, then press to delete completely.

## ▶▶Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Preview** and press to see a preview at full-size screen.

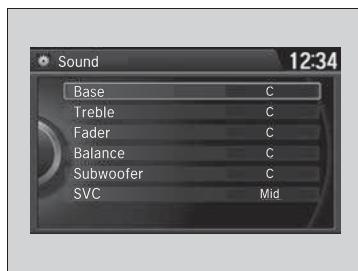
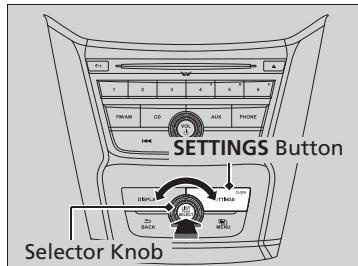


To go back to the previous screen, press to select **OK**, or press the **BACK** button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

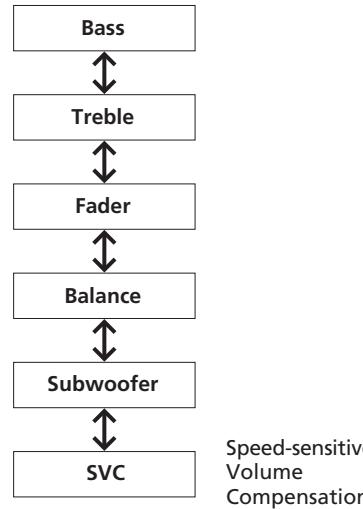


## Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Audio Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Sound**, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



### ▶Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.



## Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

### Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Display**.
3. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
4. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

### Changing the Screen's Color Theme



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Other**.
3. Rotate to select **Background Color**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

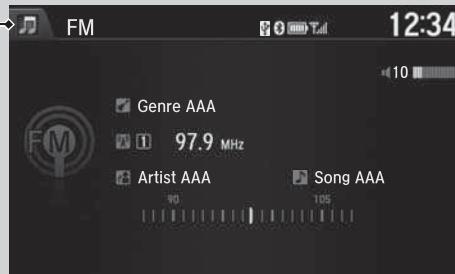
#### ▶▶ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.



## Playing AM/FM Radio

### Audio/Information Screen



### Preset Buttons (1-6)

To store a station:

Tune to the selected station.

Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

### FM/AM Button

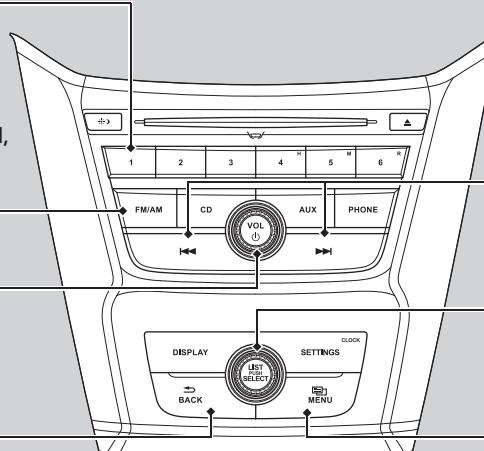
Press to select a band.

### VOL (Power/volume) Knob

Press to turn the audio system on and off.  
Turn to adjust the volume.

### BACK Button

Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.



### Seek/Skip Buttons

Press **◀◀** and **▶▶** to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

### Selector Knob

Turn to tune the radio frequency.  
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

### MENU Button

Press to display the menu items.



## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select the station, then press .

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select **Refresh**, then press .

### ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

#### Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

##### **Audio Remote Controls** P. 210

You can also switch the mode by pressing the **MENU** button and selecting **Change Source** on the **MENU** screen.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

### ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.



## ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Radio Text**, then press .

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press to select **Stop**, or press the **BACK** button.

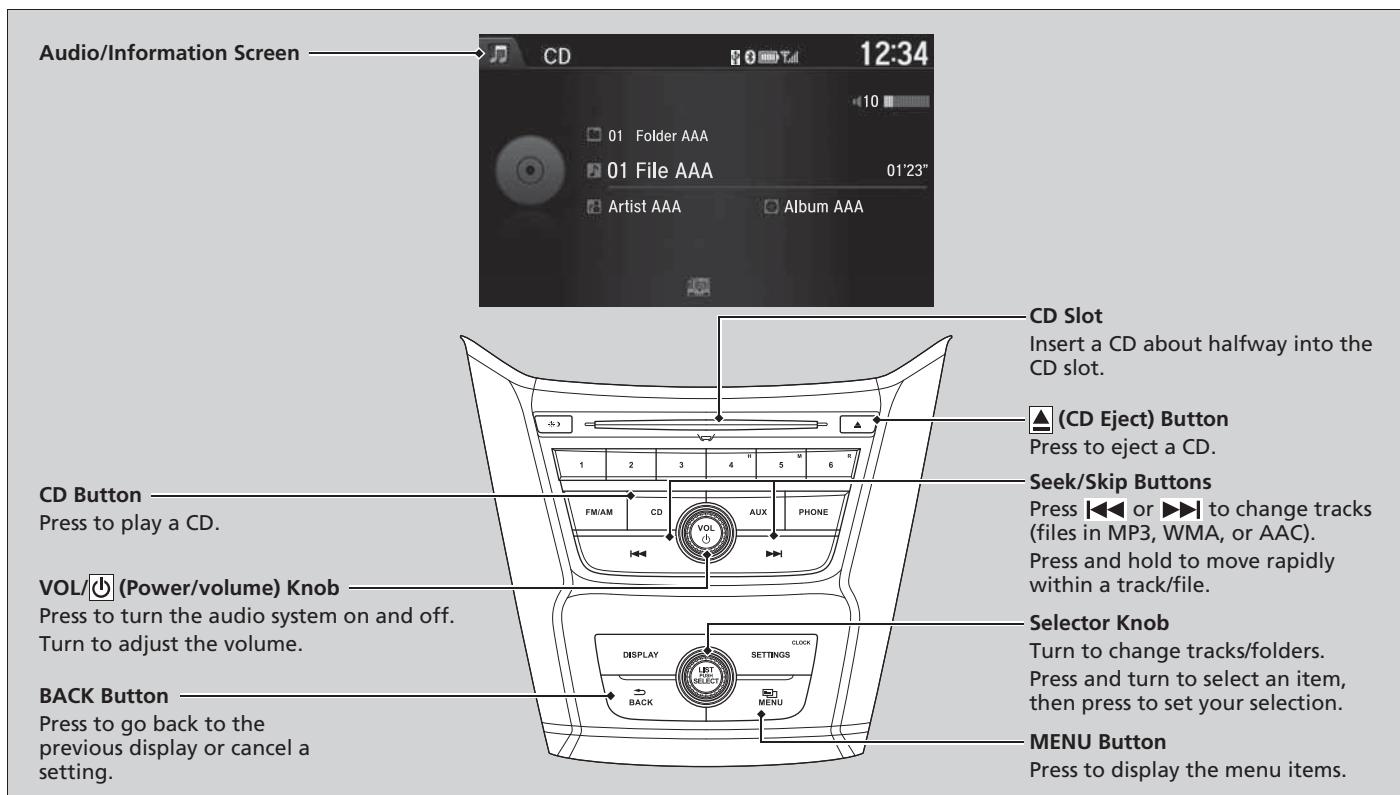
### ▶ Radio text

The text indicator comes on when you received a text message. The indicator stays on until you read the message.



## Playing a CD

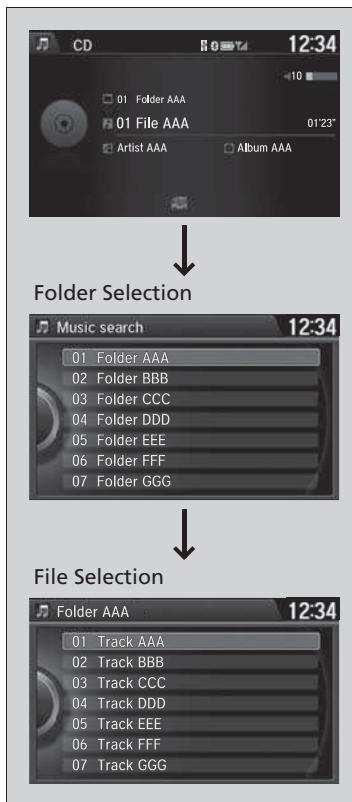
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, press the **CD** button.



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.



## How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

### ▶ Playing a CD

#### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

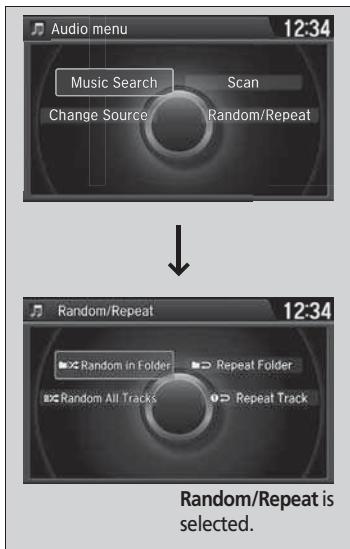
- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

### ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

#### Play Mode Menu Items

##### **Scan**

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

##### **Random/Repeat**

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.

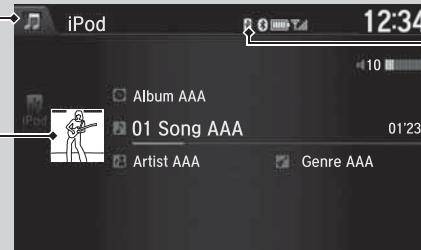


## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB Port, then press the **AUX** button.

☞ **USB Port** P. 207

Audio/Information Screen



**USB Indicator**

Appears when an iPod is connected.

Album Art

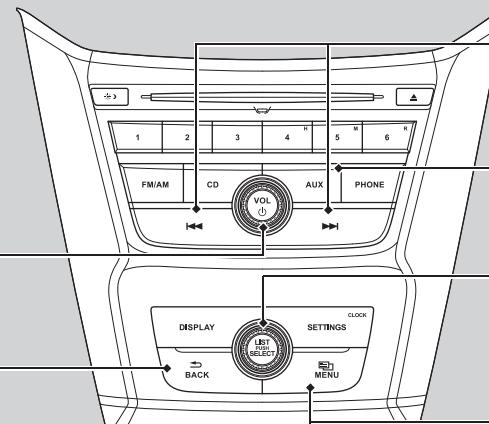
**VOL/POWER** (Power/volume) Knob

Press to turn the audio system on and off.

Turn to adjust the volume.

**BACK** Button

Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.



**Seek/Skip Buttons**

Press **◀◀** or **▶▶** to change songs.  
Press and hold to move rapidly within a song.

**AUX Button**

Press to select iPod (if connected).

**Selector Knob**

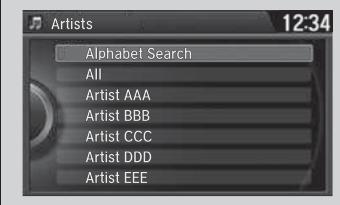
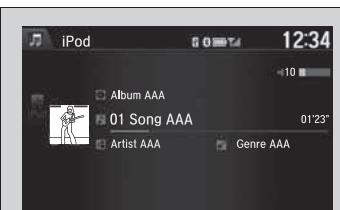
Turn to change songs.  
Press and turn to select an item, then press to set your selection.

**MENU** Button

Press to display the menu items.



## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a menu.
4. Press to display the items on that menu.
5. Rotate to select an item, then press .

### ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

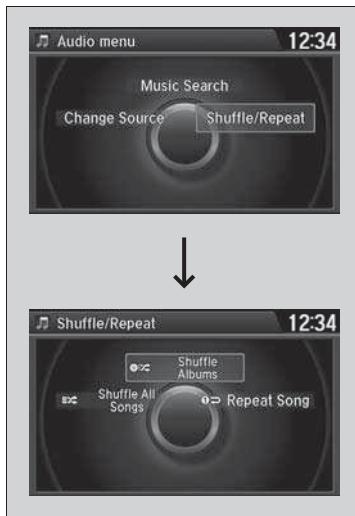
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

☞ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 268



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



### ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current file.

**Shuffle Album:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.



## U.S. models

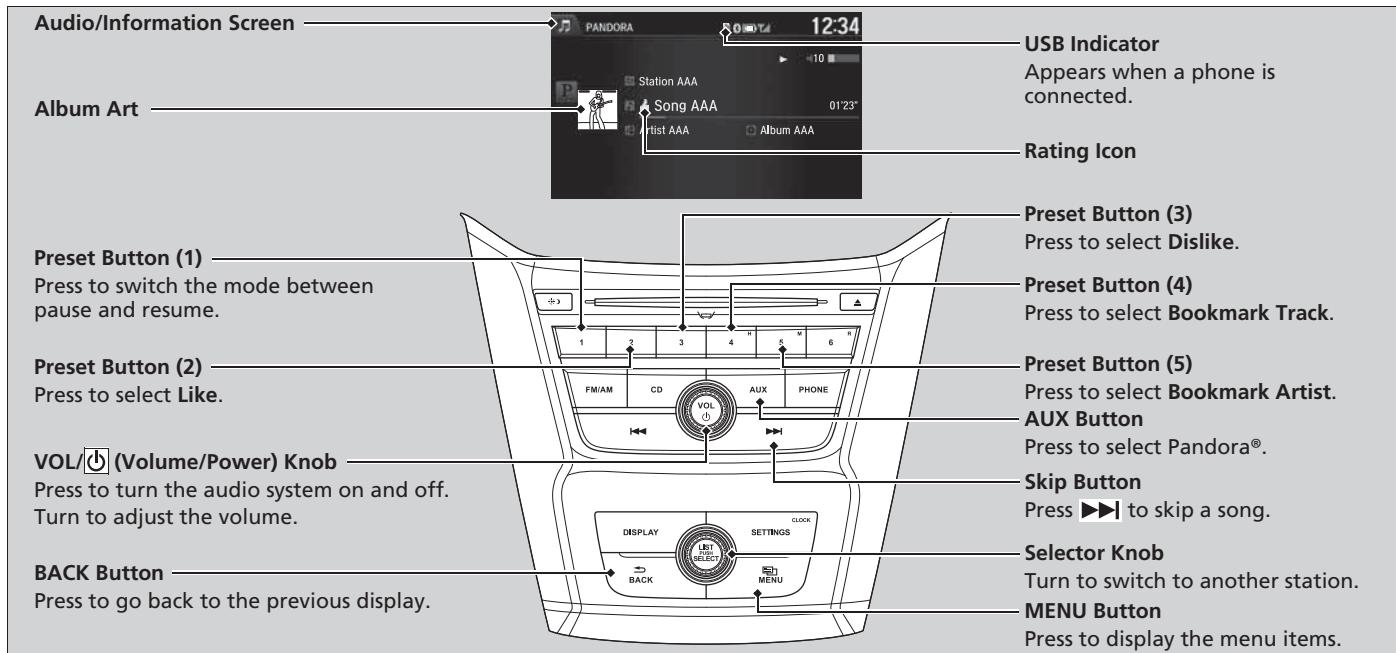
Compatible phones only

## Playing Internet Radio

Connect a compatible phone through *Bluetooth*®.

## iPhone

You can also connect the phone using your dock connector to the USB port.

Press the **AUX** button to select Pandora mode.

Continued



## ■ Pandora® Menu

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Like**
- **Dislike**
- **Station List**
- **Change Source**
- **Bookmark Track**
- **Bookmark Artist**
- **Play/Pause**

## ■ Operating a menu item



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select an item, then press .

## ▶ Playing Internet Radio

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.

Pandora® is a personalized Internet radio service that selects music based on an artist, song, or genre a user enters, and streams what is likely to be of interest.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com). for more information.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through Bluetooth® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

## ▶ Pandora® Menu

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

### ➤ **Pandora®** P. 269

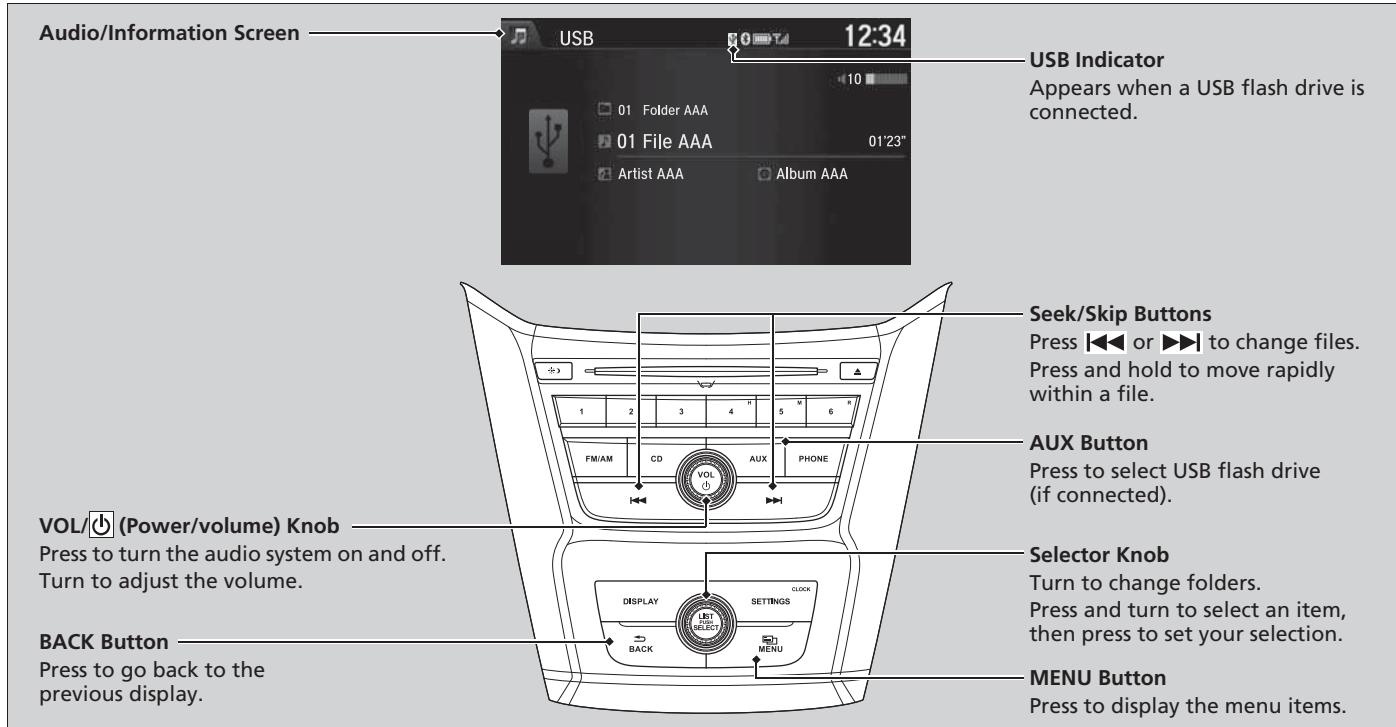
There are restrictions on the number of songs you can skip or dislike in a given hour.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **AUX** button.

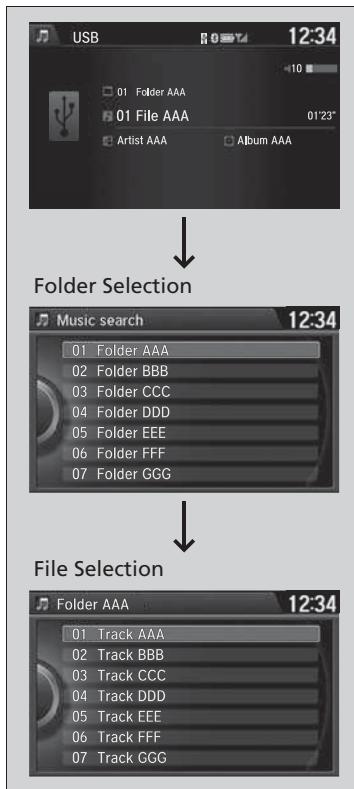
## → **USB Port** P. 207



\*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.



## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a folder.
4. Press to change the display to a list of files in that folder.
5. Rotate to select a file, then press .

### ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

⇒ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 272

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

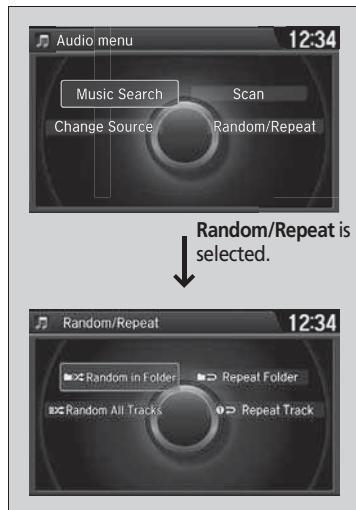
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

⇒ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 268



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan** or **Random/Repeat**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a mode, then press .

### ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

#### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

#### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

## ■ To turn off a play mode

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

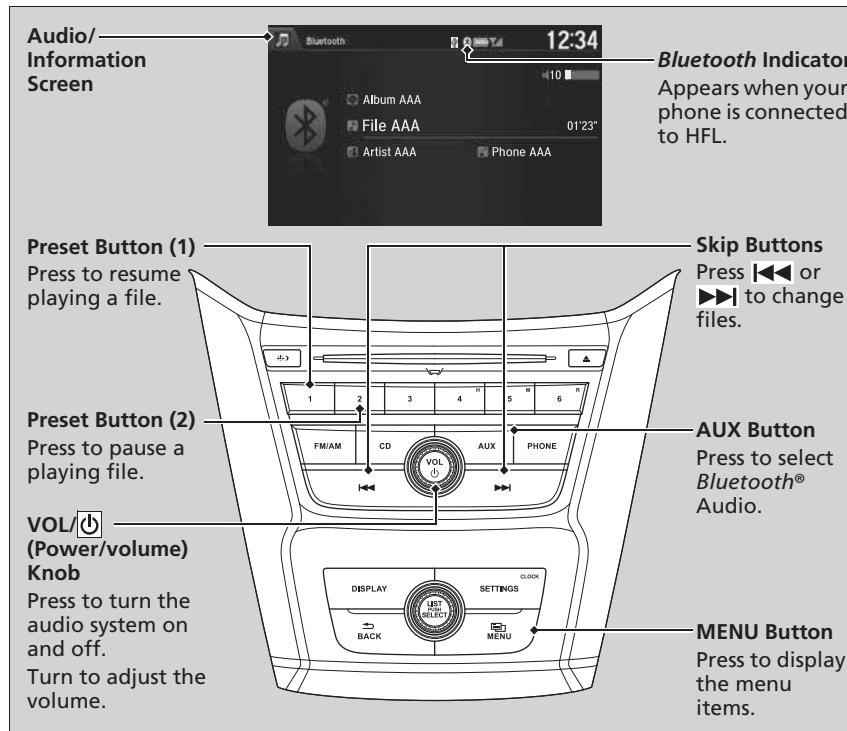


## Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your Bluetooth®-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

### Phone Setup P. 334



### Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system.

For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.



## To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Press the **AUX** button.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth®* Audio, may already be connected.

### » To Play *Bluetooth®* Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack, you may need to press the **AUX** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth®* Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

### ■ To pause or resume a file

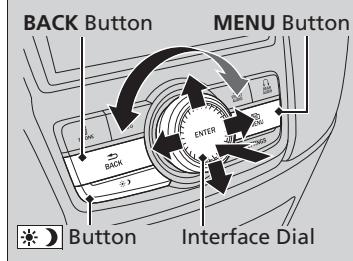
1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Play** or **Pause**, then press .



## Models with two displays

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

Use the interface dial or **MENU** button to access some audio functions.



Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

**Interface dial:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection. Move right, left, up or down to select secondary menu.

**MENU button:** Press to select any mode. The available mode includes **Change Source**, **Station List**, **Save Preset**, **Radio Text**, **Music Search**, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from **Scan**, **Random/Repeat**, and so on.



**BACK button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

**button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press once and make an adjustment.

- ▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the interface dial.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

Move , , , or to select secondary menu.

### Audio Menu Items

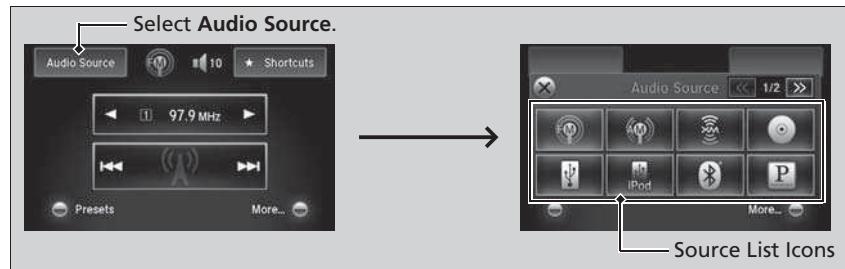
- ▶ **Station List** P. 247
- ▶ **Save Preset** P. 246, 251
- ▶ **Radio Text** P. 248
- ▶ **Music Search** P. 253, 257, 263
- ▶ **Scan** P. 254, 264
- ▶ **Random/Repeat** P. 254, 258, 264



## Audio with Touch Screen

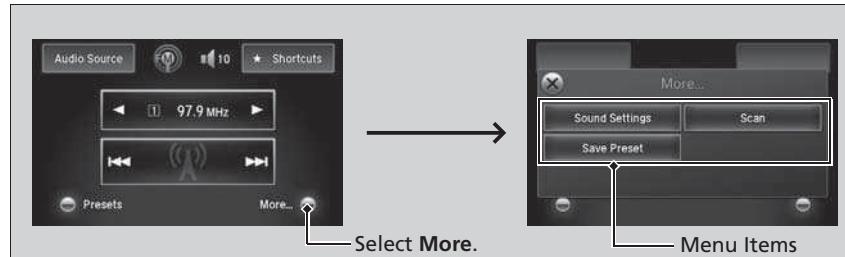
Use the touch screen to operate the audio system.

### Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source**, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

### Displaying the Menu Items



Select **More** to display the menu items.

### » Audio with Touch Screen

Icons that appear on the screen vary by the source selected.

Select **X** to go back to the previous screen.

Use the **◀◀**/**▶▶**/**▲**/**▼** icons to turn the page.



## Shortcuts

You can store up to six radio stations when playing AM, FM, or SiriusXM® radio\*.



To preset a station:

1. Tune to a radio station.
  - **Playing AM/FM Radio** P. 245
  - **Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*** P. 249
2. Select **Shortcuts**.
3. Select **Edit** or **No Entry**.
  - If you select **No Entry**, go to step 5.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Select the preset icon you want to store the station to.

To play a preset station:

1. Select **Shortcuts**.
2. Select a preset icon.

To delete a preset station:

1. Select **Shortcuts**.
2. Select **Edit**.
3. Select **Delete**.
4. Select the preset icon with the radio station you want to delete.

## Shortcuts

The preset memory is cleared when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead.

You can also preset a station by pressing and holding the preset icon you want to store that station after step 2.



## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select **More**, then **Sound Settings**.
2. Use **[+]**, **[-]** or other icons to adjust the setting.

### ▶▶Adjusting the Sound

Select **Off**, **Low**, **Mid** or **High** for the SVC setting.  
⇒ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 243

Instead of using **[+]**, **[-]** or icons, you can also touch the point where your desired setting is.



## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### Switching the Display

Press the  (display) button to change the display.

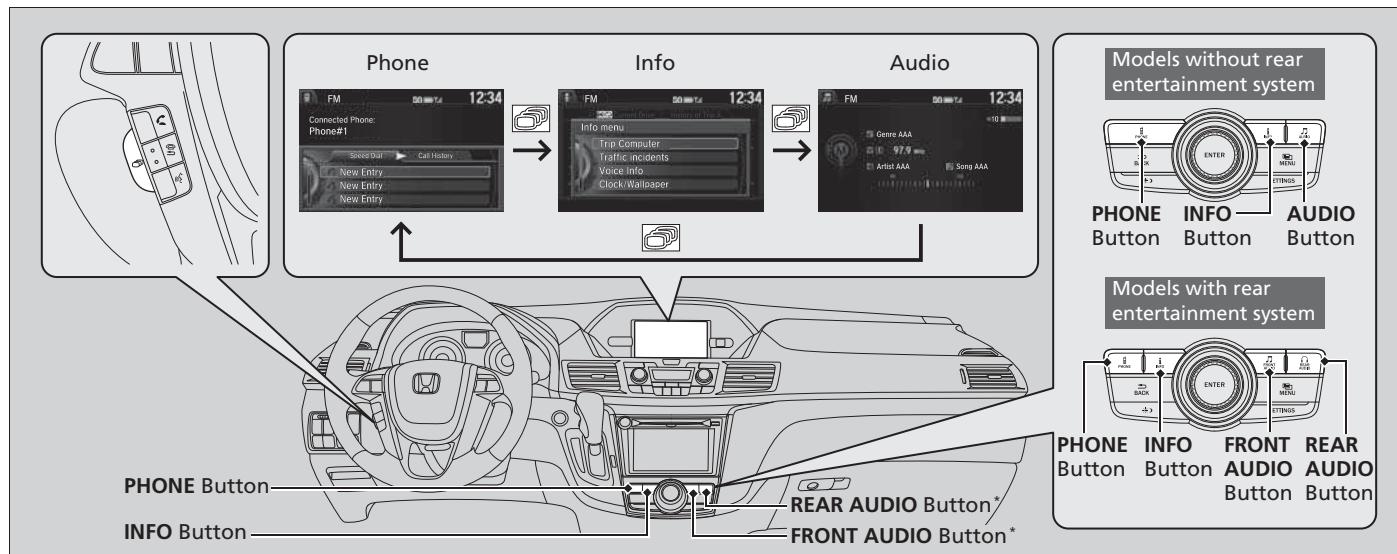
#### Switching the Display

##### Models with rear entertainment system

Press the **PHONE**, **INFO**, **FRONT AUDIO** and **REAR AUDIO** buttons to go to the corresponding display.

##### Models without rear entertainment system

Press the **PHONE**, **INFO** and **AUDIO** buttons to go to the corresponding display.



**■ Phone**

Shows the HFL information. ➔ **Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®** P. 360

Models without rear entertainment system

**■ Audio**

Shows the current audio information.

Models with rear entertainment system

**■ Front audio**

Shows the current audio information selected in the front panel.

Models with rear entertainment system

**■ Rear audio**

Shows the current audio information selected in the rear panel.



## ■ Info

Shows the **Trip Computer** or **Clock/Wallpaper** and other information. Rotate  to select an item, then press .

### ■ Trip computer (Current Drive)

Shows the range, and instant and average fuel economy of the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy from your last trip.

### ■ Trip computer (History of Trip A)

Shows the range, average fuel economy and distances traveled for the current trip, as well as the average fuel economy and distances traveled during the last three driving cycles.

Each time you reset the trip meter A, the information on the display updates. The history of the previous three driving cycles is kept.

### ■ Deleting the history manually

1. Move  on the **History of Trip A** screen to select **Delete History**, then press .
2. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .

### ■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.



## Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
► **USB Port** P. 207
2. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
3. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .  
► Repeat the procedure to select **Clock**, **Clock/Wallpaper Type**.
4. Move to select **Wallpaper**.  
► The screen will change to the wallpaper list.
5. Move to select **Add New**, then press .
6. Rotate to select a desired picture.  
► The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Press , then move to select **Start Import**.  
► The confirmation message will appear. Then the display will return to the wallpaper list.

### Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 6 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,680 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 420 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.



## ■ Select wallpaper

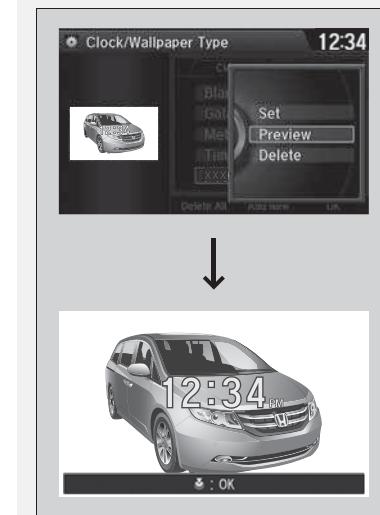
1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**.
3. Move to select **Wallpaper**.
- ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper.
- ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
5. Press .
- ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
6. Rotate to select **Set**, then press .
- ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

## ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- ▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**.
3. Move to select **Wallpaper**.
- ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
- ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
5. Press .
- ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
6. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
- ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
7. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to delete completely.
- ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

## ▶ Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Preview** and press to see a preview at full-size screen.

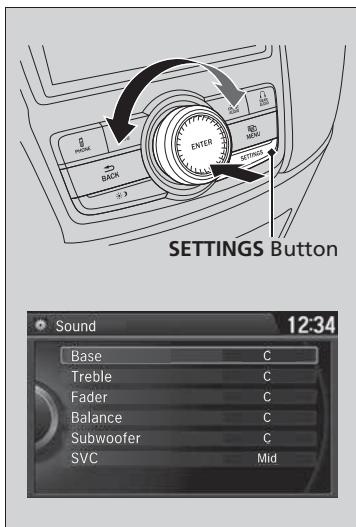


To go back to the previous screen, press to select **OK**, or press the **BACK** button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

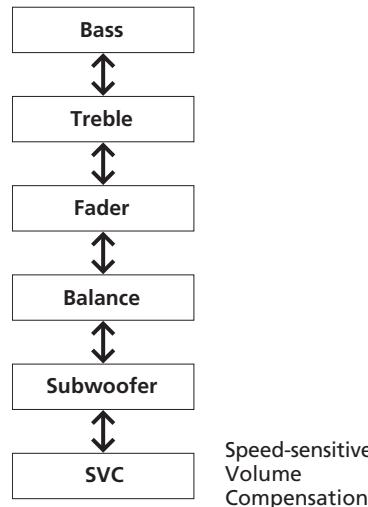


## Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Audio Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Sound**, then press .

Rotate to scroll through the following choices:



### » Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

#### Audio with touch screen

⇒ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 237



## Display Setup

You can change the brightness or color theme of the audio/information screen.

### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
4. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

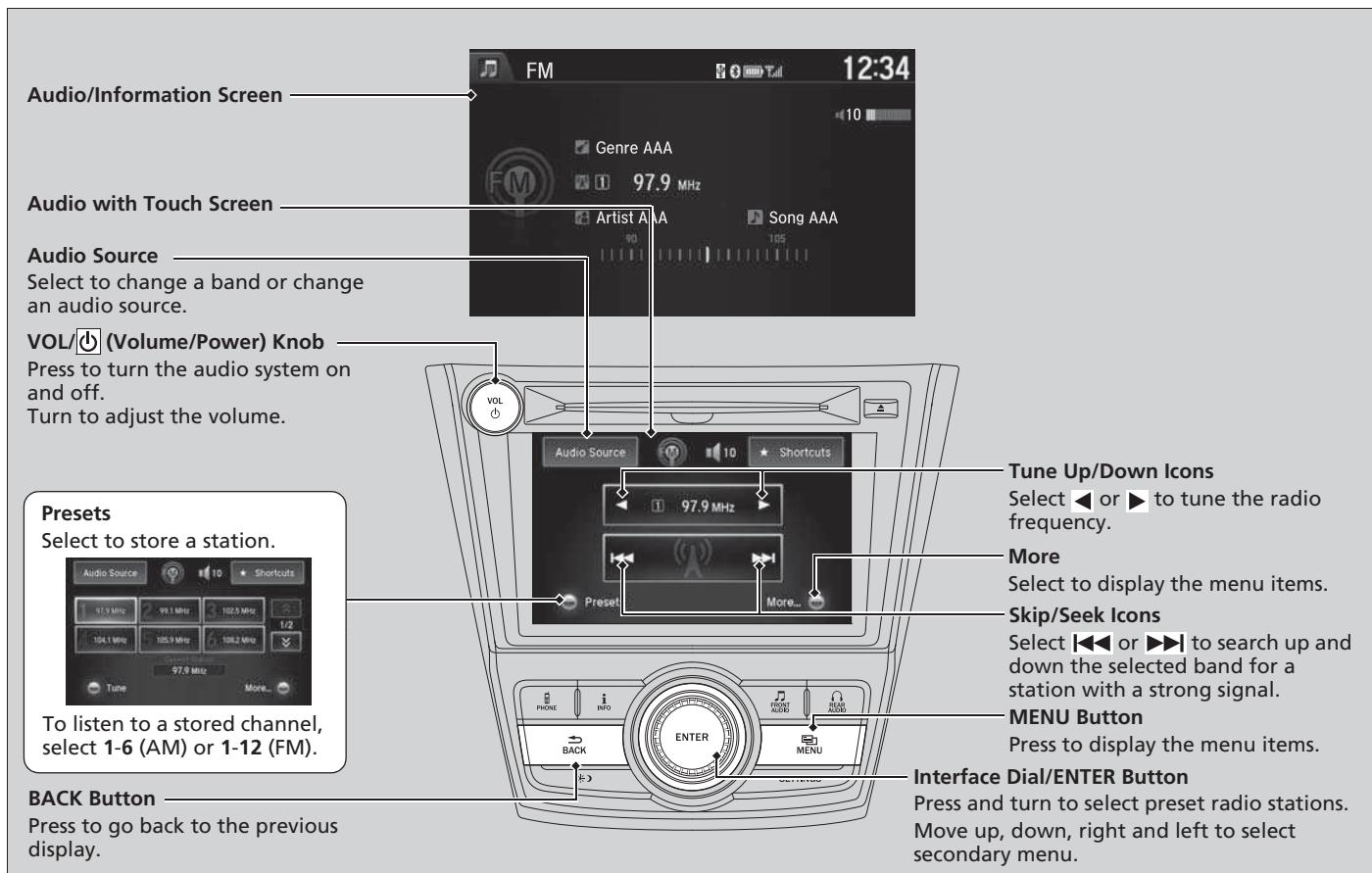
### ■ Changing the Screen's Color Theme



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Background Color**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .



## Playing AM/FM Radio





## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

### Interface Dial

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Save Preset**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store that station, then press .

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store the station.
3. Press and hold  for a few seconds.

### Audio with Touch Screen

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select **More**.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number you want to store that station.

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Change the display to the preset screen.
3. Select and hold the preset number you want to store that station.

## ▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

### Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel.

#### ▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 210

You can also switch the mode by pressing the **MENU** button and selecting **Change Source** on the **Audio menu** screen.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory.



## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press the **MENU** button while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select **Station List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select the station, then press .

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press the **MENU** button while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select **Station List**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Refresh**, then press .



## ■ Radio text

Display the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Radio Text**, then press .

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

### Interface Dial

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press to select **Cancel Scan**, or press the **BACK** button.

### Audio with Touch Screen

1. Select **More**.
2. Select **Scan**.

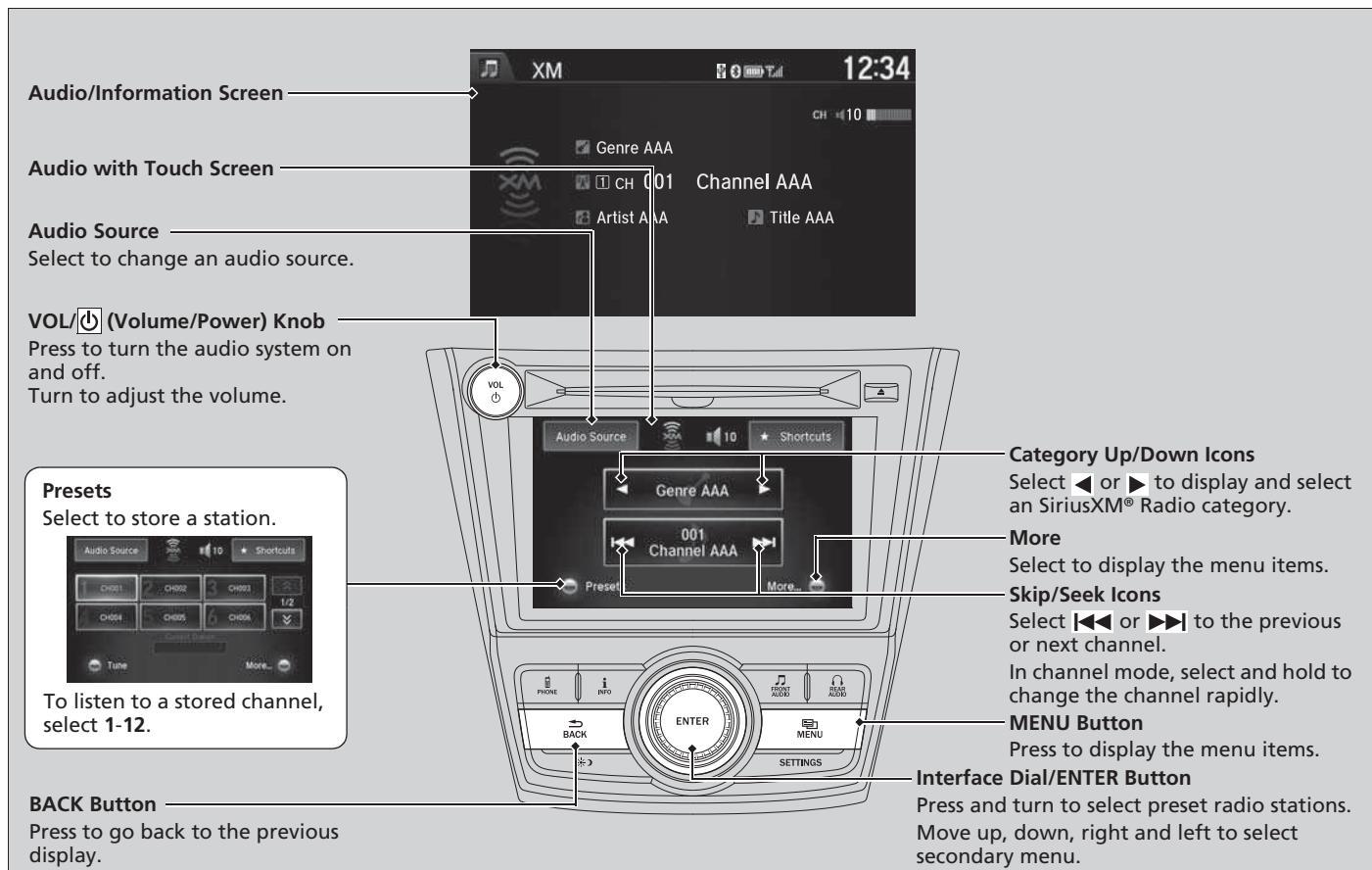
To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

### ■ Radio text

The text indicator comes on when you received a text message. The indicator stays on until you read the message.



## Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*



\* Not available on all models



## ■ To Play the SiriusXM® Radio

1. Select the SiriusXM® mode.

⇒ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 210

⇒ **Audio with Touch Screen** P. 235

### Interface Dial

2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Channel List**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a channel from a list, then press .

### Audio with Touch Screen

2. Select a channel using the , , , icons on the tune mode screen or the preset numbers **(1-12)** on the preset mode screen.

To change the tune mode:

1. Select the SiriusXM® mode.

### Interface Dial

2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **XM Tune Mode**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**, then press .

### Audio with Touch Screen

2. Select **More**.
3. Select **XM Tune Mode**.
4. Select **Channel Mode** or **Category Mode**.

## ▶ Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*

In the channel mode, all available channels are selectable. In the category mode, you can select a channel within a category (Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc.).

There may be instances when SiriusXM® Radio does not broadcast all the data fields (artist name, title). This does not indicate a problem with your audio system.



## Preset Memory

To store a station:

### Interface Dial

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Press the  **MENU** button.
3. Rotate  to select **Save Preset**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store that station, then press .

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Rotate  to select the preset number you want to store the station.
3. Press and hold  for a few seconds.

### Audio with Touch Screen

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select **More**.
3. Select **Save Preset**.
4. Select the preset number you want to store that station.

You can also store that station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Change the display to the preset screen.
3. Select and hold the preset number you want to store that station.

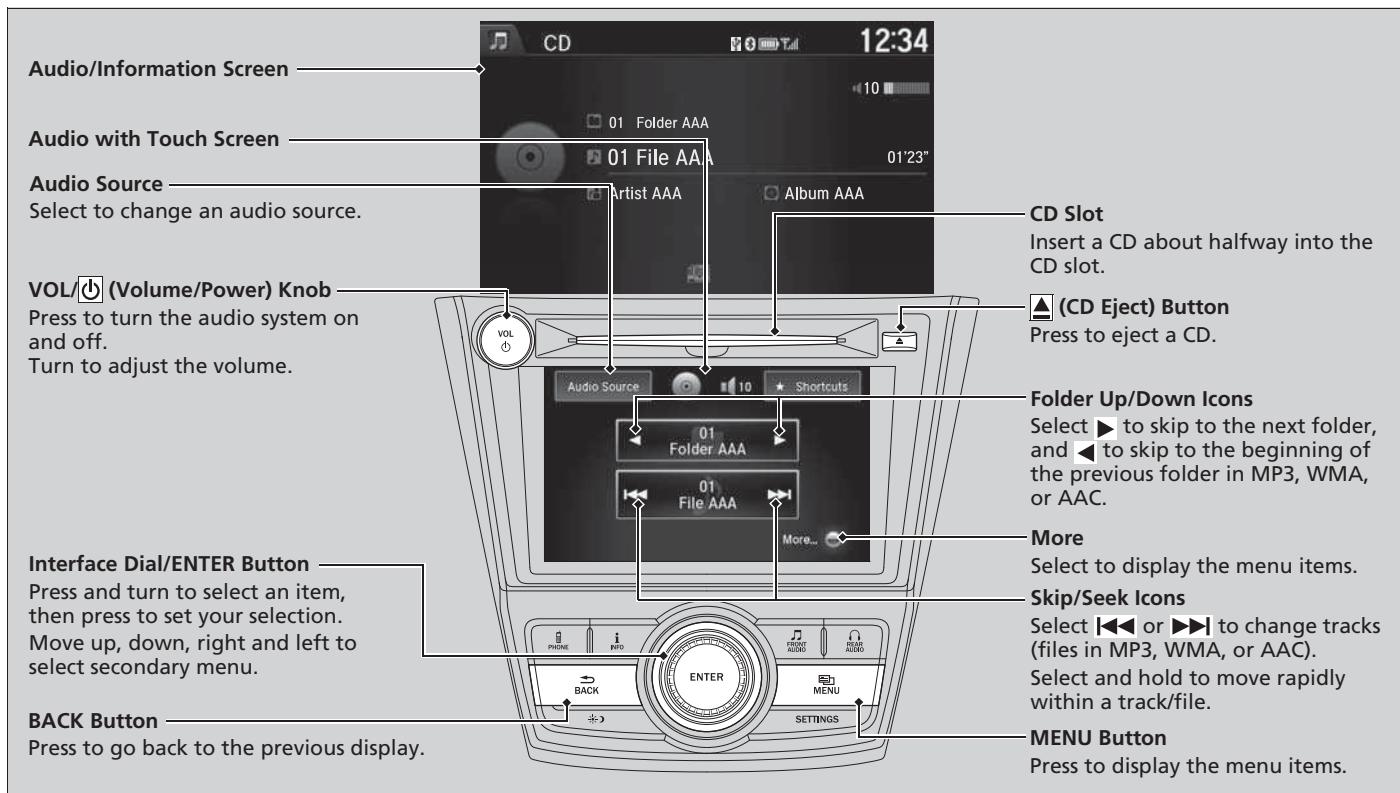
### ▶▶ Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*

You can store 12 SiriusXM® stations into the preset memory.



## Playing a CD

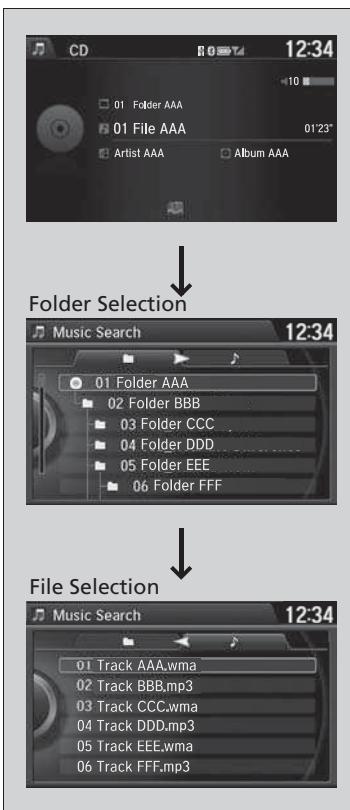
Your audio system supports audio CDs, CD-Rs and CD-RWs in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format. With the CD loaded, select the CD mode.



\*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.



## How to Select a File from the Music Search List (MP3/WMA/AAC)



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .
3. Rotate , move or , then press to select a file from the **Music Search** list.

You can also select a file by the following procedure.

1. Rotate or press to display the song list.
2. Rotate , move or , then press to select a file from the list.

### ▶▶Playing a CD

#### NOTICE

Do not use CDs with adhesive labels. The label can cause the CD to jam in the unit.

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

Text data appears on the display under the following circumstances:

- When you select a new folder, file, or track.
- When you change the audio mode to CD.
- When you insert a CD.

If you eject the CD but do not remove it from the slot, the system reloads the CD automatically after several seconds.



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a track or file.



## ■ To turn off a play mode

### Interface Dial

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

### Audio with Touch Screen

1. Select **More**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

### ▶ How to Select a Play Mode

#### Play Mode Menu Items

##### **Scan**

**Scan Folders** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks**: Provides 10-second sampling of all tracks on the CD (all files in the current folder in MP3, WMA, or AAC).

##### **Random/Repeat**

**Repeat Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track**: Repeats the current track/file.

**Random in Folder** (MP3/WMA/AAC): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

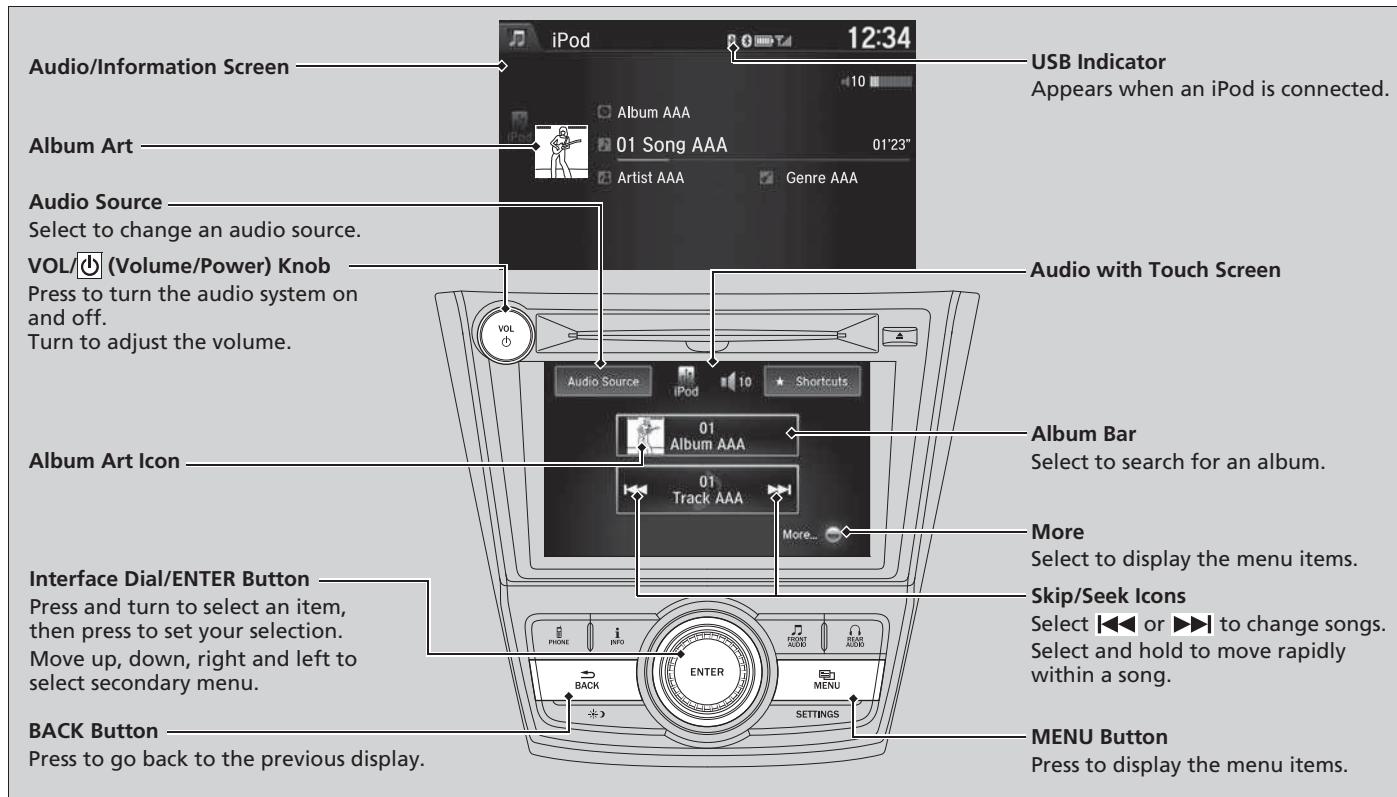
**Random All Tracks**: Plays all tracks/files in random order.



## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

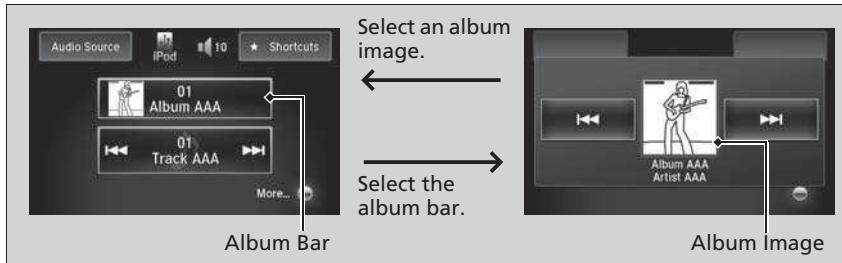
► **USB Port** P. 207





## ■ How to Select an Album

You can select albums in the category you selected by the **Music Search** list.



1. Select the album bar.
  - ▶ The image of the current album is displayed.
2. Select **◀◀** or **▶▶** icon to search for an album.
  - ▶ When the album image you are looking for appears, select it to play.

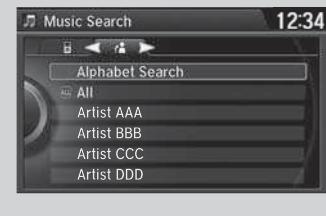
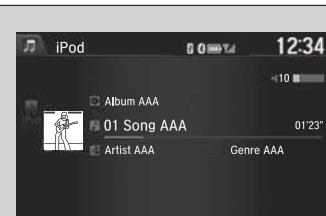
### ▶ How to Select an Album

This function may not be available depending on models or versions.

Select **[X]** to go back to the previous screen.



## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .

3. Rotate , move or , then press to select a song from the **Music Search** list.

You can also select a song by the following procedure.

1. Rotate or press to display the song list.
2. Rotate , move or , then press to select a song from the list.

### How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

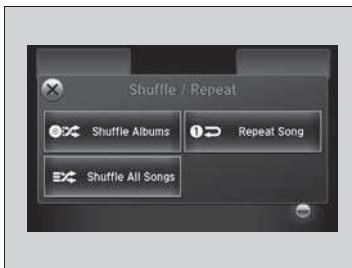
If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

☞ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 268



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a file.



## ■ To turn off a play mode

### Interface Dial

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

### Audio with Touch Screen

1. Select **More**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current track.

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.



Compatible phones only

## Playing Internet Radio

Connect a compatible phone through *Bluetooth*®.

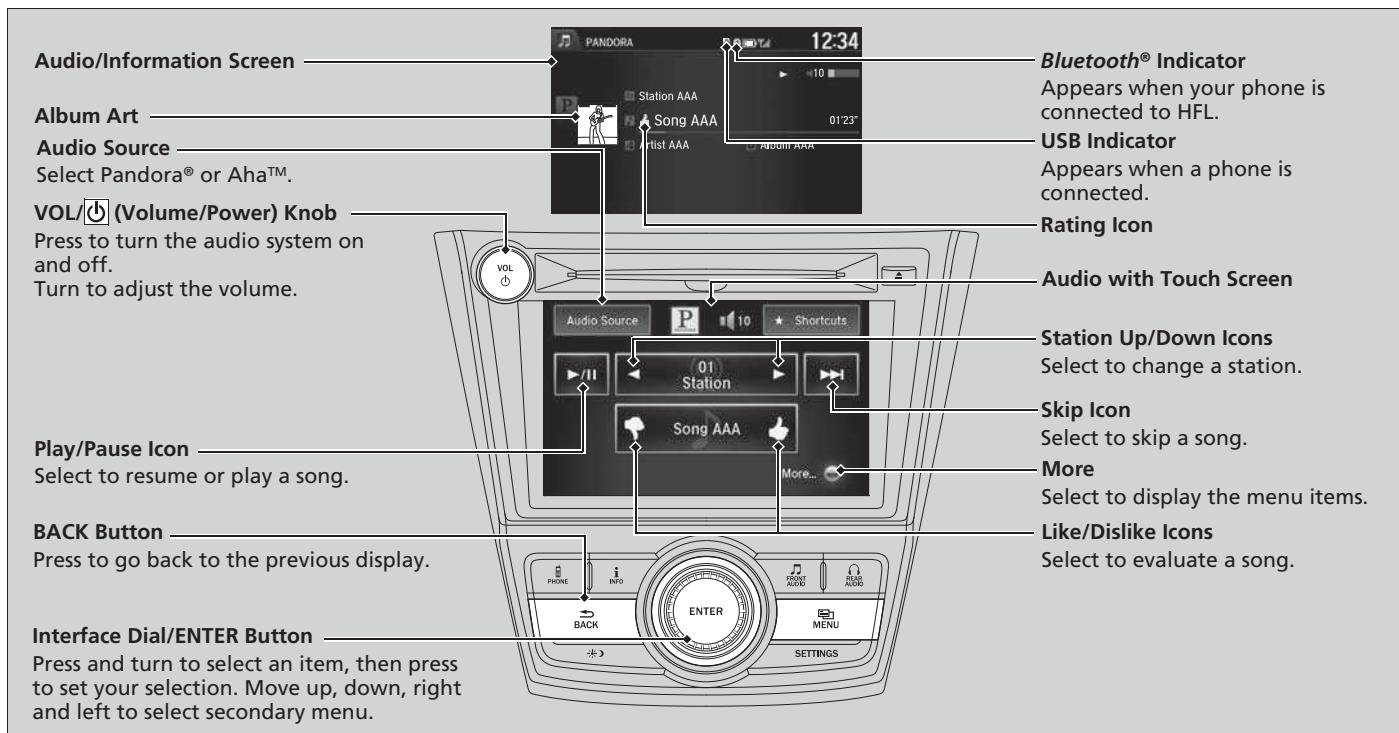
**iPhone**

You can also connect the phone using your dock connector to the USB port.

Select **Audio Source** to select Pandora or Aha mode.

»» Playing Internet Radio

*Pandora*®, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is currently available exclusively in the United States.





## Pandora® Menu\*

You can operate some of the Pandora® menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Skip Forward**
- **Play/Pause**
- **Station List**
- **Like**
- **Dislike**
- **Bookmark Track**
- **Bookmark Artist**
- **Change Source**

## ■ Operating a menu item



The menu items are shown in the lower half of the audio/information screen.

Rotate to select an item and press .

To select **Change Source**, press the **MENU** button, then press .

## ▶ Playing Internet Radio

To find out if your phone is compatible with this feature, visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.

Pandora® is a personalized Internet radio service that selects music based on an artist, song, or genre a user enters, and streams what is likely to be of interest.

To use this service in your vehicle, the Pandora® app must first be installed on your phone. Visit [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com). for more information.

If you cannot operate Pandora® through the audio system, it may be streaming through *Bluetooth*® Audio. Make sure Pandora® mode on your audio system is selected.

## ▶ Pandora® Menu\*

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **Pandora®** P. 269

There are restrictions on the number of songs you can skip or dislike in a given hour.

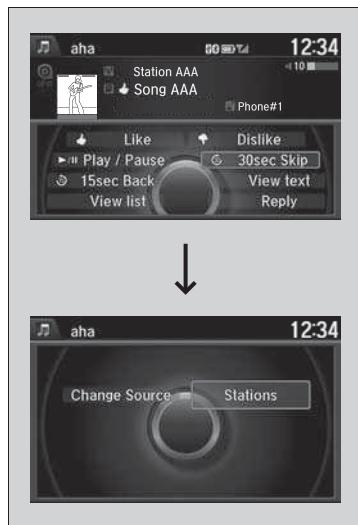


## Aha™ Radio Menu

You can operate some of the Aha™ menu items from your vehicle's audio system. The available items are:

- **Like**
- **Dislike**
- **Play/Pause**
- **15sec Back**
- **30sec Skip**
- **View text**
- **View list**
- **Reply**
- **Change Source**
- **Stations**

### ■ Operating a menu item



The menu items are shown in the lower half of the audio/information screen.

Rotate to select an item and press .

To select **Change Source** or **Stations**, press the **MENU** button, then press .

### ▶▶ Aha™ Radio Menu

Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favorite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

☞ **Aha™ Radio\*** P. 271

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

To use this service in your vehicle, the HondaLink app must be installed on your phone. Visit [owners.honda.com/apps](http://owners.honda.com/apps) for more information.

You must have a previously set up Aha account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit [www.aharadio.com](http://www.aharadio.com) for more information.

\* Not available on all models

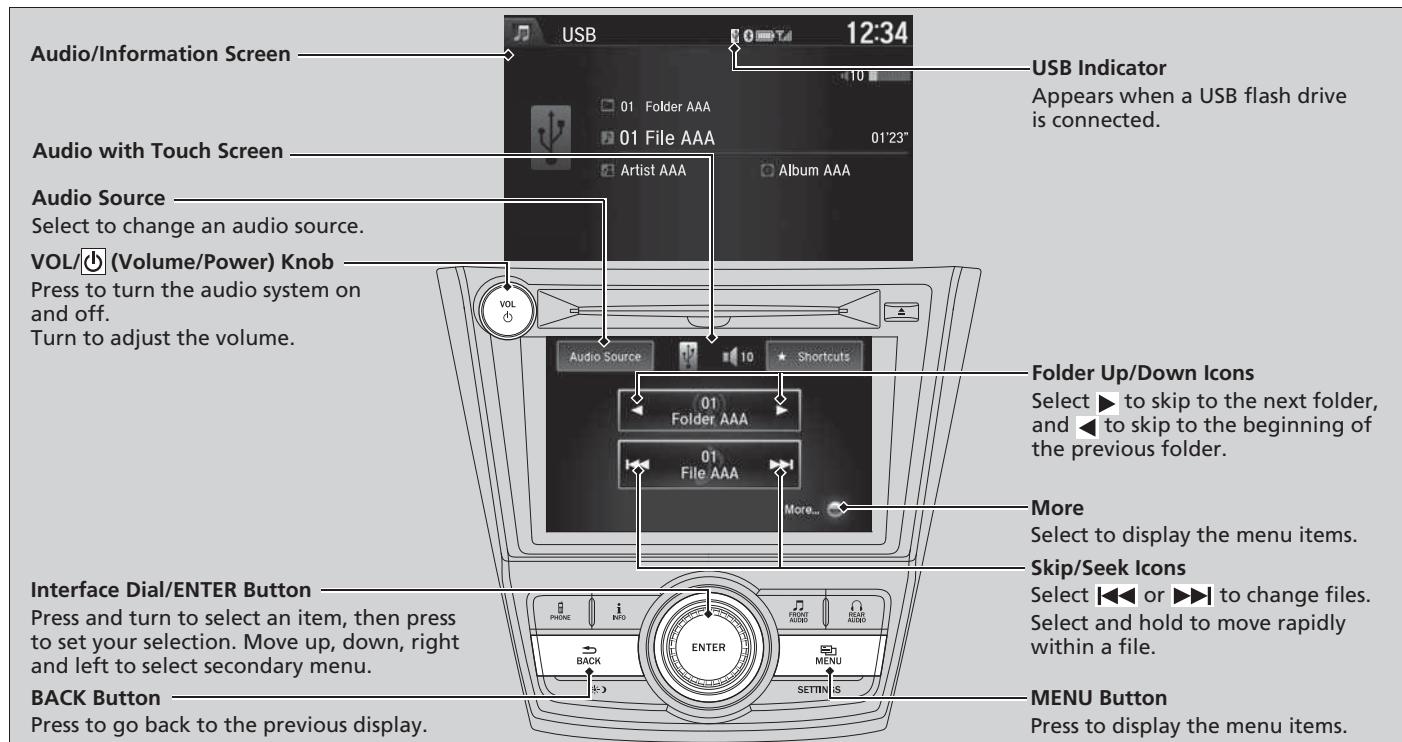


## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, or AAC\*1 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

➔ **USB Port** P. 207



\*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.



## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



Folder Selection



File Selection



1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select **Music Search**, then press .

3. Rotate , move or , then press to select a file from the **Music Search** list.

You can also select a file by the following procedure.

1. Rotate or press to display the song list.
2. Rotate , move or , then press to select a file from the list.

### ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

- ▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 272

Files in WMA/AAC format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

- ▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 268



## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



Random/Repeat is selected.



Random/Repeat is selected.

## ■ To turn off a play mode

### Interface Dial

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate to select the mode you want to turn off, then press .

### Audio with Touch Screen

1. Select **More**.
2. Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶How to Select a Play Mode

### Play Mode Menu Items

#### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

#### Random/Repeat

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

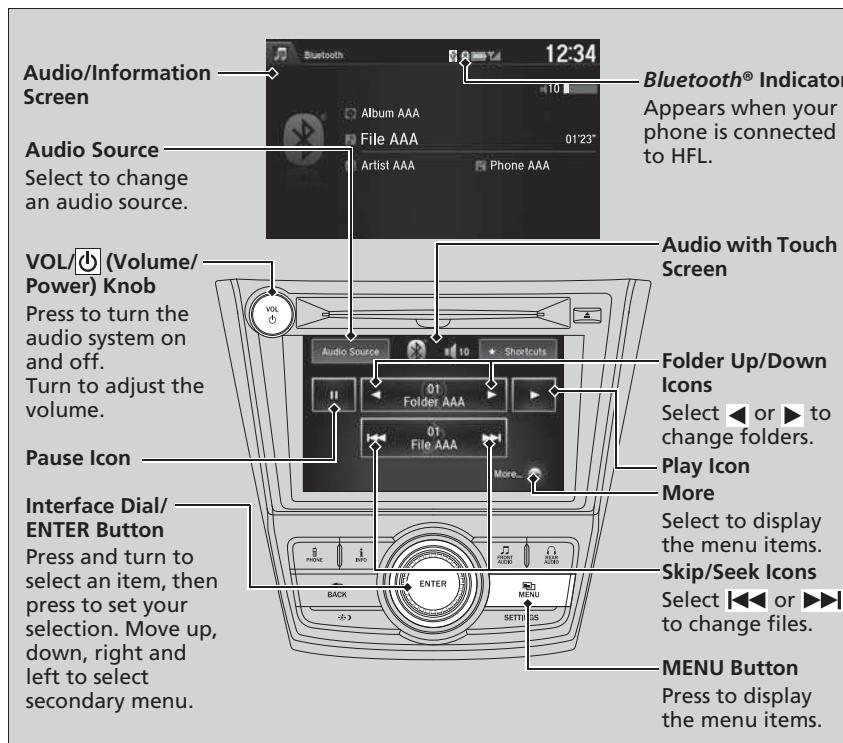


## Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your Bluetooth®-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

### Phone Setup P. 366



### Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system.

For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888-528-7876.

In some states, it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.



## ■ To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFL.
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognized, another HFL-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone. This function may not be available on some phones.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

### Interface Dial

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Play** or **Pause**, then press .

### Audio with Touch Screen

Select the play icon or pause icon.



## CD Player

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</li></ul>
<b>Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Push Eject</b>	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Press the ▲ (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</li><li>• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again.</li></ul> <p><b>☞ Protecting CDs P. 274</b></p>
<b>Mecha Error</b>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the error message reappears, press the ▲ button, and pull out the disc.</li><li>• Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li><li>• If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.</li></ul>
<b>Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li><li>• If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.</li></ul>
<b>Check Disc</b>	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed.</li></ul> <p><b>☞ Protecting CDs P. 274</b></p>
<b>Heat Error</b>	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</li></ul>



## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>USB Error</b>	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
<b>Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>Unsupported Version</b>	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
<b>Connect Retry</b>	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about 3 seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>No Data</b>	<p><b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty.</p> <p><b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash drive.</p> <p><b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.</p>
<b>Unsupported</b>	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.



U.S. models

## Pandora®

If an error occurs while playing Pandora®, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>Incompatible USB Device</b> <b>Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>[Audio/Information Screen]</b> <b>There is no station list in the device.</b> <b>Please add the station list to your device.</b>  <b>[Audio with Touch Screen]</b> <b>No stations have been created.</b> <b>Please create a station on the device.</b>	Appears when there is no station list on the device. Use the device to create a station.
<b>Music licenses force us to limit the number of tracks you may skip each hour.</b>	Appears when you try to skip a song or select <b>Dislike</b> over the predetermined number of times in an hour.



Error Message	Solution
<b>Unable to save rating.</b> <b>Unable to save bookmark</b> or <b>Unable to skip</b>	Appears when the commanded operation is failed. Try again later.
<b>No data</b>	Appears when no data is available with Pandora® activated. Reboot the app and reconnect the device.
<b>PANDORA Unsupported</b>	Appears when Pandora® version is not supported. Update Pandora® to the latest version.
<b>PANDORA system maintenance</b>	Appears when the Pandora® server is in maintenance. Try again later.
<b>Cannot connect to PANDORA. When stopped, make sure PANDORA is running on the phone. For iPhone, set connection priority to USB and reconnect.</b>	Appears when Pandora® is unable to play music. Check your device.



## Aha™ Radio\*

If an error occurs while playing Aha™ Radio, you may see the following error messages.

If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>Cannot connect to aha. When stopped, make sure aha is running on the phone. For iPhone, set connection priority to USB and reconnect.</b>	Appears when the Aha™ app is not activated. Check your device.
<b>Incompatible USB Device Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.



## SiriusXM® Radio Service\*

### Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

1. You need your radio ID ready before registering for subscription.  
To see the ID on the display: Turn the selector knob until **0** appears.
2. Have your radio ID and credit card number ready, and either call or visit the XM® website to subscribe.

### Subscribing to SiriusXM® Radio

Contact Information for SiriusXM® Radio:  
US: SiriusXM® Radio at [www.siriusxm.com](http://www.siriusxm.com) or (800) 852-9696  
Canada: SiriusXM® Canada at [www.xmradio.ca](http://www.xmradio.ca), or (877) 209-0079

### Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

Switch to the SiriusXM mode by using the **MODE** button on the steering wheel, or through the audio with touch screen, and stay in this mode for about 30 minutes until the service is activated. Make sure your vehicle is in an open area with good reception.

### Receiving SiriusXM® Radio

The SiriusXM® satellites are in orbit over the equator, therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

### SiriusXM® Radio Display Messages

#### Loading:

SiriusXM® is loading the audio or program information.

#### Ch off air:

The channel is not currently broadcasting.

#### Ch unauthorized:

SiriusXM® radio is receiving information update from the network.

#### No signal:

The signal is too weak in the current location.

#### Ch unavailable:

No such channel exists, the channel is not part of your subscription, or the artist or title information is unavailable.

#### Check antenna:

There is a problem with the SiriusXM® antenna. Contact a dealer.

You may experience reception problems under the following circumstances:

- In a location with an obstruction to the south of your vehicle.
- In tunnels
- On the lower level of a multi-tiered road
- Large items carried on the roof rack



## Recommended CDs

- Use only high-quality CD-R or CD-RW discs labeled for audio use.
- Use only CD-R or CD-RW discs on which the recordings are closed.
- Play only standard round-shaped CDs.

The CD packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



### »Recommended CDs

A Dual-disc cannot play on this audio unit. If recorded under certain conditions, a CD-R or CD-RW may not play either.

## CDs with MP3, WMA or AAC files

- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA or AAC formats may be unsupported.



## ■ Protecting CDs

Follow these precautions when handling or storing CDs:

- Store a CD in its case when it is not being played.
- When wiping a CD, use a soft clean cloth from the center to the outside edge.
- Handle a CD by its edge. Never touch either surface.
- Never insert foreign objects into the CD player.
- Keep CDs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.
- Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the CD.
- Avoid fingerprints, liquids, and felt-tip pens on the CD.

## ▶Protecting CDs

### NOTICE

Do not insert a damaged CD. It may be stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

### Examples:

- Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick CDs
  - Bubbled/Wrinkled
  - With Label/Sticker
  - Using Printer Label Kit
- Damaged CDs
  - Sealed
  - With Plastic Ring
  - Chipped/Cracked
  - Warped
  - Burrs
- Poor quality CDs
  - Small CDs
  - 3-inch (8-cm) CD



## Compatible iPod and USB Flash Drives

### iPod Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120G (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160G (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) launch in 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) launch in 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5

### USB Flash Drives

- Use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC formats may be unsupported.

### »iPod Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### »USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.



# Rear Entertainment System\*

## Features

### Models with navigation system

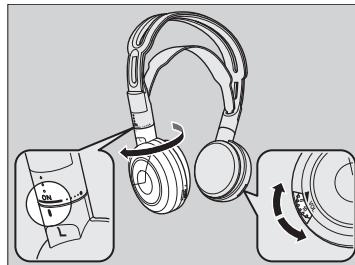
See the Navigation System Manual for how to operate the rear entertainment system.

### Models without navigation system

Allows the rear passengers to enjoy a different entertainment source, such as DVD, CD, and radio, than the front passengers.

## Wireless Headphones

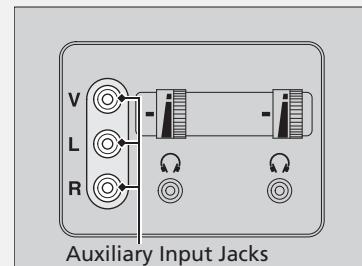
The rear seat passengers can listen to audio from the rear entertainment system by a wireless headphone that comes with your vehicle.



**To turn on the switch:** Pivot the left earpiece outward.

**To adjust the volume:** Turn the dial at the bottom of the right earpiece.

### Rear Entertainment System\*



The system also allows for auxiliary inputs from standard video games. The jacks are above the third row seat armrest on the driver's side.

**V** = Video jack

**L** = Left audio jack

**R** = Right audio jack

### Wireless Headphones

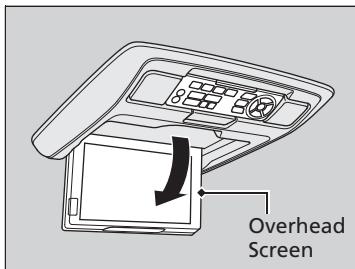
Your vehicle comes with two wireless headphones.

Wear the headphone correctly with the earpiece marked with L goes to your left ear and R goes to your right ear.

Wearing the headphone backward may affect the audio reception.



## Overhead Screen



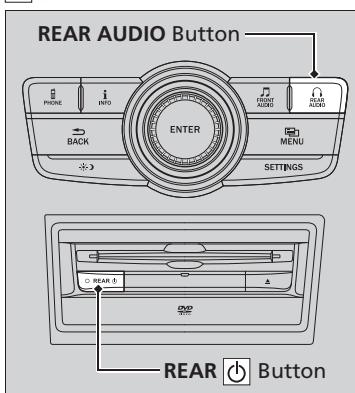
Pull down the screen to the first or second detent until it latches.

## Overhead Screen

You can use the rear control panel as a remote. Press the lock tab to detach it.

## Operating the System

To operate the system, set the power mode to ON or ACCESSORY. Press the **REAR** (power) button to turn on the system.



### ■ REAR AUDIO button on the front panel

When you press the **REAR AUDIO** button, the front display changes to what is displayed on the rear overhead screen.

The audio from the front speakers switches to the audio played in the rear.

*Continued*



## System Controls and Menus for DVD

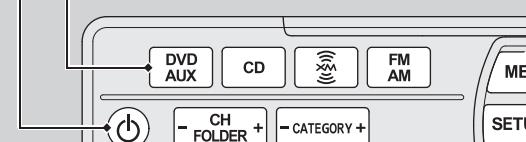
### Remote with XM button

#### (Power) Button

Press to turn on the system.

#### DVD/AUX Button

Press to watch a DVD.



#### (Light) Button

Press to illuminate the buttons and bars for a few seconds.

#### SKIP Bar

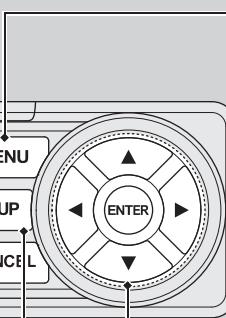
Press or to change chapters.

#### (Play/Pause) Button

Press to pause or play a DVD.

#### TITLE/SCROLL Button

Press to display the status of the DVD that is currently playing.



#### CANCEL Button

Press to go back to the previous display or operation.

#### MENU Button

The following options appear when you play a DVD and press the **MENU** button:

##### Top Menu

##### Menu

##### Play Mode

###### Audio

###### Subtitle

###### Angle

###### Title

###### Chapter

###### NumInput

##### Search/NumInput

##### Repeat

##### Pause/Play

##### Stop

##### Return

#### SETUP Button

The following options appear when you play a DVD and press the **SETUP** button:

##### Disp Adjust

( P. 286)

###### Brightness

###### Contrast

###### Black Level

###### Color

###### Tint

##### Aspect Ratio

( P. 286)

###### Normal

###### Wide

###### Zoom

###### Full

##### Personal Surround

( P. 286)

##### Language

▲, ▼, ▶, ◁ and ENTER Buttons  
Use ▲, ▼, ▶, or ◁ to highlight a menu item, and press the ENTER Button to make a selection.



## Remote without XM button

**(Power) Button**  
Press to turn on the system.

**DVD Button**  
Press to watch a DVD.

**(Light) Button**  
Press to illuminate the buttons and bars for a few seconds.

**SKIP Bar**  
Press  $\blacktriangleleft$  or  $\triangleright$  to change chapters.

**(Play/Pause) Button**  
Press to pause or play a DVD.

**TITLE/SCROLL Button**  
Press to display the status of the DVD that is currently playing.

**MENU Button**  
The following options appear when you play a DVD and press the **MENU** button:

- Top Menu
- Menu
- Play Mode
  - Audio
  - Subtitle
  - Angle
- Search/NumInput
  - Title
  - Chapter
  - NumInput
- Repeat
- Pause/Play
- Stop
- Return

**SETUP Button**  
The following options appear when you play a DVD and press the **SETUP** button:

- Disp Adjust ( P. 286)
  - Brightness
  - Contrast
  - Black Level
  - Color
  - Tint
- Aspect Ratio ( P. 286)
  - Normal
  - Wide
  - Zoom
  - Full
- Personal Surround ( P. 286)
- Language ( P. 287)

**$\blacktriangleleft$ ,  $\triangleright$ ,  $\downarrow$ ,  $\uparrow$  and ENTER Buttons**  
Use  $\blacktriangleleft$ ,  $\triangleright$ ,  $\downarrow$ ,  $\uparrow$ , or  $\blacktriangleleft$  to highlight a menu item, and press the **ENTER** Button to make a selection.



## ■ Playing a DVD

- Insert a DVD into the lower slot of the front audio unit.  
▶ The system automatically starts the DVD.
- To fast forward, press and hold the **▶▶** (SEEK/SKIP) bar, and to reverse, press and hold the **◀◀** bar on the front panel or the remote.
- To go to the next chapter, press the **▶▶** bar, and to go to the beginning of the current chapter, press the **◀◀** bar on the front panel or the remote. Quickly press the **◀◀** bar twice to go to the previous chapter.

## ■ DVD setup from the front panel

Press the **REAR AUDIO** button on the front panel while a DVD is playing.

### Audio/Subtitle:

Selects a language for audio and subtitles that is available on the DVD.

1. Press the **MENU** button to display **Menu** in front.
2. Rotate to select **Other Function**, then press .  
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Audio/Subtitle**.
3. Move and to select the upper and lower part of the screen.
4. In the upper part, rotate to select a language for audio, then press .  
In the lower part, rotate to select a subtitle language, then press .  
▶ To turn off subtitles, rotate to select **OFF**, then press .

## ▶Playing a DVD

DVD is available for the rear seat passenger only.

**Angle:**

Changes the view angle.

1. Press the **MENU** button to display **Menu** in front.
2. Rotate  to select **Other Function**, then press .  
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Angle**.
3. Rotate  to select a desired angle, then press .

**Search:**

Selects the title or chapter you want to play.

1. Press the **MENU** button to display **Menu** in front.
2. Rotate  to select **Other Function**, then press .  
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Search**.
3. Move  and  to select the upper and lower part of the screen.
4. In the upper part, rotate  to search for a title, then press   
In the lower part, rotate  to search for a chapter, then press .

**Number Input:**

Enters a three digit number, if issued to the DVD, to find the segment you want to start to play.

1. Press the **MENU** button to display **Menu** in front.
2. Rotate  to select **Other Function**, then press   
▶ Repeat the procedure to select **Number Input**.
3. Rotate  to select number(s), then press .
4. Rotate  to select **OK**, then press .

**▶▶DVD setup from the front panel**

If the DVD currently playing does not carry multiple angles, only one option **Angle 1** comes on.



### Rear Control:

Disables controls from the remote.

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button to display **Settings menu** in front.
2. Rotate  to select **Rear Ent Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Rear Control**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

### Rear Speaker:

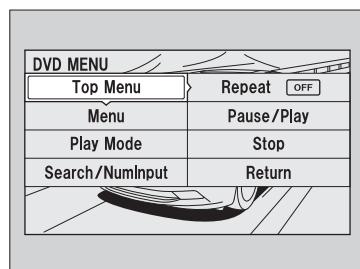
Mutes the sounds from the rear speakers.

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button to display **Settings menu** in front.
2. Rotate  to select **Rear Ent Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Rear Speaker**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

### ■ TITLE/SCROLL button on the remote

Press the **TITLE/SCROLL** button while the DVD is playing to see the current status of title, chapter, elapsed time, angle, subtitle, audio, and sound characteristics.

### ■ MENU button on the remote



Press the **MENU** button while the DVD is playing to see the available options. Use the **▲**, **▼**, **▶**, and **◀** buttons to highlight the option and then press the **ENTER** button.

### ■ TITLE/SCROLL button on the remote

Press the **TITLE/SCROLL** button again to return.

**Top Menu:**

The top page of the DVD's title menu appears. The title menu also appears when you press the **MENU** button while the DVD is in the slot not playing. Press the **CANCEL** or **MENU** button to return.

**Menu:**

The DVD's title menu appears.

**Play Mode:**

You can change the following three settings:

---

- Audio - Select a language for audio that is available on the DVD. The sound characteristics (Dolby Digital, LPCM, MPEG Audio, dts, etc) of that audio is also displayed.
- Subtitle - Select a subtitle that is available on the DVD.
- Angle - Select a view angle that is available on the DVD. If the DVD currently playing does not carry multiple angles, only one option **Angle 1** comes on. Press the **CANCEL** or **MENU** button to return.

---

**When the DVD is not playing**

If you press the **MENU** button while the DVD is not playing, the option **Play Mode** changes to **Initial Settings**.



## Initial Settings:

You can configure the initial Language, Dynamic Range, and Angle Mark settings before playing DVD.

Language Select the language for the DVD's displayed menus (Menu Language), Settings - the DVD's audio (Audio Language), and the DVD's subtitle (Subtitle Language).

1. Select the language setting.
2. Select the language from **English, French, Spanish, Arabic, German, Italian, Dutch, Chinese, Korean, Thai, Japanese, and other.**
3. If you select other, you need to enter the four digit language code number to configure the language that is not listed. Select Yes to go to the number input screen.
  - ▶ To return to the language **Setting screen**, select No.
4. Press the **ENTER** button each time you input digit.
  - ▶ If you want to delete a number, select **DEL**.
5. The cursor automatically goes to **ENT** after you input four digits. Press the **ENTER** button to command.

Dynamic The feature reduces the difference between the loud and quiet sound  
Range - levels. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

Angle You can select whether to display the angle mark appearing in the  
Mark - upper right corner of the screen when you change the view angle while  
the DVD is playing. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## ▶MENU button on the remote

### Initial Settings:

The prior language varies by disc. You may not be able to configure your selected language setting.

**Search:**

You can search for a DVD segment from the following methods.

---

Title Search -	Select the title you want to play.
Chapter Search -	Select the chapter you want to play.
NumInput -	Enter a three digit number, if issued to the DVD, to find the segment you want to start to play.

---

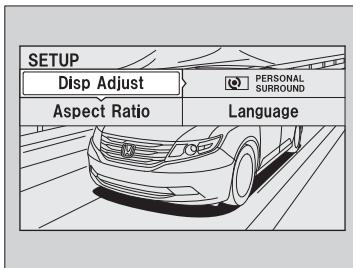
1. Select **NumInput** to go to the number input screen.
2. Use the **▲, ▼, ▶, and ◀** buttons to input numbers.
  - ▶ If you want to delete a number, select **DEL**.
3. The cursor automatically goes to **ENT** after you input three digits. Press the **ENTER** button to command.

**Repeat:**

Highlight this option and press the **ENTER** button to change the repeat mode from chapter repeat and title repeat, to repeat off.



## ■ SETUP button on the remote



Press the **SETUP** button while the DVD is playing to see the available options. Use the **▲**, **▼**, **▶**, and **◀** buttons to highlight the option and then press the **ENTER** button.

### **Disp Adjust:**

You can adjust the overhead screen's brightness, contrast, black level, color, and tint. To return to the default display setting, select **Reset**.

After you make all the adjustments, the screen goes back to the top **SETUP** screen, or press the **CANCEL** button to return.

### **Aspect Ratio:**

You can select the screen mode with a different aspect ratio from Normal, Wide, Zoom and Full. After you select the mode, it takes about one second to return to the play mode with the selected ratio.

### **Personal Surround:**

You can select the sound effect mode that fits the DVD's audio source from Music, Cinema, and Voice. Select Off to turn this feature off.



**Language:**

You can select the display language from **English**, **French**, and **Spanish**.

**When the DVD is not playing**

You can select the audio language from **English**, **French**, and **Spanish**.

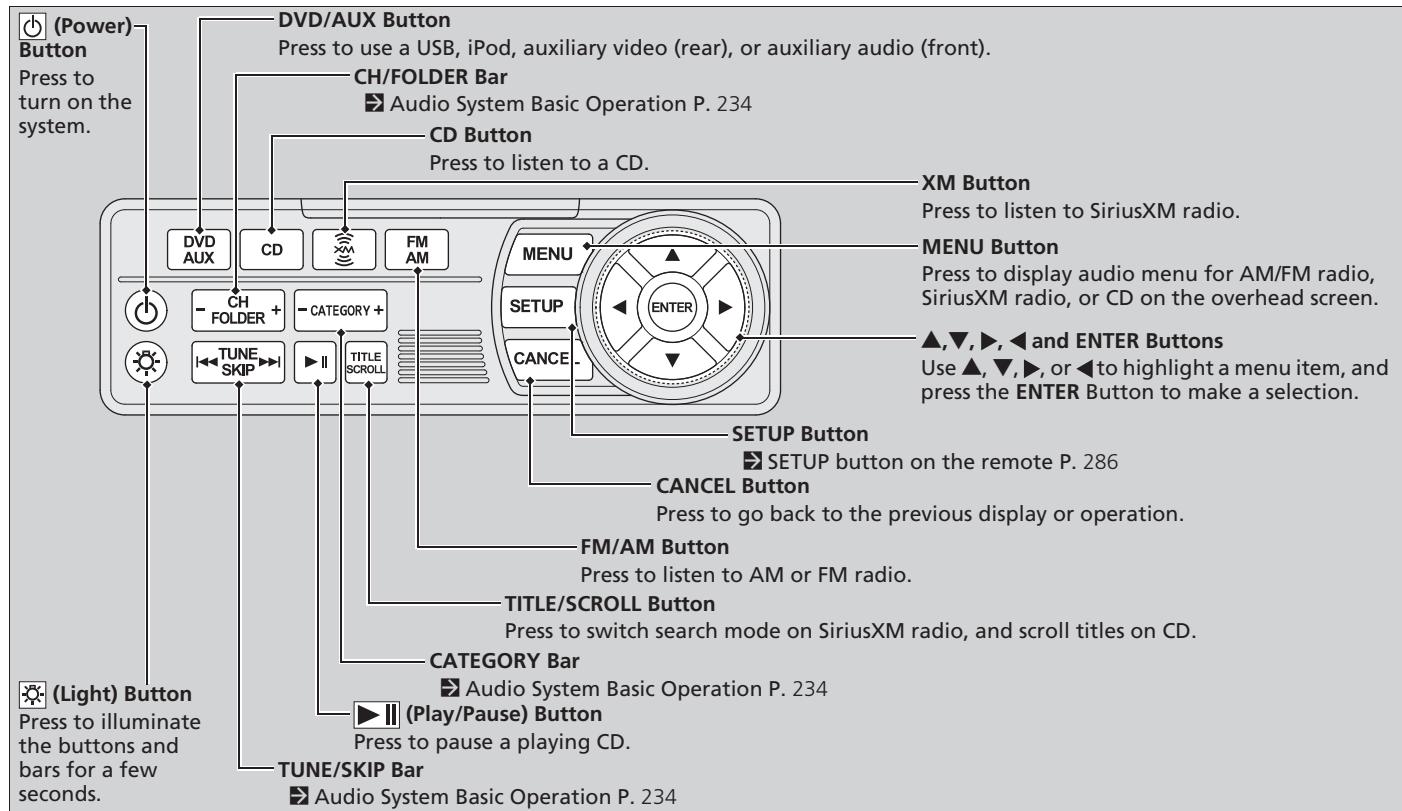
**Appearance:**

You can select the screen color from **white**, **black**, **blue**, **brown**, and **red**.



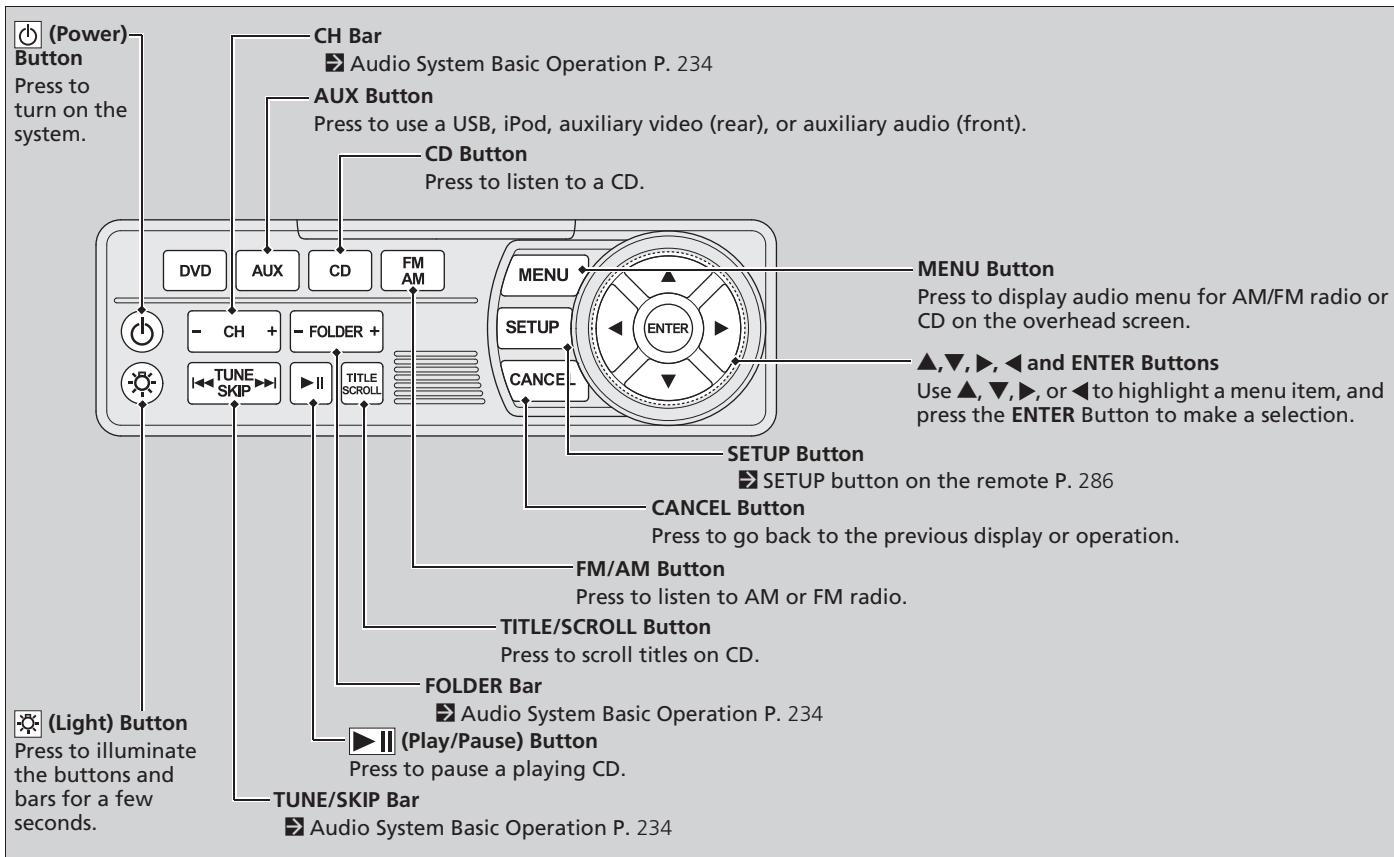
## System Controls and Menus for Audio

### Remote with XM button





## Remote without XM button





## ■ Playing AM/FM radio in the rear

Press the **AM/FM** button.

When you press the **MENU** button while the radio is playing, the audio menu appears on the overhead screen. The available functions are the same as those of the front audio system. The **TUNE/SKIP** bar on the control panel works the same as the Skip/Seek icons (◀◀/▶▶) on the front touchscreen for AM/FM radio operation.

☞ **Playing AM/FM Radio** P. 245

## ■ Playing SiriusXM radio in the rear

Press the **XM** button.

When you press the **MENU** button while the radio is playing, the audio menu appears on the overhead screen. The available functions are the same as those of the front audio system. The **TUNE/SKIP** bar on the control panel works the same as the Skip/Seek icons (◀◀/▶▶) on the front touchscreen for SiriusXM radio operation.

☞ **Playing SiriusXM® Radio\*** P. 249

To change the mode between category and channel, press and hold the **TITLE/SCROLL** button for five seconds.

## ▶System Controls and Menus for Audio

If you press the **REAR AUDIO** button on the front panel, you can operate the rear entertainment system from the front display.

☞ **REAR AUDIO button on the front panel**

P. 277



## ■ Playing a CD

Press the **CD** button.

The available options appear on the overhead screen are Repeat, Random, and Scan. These functions are the same as those of the front audio system.

☞ **Playing a CD** P. 252

To scroll your audio data title, press the **TITLE/SCROLL** button for five seconds.

## ■ Playing iPod and a USB flash drive

**Remote with XM button**

Press the **DVD/AUX** button.

**Remote without XM button**

Press the **AUX** button.

The available options appear on the overhead screen are Repeat, Random, and Scan. These functions are the same as those of the front audio system.

☞ **Playing an iPod** P. 255

☞ **Playing a USB Flash Drive** P. 262

To scroll your audio data title, press the **TITLE/SCROLL** button for five seconds.

### »System Controls and Menus for Audio

You can also insert an audio CD compatible with the system, or recorded in MP3/WMA/AAC formats into the lower slot and play. The front passengers can listen to the same CD, or select another audio source.

☞ **Playable Discs** P. 293

☞ **Audio Sources for Front and Rear Seats**  
P. 292



## Audio Sources for Front and Rear Seats

The table shows the possible audio source combinations of the front audio system and rear entertainment system's simultaneous use.

Front Rear	AM/FM Radio	SiriusXM® Radio*	CD	DVD* <sup>1</sup>	USB iPod	Bluetooth® Audio	Pandora®* Aha™*
AM/FM Radio	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
SiriusXM® Radio*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
CD	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DVD	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
USB iPod	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

\*1: The front seat passengers are only able to hear the DVD's sound from the front speakers.

### ▶Audio Sources for Front and Rear Seats

Yes: These audio sources are simultaneously playable. When listening to same source in both the front and rear, the playing channel or track will also be the same for each.

No: These audio sources are not simultaneously playable.



## Playable Discs



The discs that come with these labels can be played in your vehicle's rear entertainment system.

Also look for the region code of 1 or ALL on the package or jacket on the disc.

DVD-ROMs are not playable in this unit.

### »» Playable Discs

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic, MLP Lossless and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



## DVD Player Error Messages

If a disc error occurs, you may see the following error messages.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Track/file format not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Current track/file will be skipped. The next supported track/file plays automatically.</li></ul>
<b>Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual Push Eject</b>	Mechanical error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Press the ▲ (eject) button and remove the disc, and check that the error message is cleared.</li><li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed, and insert the disc again. → <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 274</li></ul>
<b>Mecha Error</b>		
<b>Bad Disc Please Check Owner's Manual</b>	Servo error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>If the error message reappears, press the ▲ button, and pull out the disc.</li><li>Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc.</li><li>If the error message repeats, or the disc cannot be removed, contact a dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.</li></ul>
<b>Check Disc</b>	Disc error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check that the disc is not damaged or deformed. → <b>Protecting CDs</b> P. 274</li></ul>
<b>Heat Error</b>	High temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Turn the audio system off and allow the player to cool down until the error message is cleared.</li></ul>
<b>The mode selected is restricted in this system. Please select another mode.</b>	Unavailable source selected	Review the table of the possible audio source combinations of the front audio system and rear entertainment system's simultaneous use. → <b>Audio Sources for Front and Rear Seats</b> P. 292



## Models with navigation system

See the Navigation System Manual for the customized features except for the **Vehicle Settings**.

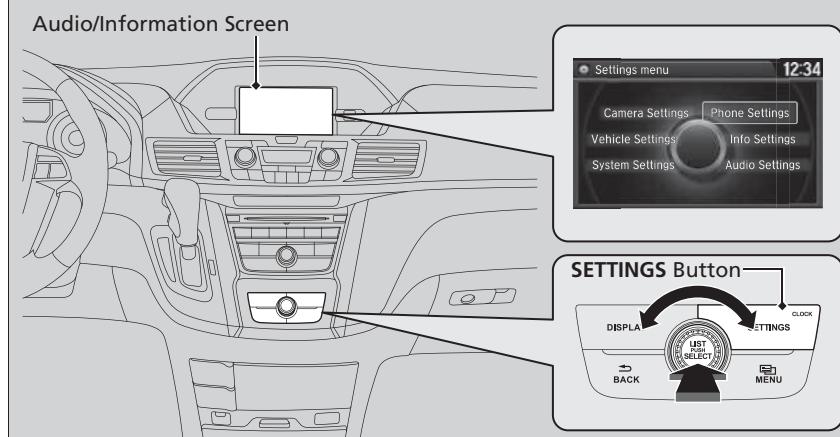
## Models without navigation system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

### How to customize

Select your desired setting item by pressing the **SETTINGS** button, then rotating  while the ignition switch is in ON \*, and the vehicle is at a complete stop. Press .

## Models with one display



## Customized Features

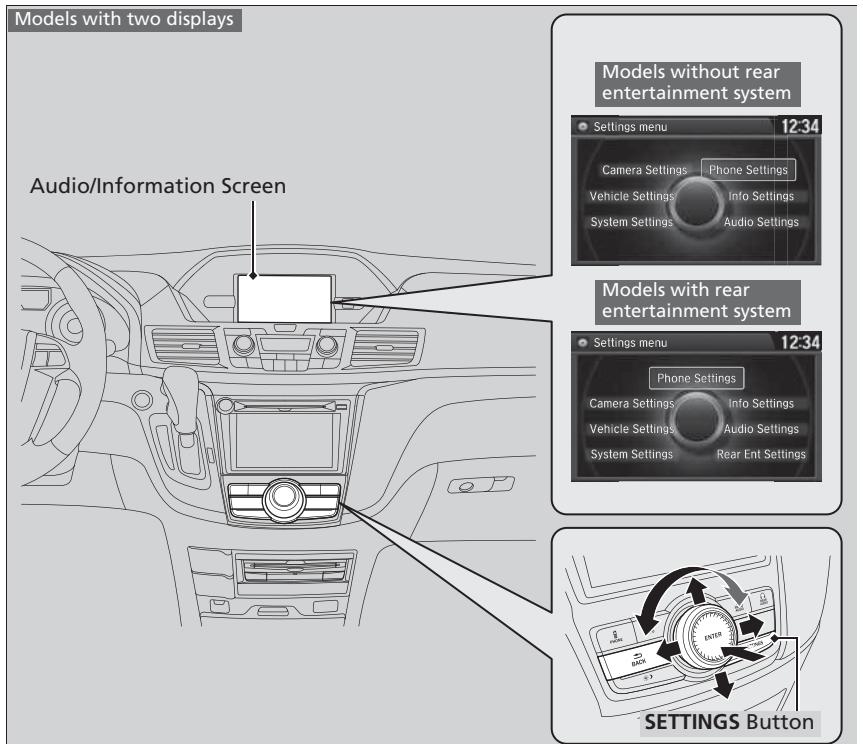
When you customize setting, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to .

## Models with one display

To customize other features, rotate , and press .

⇒ **List of customizable options** P. 304

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



▶Customized Features

Models with two displays

To customize other features, rotate , move , or , and press .

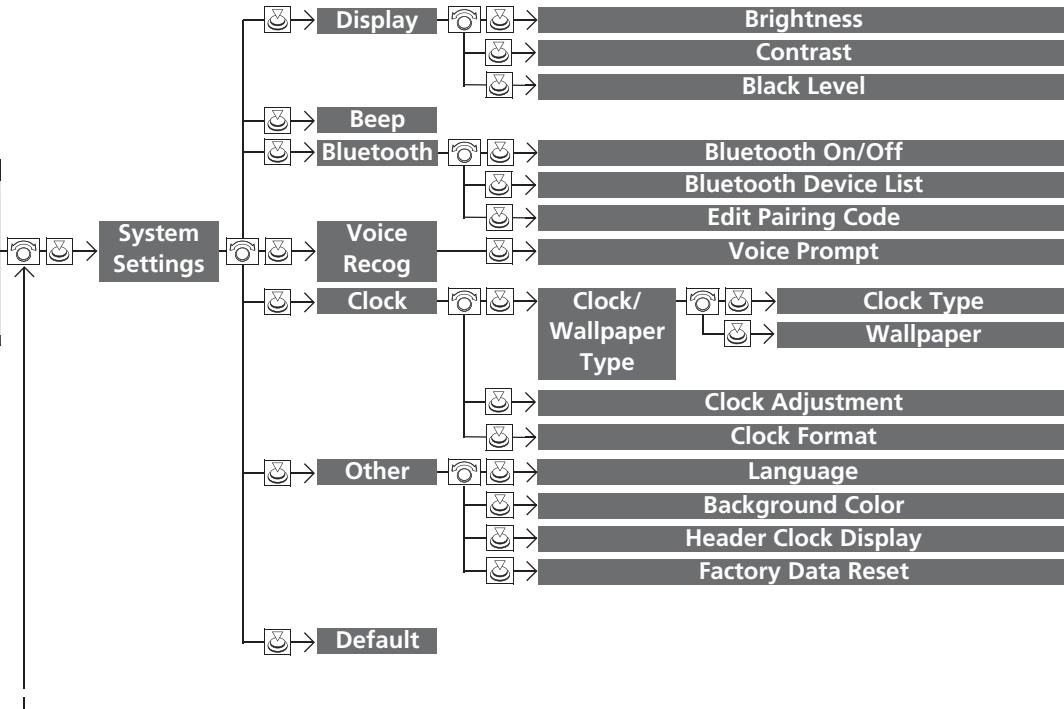
↗ **List of customizable options** P. 312

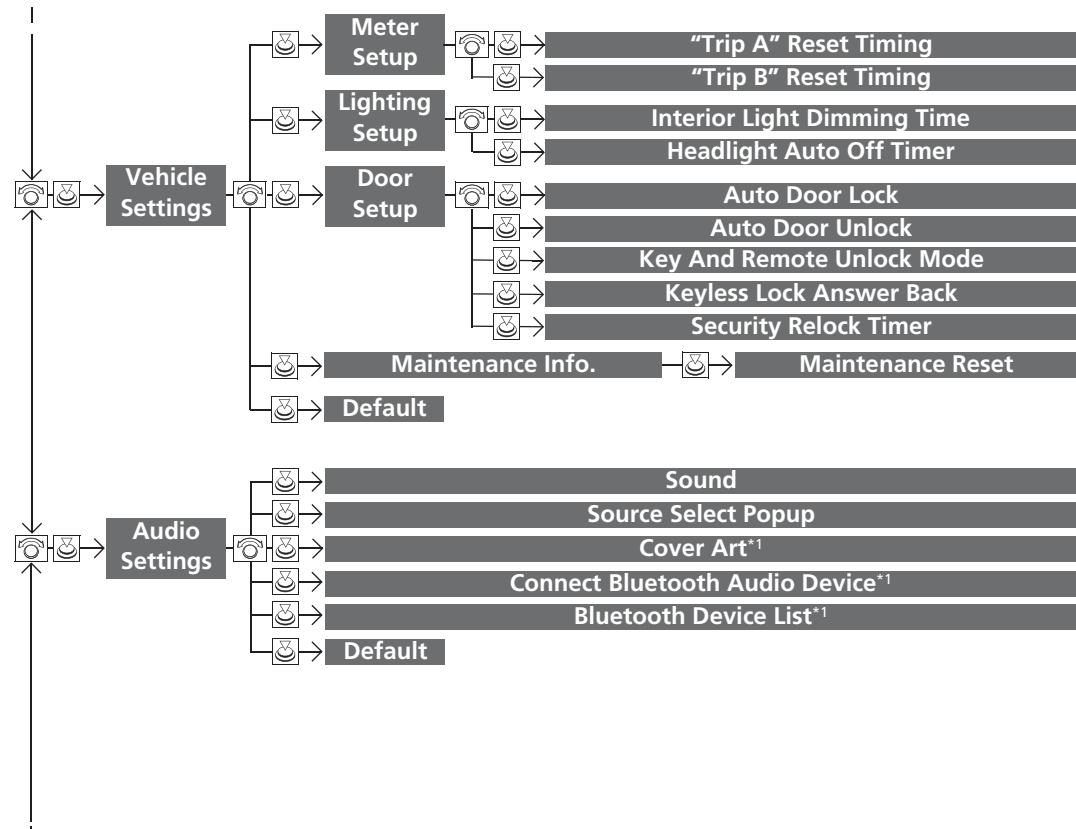


Models with one display

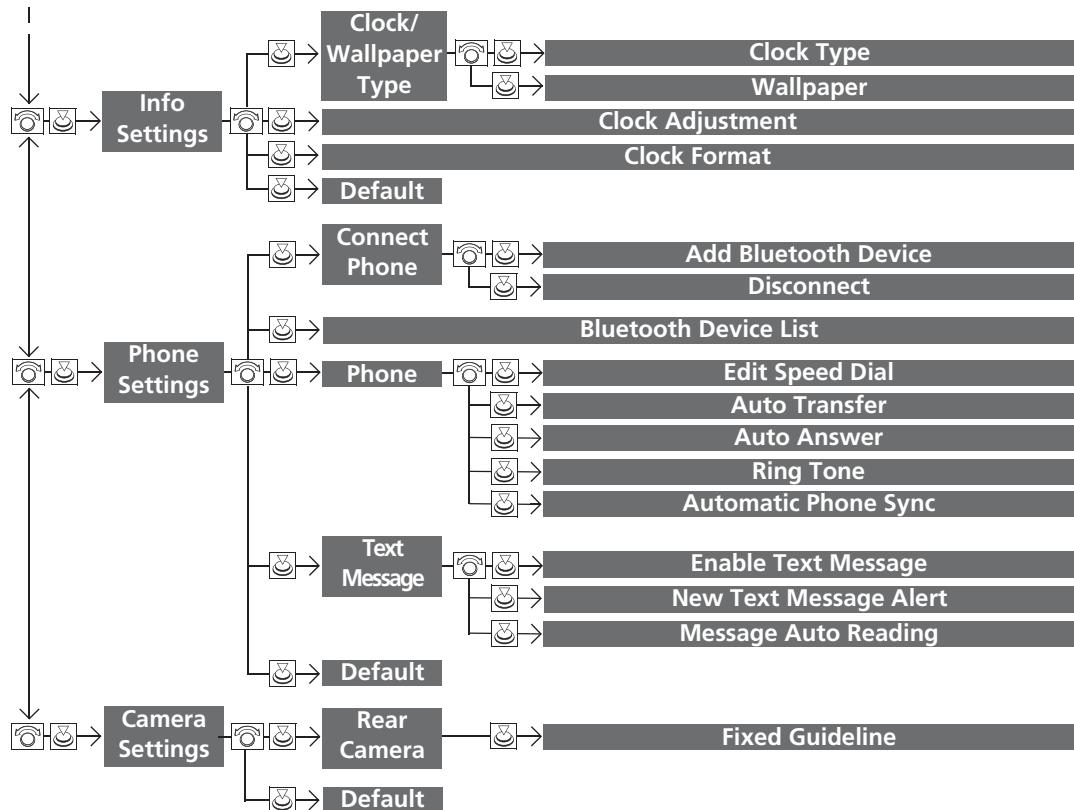
## ■ Customization flow

Press the **SETTINGS** button.





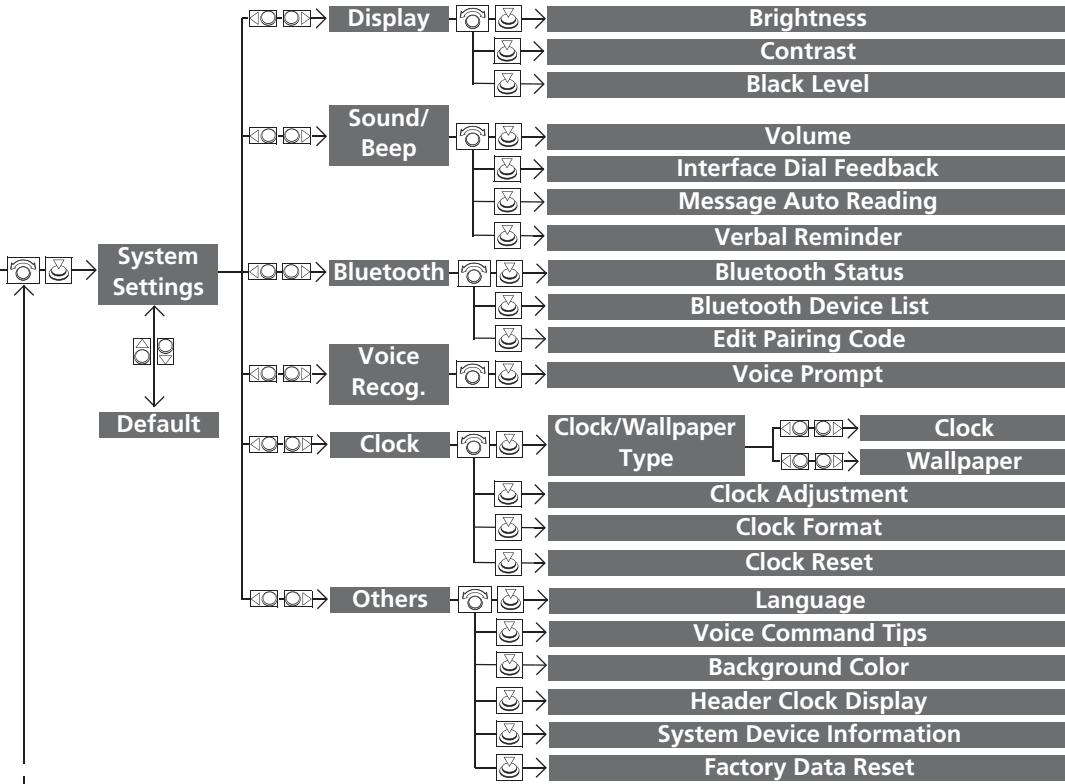
\*1:May change depending on your currently selected source.

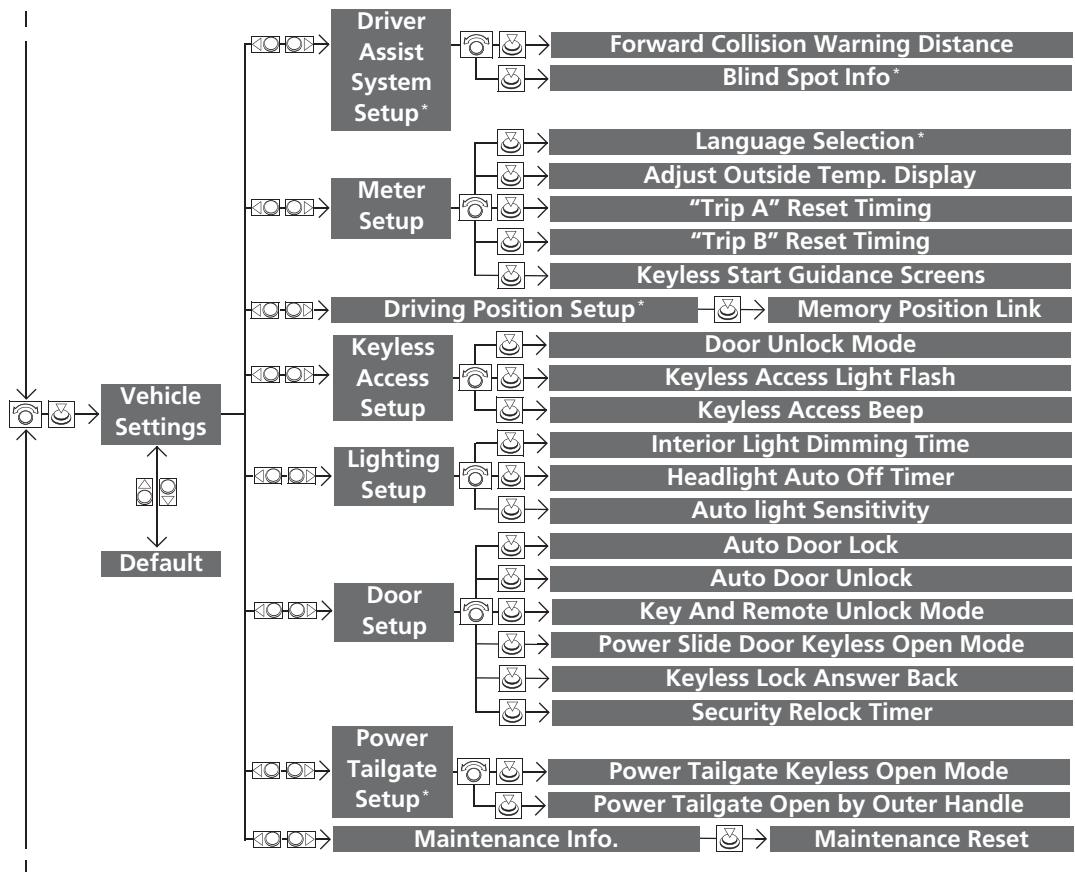




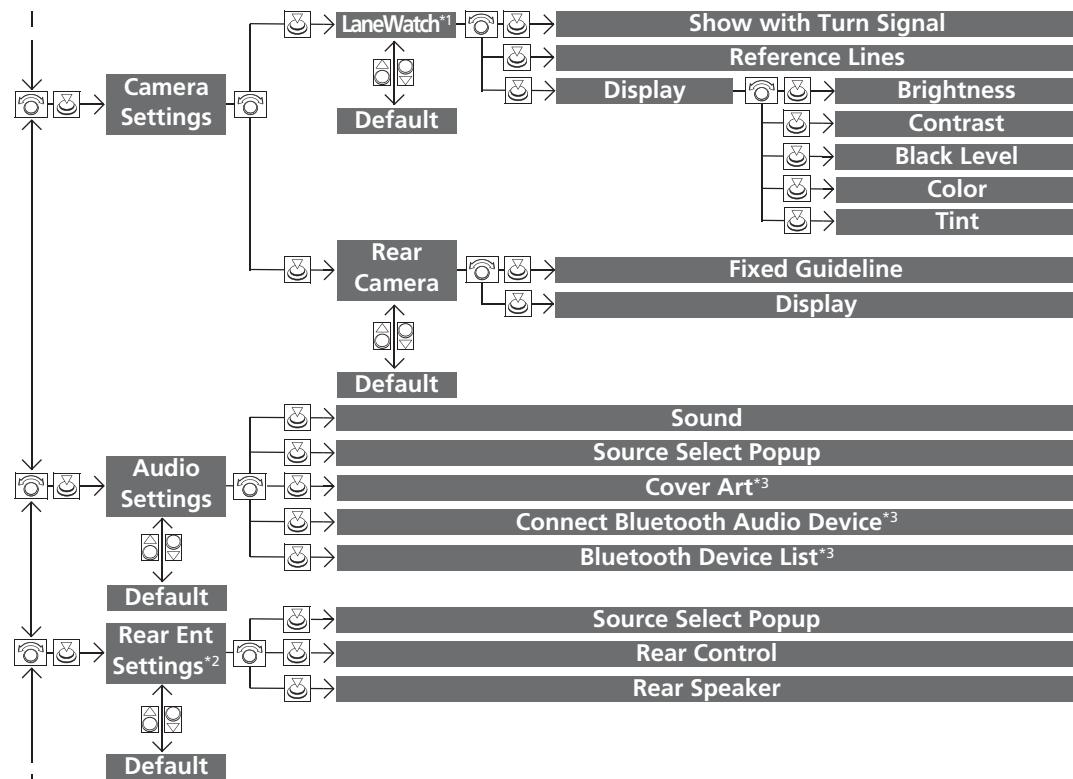
Models with two displays

## ■ Customization flow

Press the **SETTINGS** button.



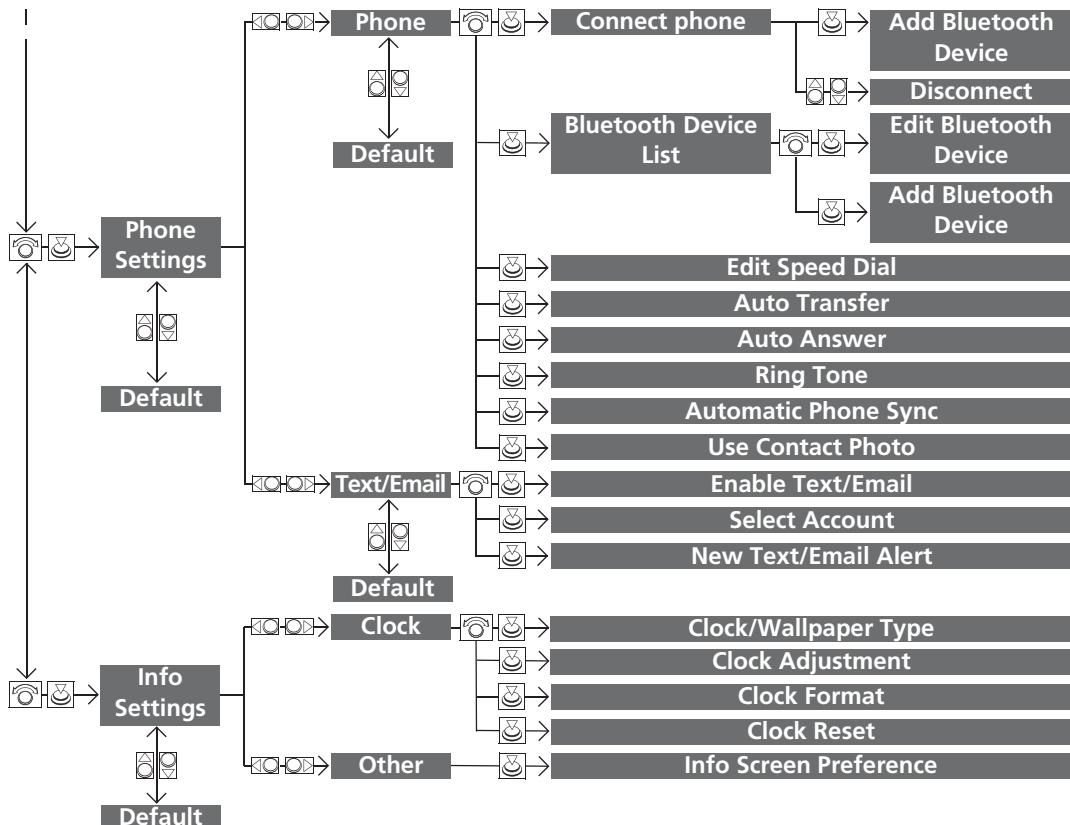
Features



\*1:Not available on all models

\*2:Models with rear entertainment system

\*3:May change depending on your currently selected source.



**■ List of customizable options**

Models with one display

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	<b>Display</b>	<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.
		<b>Black Level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.
	<b>Beep</b>	Selects whether a beeper sounds or not when you operate the selector knob.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Bluetooth On/Off</b>	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Blue-tooth</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b> Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a security PIN. ⇒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 334	—
	<b>Edit Pairing Code</b>	Changes a pairing code. ⇒ <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 336	<b>Random/Fixed<sup>*1</sup></b>
<b>Voice Recog</b>	<b>Voice Prompt</b>	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	<b>Beginner<sup>*1</sup>/Expert</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	<b>Clock</b>	<b>Clock Type</b> Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital* <sup>1</sup> /Small Digital/Off
	<b>Clock/</b> <b>Wallpaper</b>	<b>Wallpaper</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li><li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li><li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li></ul> <b>⇒ Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 214	Blank/Galaxy* <sup>1</sup> /Metallic/Add New
	<b>Clock Adjustment</b>	Adjusts Clock. <b>⇒ Clock</b> P. 108	—
	<b>Clock Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H* <sup>1</sup> /24H
	<b>Language</b>	Changes the display language.	English* <sup>1</sup> /French/Spanish
	<b>Other</b>	<b>Background Color</b> Changes the background color of the audio/information screen.	Blue* <sup>1</sup> /Amber/Red/Green
	<b>Header Clock Display</b>	Selects whether the clock display comes on or not.	On* <sup>1</sup> /Off
	<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default. <b>⇒ Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 324	Yes/No
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels /Resets all customized items in the <b>System Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	<b>"Trip A" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	<b>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>"Trip B" Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	<b>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset<sup>*1</sup></b>
Vehicle Settings	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60seconds/ 30seconds<sup>*1</sup>/ 15seconds</b>
	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60seconds/ 30seconds/ 15seconds<sup>*1</sup>/ 0seconds</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	<b>With Vehicle Speed<sup>*1</sup>/Shift from P/Off</b>
	<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	<b>Driver Door with Shift to P<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors with Shift to P/Driver Door with IGN Off/All Doors with IGN Off/Off</b>
	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	<b>Driver Door<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90seconds/ 60seconds/ 30seconds<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Maintenance Reset</b>	Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	—
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Vehicle Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Audio Settings</b>	<b>Sound</b>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ⇒ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 216	<b>-6 ~ C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +6 (Bass, Treble, Subwoofer and Center), -9 ~ C<sup>*1</sup> ~ +9 (Fader and Balance), Off/Low/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/High (SVC)</b>
	<b>Source Select Popup</b>	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on or not when the <b>AUDIO</b> button is pressed.	<b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>iPod, USB or Pandora® mode</b>		
	<b>Cover Art</b>	Turns on and off the cover art display.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Bluetooth® Audio or Pandora® mode</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device to HFL.	—
	<b>Connect Bluetooth Audio Device</b>		
	<b>Bluetooth® Audio or Pandora® mode</b>	Edits or deletes a <i>Bluetooth®</i> Audio device paired to HFL.	—
	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>		
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Info Settings	Clock/ Wall- paper type	Clock Type	
		Wallpaper	
	Clock Adjustment		
	Clock Format		
	Default	See <b>System Settings</b> on P. 304 to P. 305 Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	<b>Connect Phone</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ⇒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 334	—
	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ⇒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 334	—
	<b>Edit Speed Dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ⇒ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 345	—
	<b>Auto Transfer</b>	Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	<b>On<sup>*/1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Phone</b> <b>Auto Answer</b>	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.	<b>On/Off<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Ring Tone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile Phone<sup>*/1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	<b>On<sup>*/1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	Text/ Message	Enable Text Message	Turns the text message function on and off.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
		New Text Message Alert	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text message.	On/Off <sup>*1</sup>
		Message Auto Reading	<p>Sets the system to automatically read an incoming text message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>On</b>- A text message is always read aloud.</li><li>• <b>Off</b>- A text message is not read aloud.</li><li>• <b>Auto</b>- A text message is read aloud only when driving.</li></ul>	On/Off/Auto <sup>*1</sup>
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No
Camera Settings	Rear Camera	Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Camera Settings</b> group as default.	Yes/No

\*1:Default Setting

**■ List of customizable options**

Models with two displays

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	<b>Display</b>	<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.
		<b>Black Level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.
	<b>Sound/Beep</b>	<b>Volume</b>	Changes the volume of the audio speakers.
		<b>Interface Dial Feedback</b>	Sets if and when the system reads aloud a selection made using the Interface Dial. <b>On/Off/Auto<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Message Auto Reading</b>	Selects whether the system automatically read out message, does not read, or read out only when driving. <b>On/Off/Auto<sup>*1</sup></b>
		<b>Verbal Reminder</b>	Turns the verbal reminders on and off. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Bluetooth Status</b>	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off. <b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Blue-tooth</b>	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a security PIN. ⇒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 366
		<b>Edit Pairing Code</b>	Changes a pairing code. ⇒ <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 368 <b>Random/Fixed<sup>*1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	<b>Voice Recog.</b>	<b>Voice Prompt</b>	Turns the voice prompt on and off.
	<b>Clock</b>	<b>Clock</b>	Changes the clock display type.
		<b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Changes the wallpaper type.</li><li>Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li><li>Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li></ul> <p>⇒ <b>Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 241</p>
		<b>Wallpaper</b>	<b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1</sup>/ Metallic</b>
		<b>Clock Adjustment</b>	Adjusts Clock. ⇒ <b>Clock</b> P. 108
		<b>Clock Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H. <b>12H<sup>*1</sup>/24H</b>
		<b>Clock Reset</b>	Resets the settings of all items in the <b>Clock</b> group.

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
System Settings	<b>Language</b>	Changes the display language.	English <sup>*1</sup> /French/ Spanish
	<b>Voice Command Tips</b>	Alerts you when manual control of the system is disabled to prevent distraction while driving. Only voice commands are available.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off
	<b>Others</b>	<b>Background Color</b>	Changes the background color of the audio/information screen and the audio with touch screen.
		<b>Header Clock Display</b>	Selects whether the clock display comes on or not.
		<b>System Device Information</b>	Displays the system/Device information.
		<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default. → <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 324
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels /Resets all customized items in the <b>System Settings</b> group as default.	Default/OK

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	<b>Driver Assist System Setup*</b>	<b>Forward Collision Warning Distance</b> Changes at which distance FCW alerts, or turns FCW on and off.	<b>Long/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Short/Off</b>
	<b>Blind Spot Info*</b>	Select the alerts to be used when a vehicle is detected in your blind spot, or turn the system on and off.	<b>Audible And Visual Alert*<sup>1</sup>/Visual Alert/Off</b>
	<b>Language Selection*</b>	Changes the displayed language on the multi-information display*.	<b>English*<sup>1</sup>/French/Spanish</b>
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-5°F ~ ±0°F*<sup>1</sup> ~ +5°F (U.S.) -3°C ~ ±0°C*<sup>1</sup> ~ +3°C (Canada)</b>
	<b>Meter Setup</b>	<b>"Trip A" Reset Timing</b> Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A*, and elapsed time A*.	<b>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<b>"Trip B" Reset Timing</b> Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B*, and elapsed time B*.	<b>When Refueled/IGN Off/Manually Reset*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<b>Keyless Start Guidance Screens</b> Displays the push button start guidance when conditions are met to change power mode.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	<b>Driving Position Setup*</b>	<b>Memory Position Link</b>	Changes the driver's seat position to a stored setting.
		<b>Door Unlock Mode</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.
	<b>Keyless Access Setup</b>	<b>Keyless Access Light Flash</b>	Causes some exterior lights to blink when you unlock/lock the doors.
		<b>Keyless Access Beep</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.
		<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.
	<b>Lighting Setup</b>	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.
		<b>Auto Light Sensitivity</b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	<b>Auto Door Lock</b>	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	<b>With Vehicle Speed<sup>*1</sup>/Shift from P/Off</b>
	<b>Auto Door Unlock</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	<b>Driver Door with Shift to P<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors with Shift to P/Driver Door with IGN Off/All Doors with IGN Off/Off</b>
	<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode</b>	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	<b>Driver Door<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Power Slide Door Keyless Open Mode</b>	Changes the keyless setting for when the power sliding door opens.	<b>Anytime<sup>*1</sup>/When Unlocked</b>
	<b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>90seconds/ 60seconds/ 30seconds<sup>*1</sup></b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Settings	<b>Power Tailgate Setup*</b>	<b>Power Tailgate Keyless Open Mode</b> Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	<b>Anytime<sup>*1</sup>/When Unlocked</b>
	<b>Power Tailgate Open by Outer Handle</b>	Selects whether to enable the power tailgate open operation using the tailgate outer handle.	<b>Off (Manual Only)/On (Power/Manual)<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Mainte-nance Info.</b>	<b>Maintenance Reset</b> Resets the engine oil life display when you have performed the maintenance service.	—
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Vehicle Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Default/OK</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera Settings	<b>Show with Turn Signal</b>	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Reference Lines</b>	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Brightness</b>		
	<b>Contrast</b>		
	<b>Display</b>	Adjusts the LaneWatch display settings.	—
	<b>Black Level</b>		
	<b>Color</b>		
Rear Camera	<b>Tint</b>		
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>LaneWatch</b> group as default.	<b>Default/OK</b>
	<b>Fixed Guideline</b>	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Display</b>	Adjusts the brightness setting on the rear camera display.	—
Front Camera	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Front Camera</b> group as default.	<b>Default/OK</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Continued 319



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Audio Settings	<b>Sound</b>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speaker's sound. ⇒ <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 243	-6 ~ C <sup>*1</sup> ~ +6 (Bass, Treble, Subwoofer and Center), -9 ~ C <sup>*1</sup> ~ +9 (Fader and Balance), Off/Low/Mid <sup>*1</sup> /High (SVC)
	<b>Source Select Popup</b>	<b>Models with rear entertainment system</b> Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the <b>FRONT AUDIO</b> button is pressed. <b>Models without rear entertainment system</b> Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the <b>AUDIO</b> button is pressed.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
	<b>CD (MP3/WMA/AAC), iPod, USB, Pandora<sup>®</sup> or Aha<sup>™</sup> mode</b>	Turns on and off the cover art display.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Cover Art</b>		
	<b>Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Audio, Pandora<sup>®</sup> or Aha<sup>™</sup> mode</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth<sup>®</sup></i> Audio device to HFL.	—
	<b>Connect Bluetooth Audio Device</b>		
	<b>Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> Audio, Pandora<sup>®</sup> or Aha<sup>™</sup> mode</b>	Edits or deletes a <i>Bluetooth<sup>®</sup></i> Audio device paired to HFL.	—
	<b>Bluetooth Device List</b>		
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Default/OK</b>

\*1:Default Setting



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Ent Settings <sup>*2</sup>	<b>Source Select Popup</b>	Selects whether the list of selectable audio sources comes on when the <b>REAR AUDIO</b> button is pressed.	<b>On/Off</b> <sup>*1</sup>
	<b>Rear Control</b>	Activates/Deactivates the rear control panel.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Rear Speaker</b>	Turns on and off the rear speakers.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear Ent Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Default/OK</b>
Phone Settings	<b>Phone</b>	<b>Connect phone</b> Pairs a new phone to HFL, connects or disconnects a paired phone. ☞ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 366	—
		<b>Bluetooth Device List</b> Pairs a new phone to HFL, edits or deletes a paired phone, or creates a security PIN. ☞ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 366	—
		<b>Edit Speed Dial</b> Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ☞ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 366	—

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Models with rear entertainment system



Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone Settings	<b>Auto Transfer</b>	Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
	<b>Auto Answer</b>	Sets whether to automatically answer an incoming call after about four seconds.	<b>On/Off*1</b>
	<b>Ring Tone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile Phone*1/Off</b>
	<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets a phonebook data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
	<b>Use Contact Photo</b>	Displays a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
	<b>Enable Text/Email</b>	Turns the text message/E-mail function on and off.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
	<b>Select Account</b>	Selects a mail or text message account.	—
	<b>New Text/Email Alert</b>	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFL receives a new text message/E-mail.	<b>On/Off*1</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Default/OK</b>

\*1:Default Setting



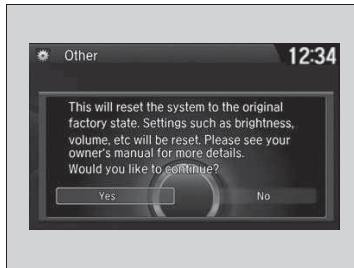
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	<b>Clock/</b> <b>Wallpaper</b>	<b>Clock</b> <b>Wallpaper</b>	
	<b>Clock</b>	<b>Clock Adjustment</b> <b>Clock Format</b>	See <b>System Settings</b> on P. 312 to P. 314.
<b>Info Settings</b>		<b>Clock Reset</b>	
	<b>Others</b>	<b>Info Screen Preference</b>	Selects either of the following to be displayed when you press the <b>INFO</b> button. • <b>Info Top</b> : Some of the available menu items pop up. • <b>Info Menu</b> : All available menu items pop up. • <b>Off</b> : The menu item you selected last time is displayed.
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info Settings</b> group as default.	<b>Info Top/Info Menu*1/Off</b> <b>Default/OK</b>

\*1:Default Setting



## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .

### Models with one display

3. Repeat the procedure to select **Other**, then **Factory Data Reset**.

### Models with two displays

3. Move or to select **Others**.  
Rotate to select **Factory Data Reset**, then press .

#### All models

- ▶ The confirmation message will appear.
- 3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to reset the settings.
- 4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press again to reset the settings.  
▶ The confirmation message will appear.  
Press to select **OK**.

### ▶Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

The following settings will be reset:

- Audio preset settings
- Phonebook entries
- Other display and each item settings.



# HomeLink® Universal Transceiver\*

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

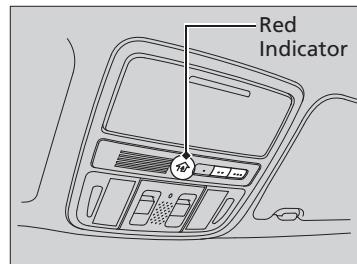
## Important Safety Precautions

Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have the safety information, contact the manufacturer.

Before programming HomeLink, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the garage or gate to prevent potential injury or damage.

When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage door's path.

## Training HomeLink



If you have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes. To do this:

- Press and hold the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds, until the red indicator blinks. Release the buttons, and proceed to step 1.
- If you are training the second or third button, go directly to step 1.

### HomeLink® Universal Transceiver\*

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls., Inc.

Before programming HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features. If it does not, HomeLink may not be able to operate it.



## Training a Button

1. Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1 to 3 inches (3 - 8 cm) from the HomeLink button you want to program.

2. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the button on the remote transmitter.  
Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) blink after 10 secs?

**YES**  
3. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for about a sec.  
Does the device (garage door opener) work?

**NO**  
a. Press and hold the remote and the HomeLink button at the same time. Then, while continuing to hold the HomeLink button, press and release the button on the remote every 2 secs.  
Does the LED blink within 20 secs?

**Training Complete**

5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.  
The remote-controlled device should operate.

**Training Complete**

**4. Press and hold the HomeLink button again.**

HomeLink LED is on.

HomeLink indicator blinks for 2 secs, then remains on.

**a.** The remote has a rolling code. Press the "learn" button on the remote-controlled device (e.g. garage door opener).

**b.** Within 30 secs, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 secs.

## Training a Button

### Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure.

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink.

**Standard transmitter**  
Indicator remains on for about 25 secs.

**Rolling code transmitter**  
Indicator blinks rapidly for two secs, then remains on for about 23 secs.

2. Continue to hold the HomeLink button and follow steps 1 - 3 under "Training a Button."

### Erasing Codes

To erase all the codes, press and hold the two outside buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to blink (about 10 to 20 secs). You should erase all codes before selling the vehicle.

If you have any problems, see the device's instructions, visit [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com), or call HomeLink at (800) 355-3515.



## Models with navigation system

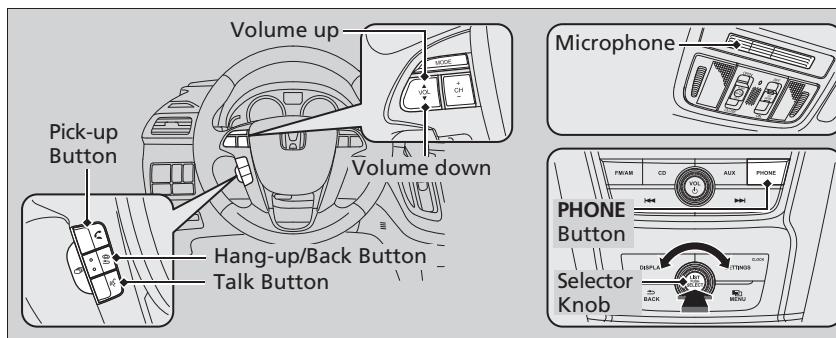
See the Navigation System Manual for how to operate the Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®.

## Models with one display

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

# Using HFL

## HFL Buttons



**(Pick-up) button:** Press to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

**(Talk) button:** Press to call a number with a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number.

**PHONE button:** Press to go directly to the Phone screen.

**Selector knob:** Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

## »Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To use HFL, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888- 528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888- 528 -7876.

To use HFL, the **Bluetooth On/Off** setting must be **On**.

### **Customized Features** P. 295

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

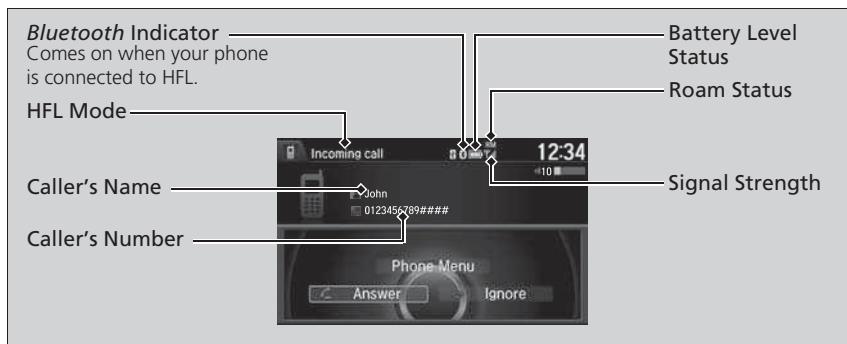
State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.



## HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## Limitations for Manual Operation



Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 345

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language to English, French, or Spanish.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 295



## HFL Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use HFL.

### ■ Phone Settings screen

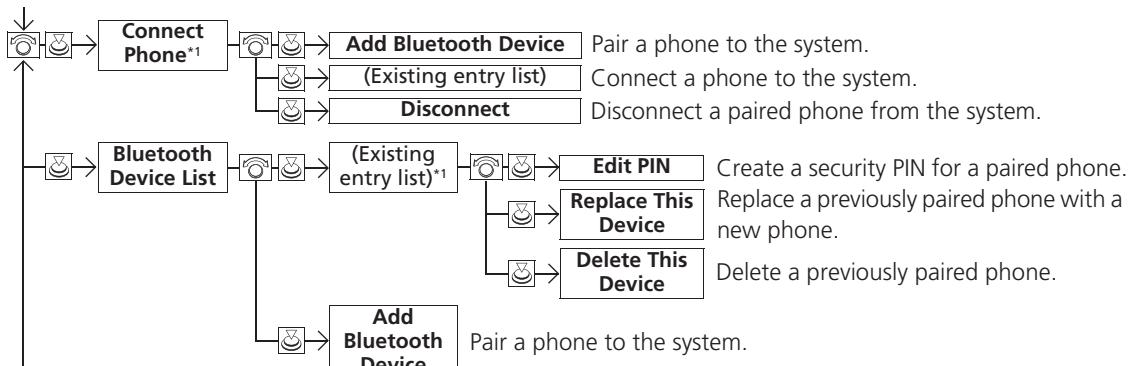


1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .

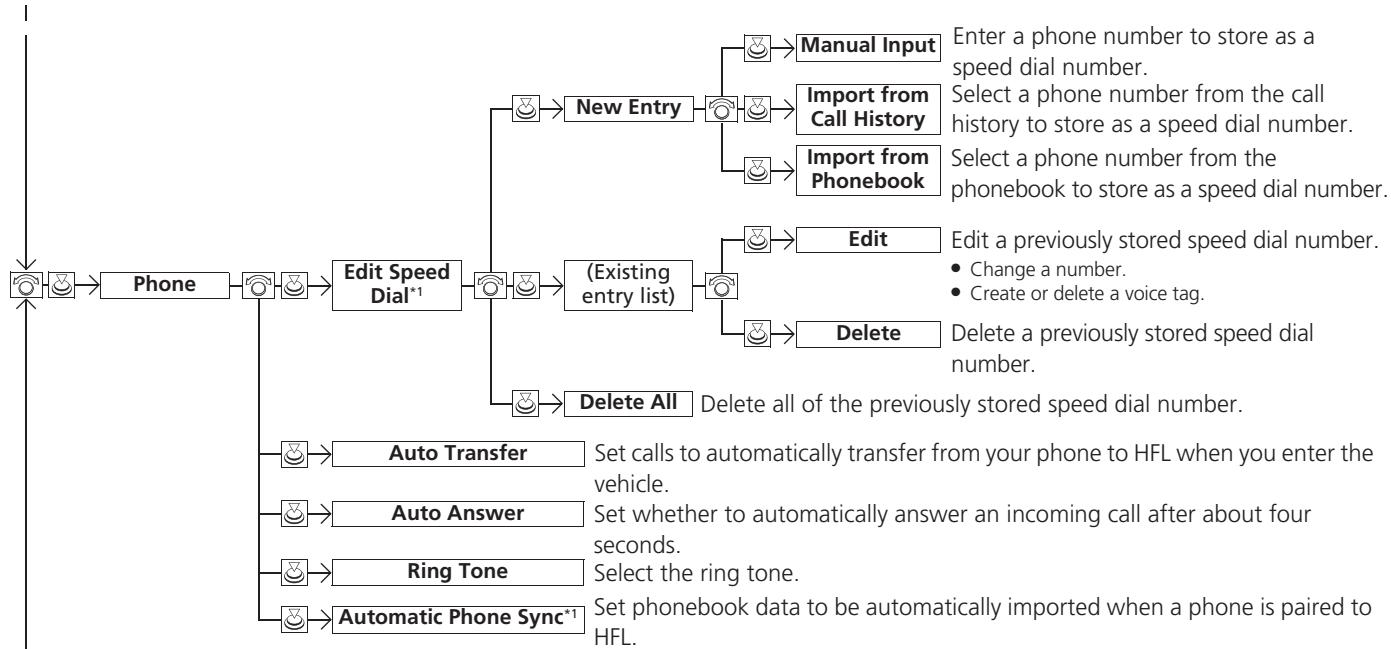
### »HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

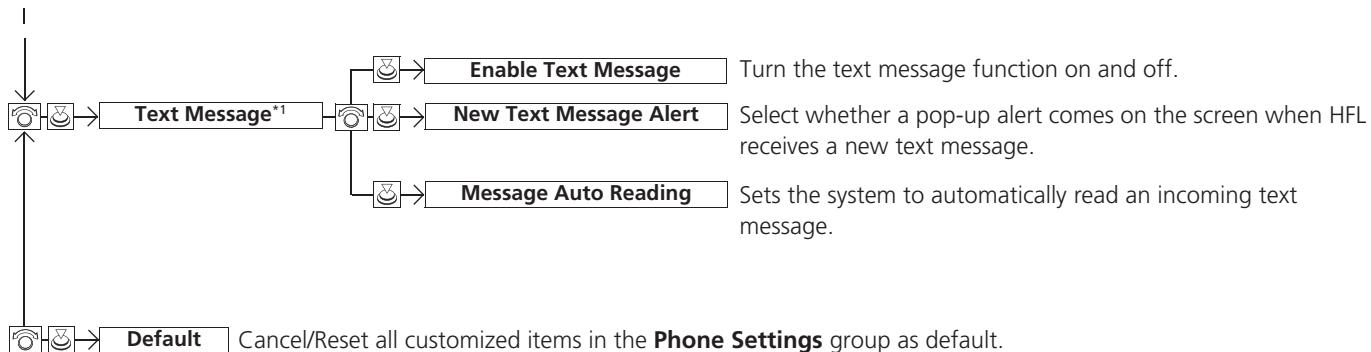
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



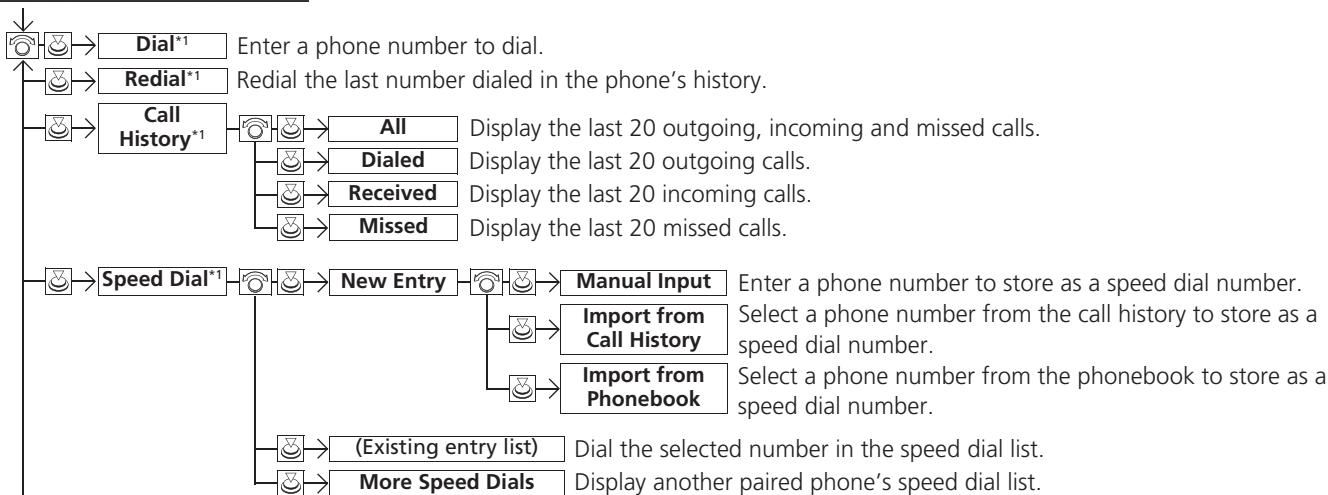
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



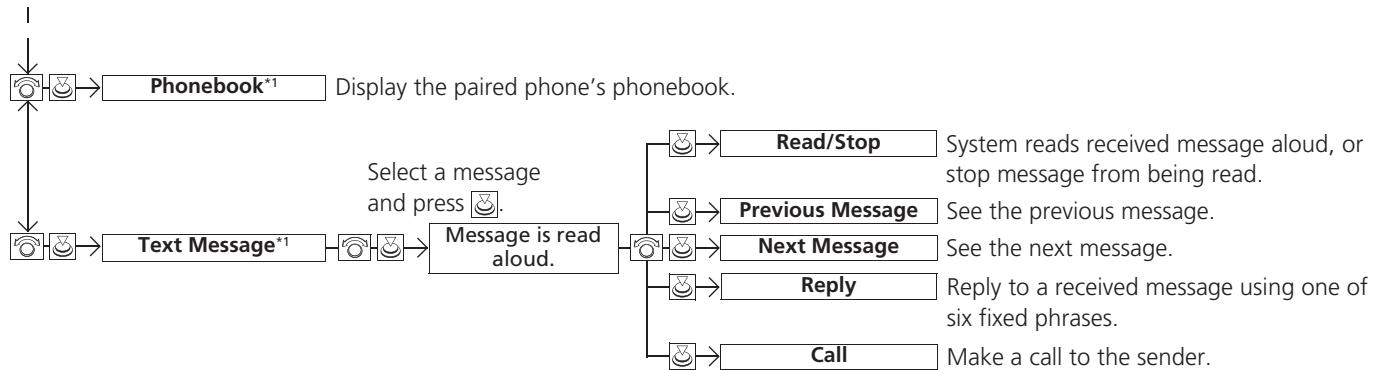
## ■ Phone screen



1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to display the menu items.



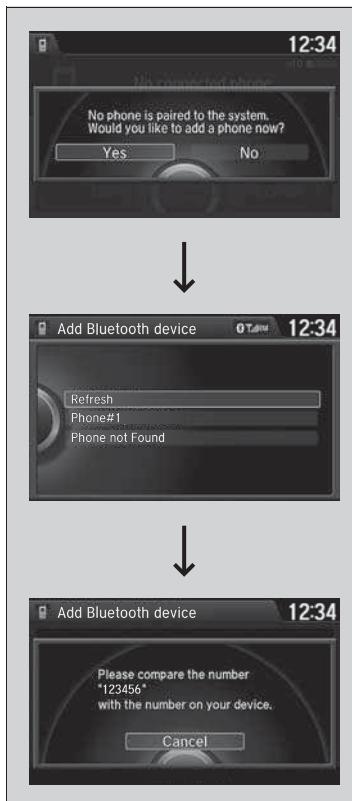
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFL automatically searches for a **Bluetooth** device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for **Bluetooth** devices using your phone.
  - From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.  
This may vary by phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

### ▶ Phone Setup

Your **Bluetooth**-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

#### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

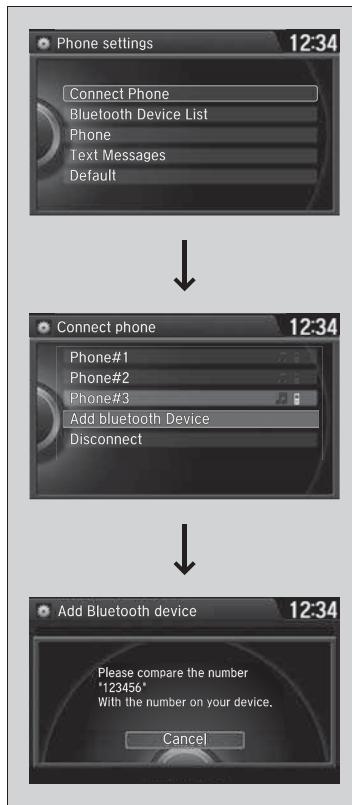
Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone can be used with HFL.
- : The phone is compatible with **Bluetooth**® Audio.

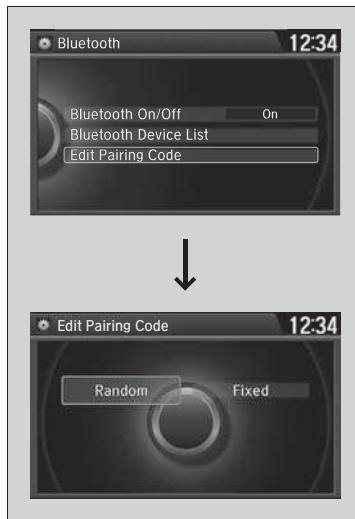
When pairing is completed, an **Automatic Phone Sync** prompt appears. Select **On** if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL.

### ▶ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting P. 344



### ■ To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Connect Phone**, then **Add Bluetooth Device**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
5. HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
7. If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
8. If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
9. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
10. Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
11. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth**, then **Edit Pairing Code**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Random**, then press .

### >To change the pairing code setting

The pairing code may be six or four digits depending on your phone.

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.

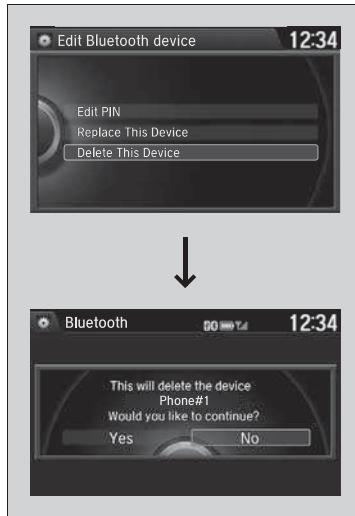


## ■ To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate to select a paired phone you want to replace, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Replace This Device**, then press .
5. HFL enters the pairing process and searches a new phone.  
► Follow the prompts to pair a new phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

### » To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

The replaced phone will keep the same speed dial entries, call history, and security PIN information from the previously paired phone.



### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete This Device**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if it is successful.



## To Set Up a Text Message Options



### ■ To turn on or off the text message function

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Text Message**, then **Enable Text Message**.
- A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .



### ■ To turn on or off the text message notice

1. On the **Text Message** screen, rotate to select **New Text Message Alert**, then press .
2. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

>To turn on or off the text message notice

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.

**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.



### ■ To set up the auto reading option

1. On the **Text Message** screen, rotate to select **Message Auto Reading**, then press .
2. A pop-up menu appears on the screen.  
2. Rotate to select **On**, **Off** or **Auto** then press .

To set up the auto reading option

**On:** A text message is always read aloud.

**Off:** A text message is not read aloud.

**Auto:** A text message is read aloud only when driving.



## To Create a Security PIN

You can protect each of the six cell phones with a security PIN.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to add a security PIN to, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Edit PIN**, then press .
5. Enter a new four-digit number.
  - Rotate to select, then press .
  - Press to delete. Press **OK** to enter the security PIN.
6. Re-enter the four-digit number.
  - The screen returns to the screen in step 4.

### To Create a Security PIN

If the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.



## ■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Auto Transfer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .

## ■ Auto Answer

You can set HFL to automatically answer an incoming call in four seconds.

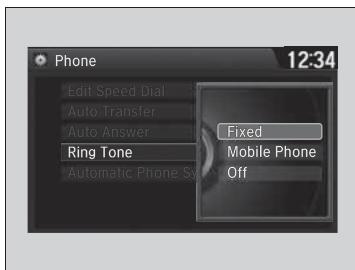


1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Auto Answer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .



## Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Ring Tone**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed**, **Mobile Phone** or **Off**, then press .

### »Ring Tone

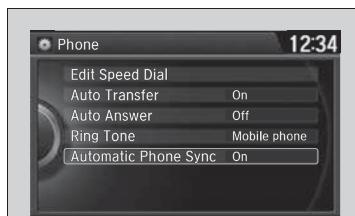
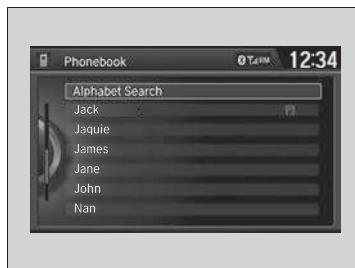
**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.

**Mobile Phone:** The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone sounds from the speaker.

**Off:** No ring tones sound from the speaker.



## Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



### When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

### Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Automatic Phone Sync**.
4. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

### Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.



## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

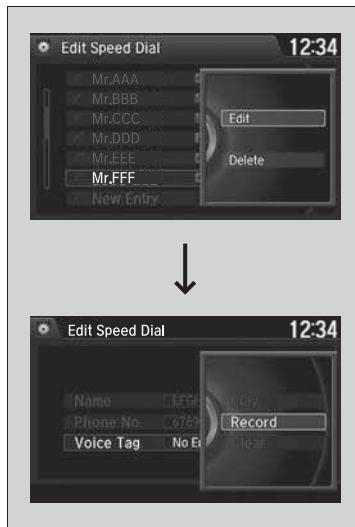


To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Repeat the procedure to select **New Entry**.
- From **Import from Call History**:
  - Select a number from the call history.From **Manual Input**:
  - Input the number manually.From **Import from Phonebook**:
  - Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.
5. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

### »Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say "Call" and the voice tag name.



## ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Edit Speed Dial**.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .
6. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Record**, then press .
7. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### ▶ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.

Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.

It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
- From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .
- From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Clear**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Phone**, then **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
- From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
4. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



## Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the button and say "Call" and the phonebook name, phone number, or stored voice tag.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a name, then press
  - ▶ You can also search by letter. Rotate to select **Alphabet Search**, then press .
5. Rotate to select a number, then press
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### » To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number using voice commands.

▶ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 328

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 345



### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
5. Rotate to select , then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

► **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 328

► **Speed Dial** P. 345



## ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, or **Missed**, then press .
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.

### » To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

(Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)



### ■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.

### ► To make a call using a speed dial entry

Select **More Speed Dials** to view another paired phone's speed dial list. You can make a call from that list using the currently connected phone.

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.

► **Speed Dial** P. 345

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the button and follow the prompts.

To call stored speed dial entries 1-6, press the corresponding preset buttons from the **Phone** screen.



## Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

### » Receiving a Call

#### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.



## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



Press the **MENU** button to display the options.

Rotate to select the mute option, then press .

► The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## ► Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.



## Receiving a Text Message

HFL can display newly received text messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message.
2. Rotate to select **Read** to listen to the message, then press .
- The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, press .

### ►Receiving a Text Message

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message feature. Only use the text message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text message for the first time after the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Text Message Alert** setting to **On**.

**To turn on or off the text message notice**  
P. 340





## ■ Displaying Text Messages



1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Text Message**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a message, then press .

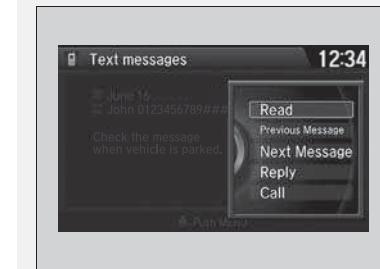
► The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

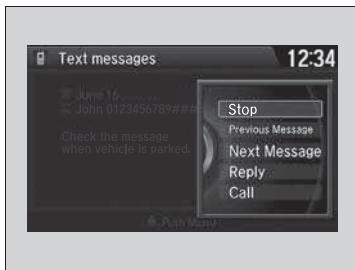
### ►Displaying Text Messages

The icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, press on the text message screen. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Previous Message** or **Next Message**, then press .





## ■ Using the Stop or Read option

1. Go to the text message screen.
  - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Stop** or **Read**, then press .

### **Displaying Text Messages** P. 356

## »Using the Stop or Read option

This option changes to:

- **Stop** while the text message is read out. Select this option to discontinue the message read out.
- **Read** when the system has finished reading out the text message, or after you selected **Stop**. Select this option to hear the system read out the selected message.



## ■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text message screen.
  - ▶ The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Reply**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the reply message, then press .
5. Select **Send** to send the message.
  - ▶ **Complete** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

## ▶Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.



## ■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
  - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
2. Press to have the pop-up menu appear on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **Call**, then press .

### **Displaying Text Messages** P. 356



## Models with navigation system

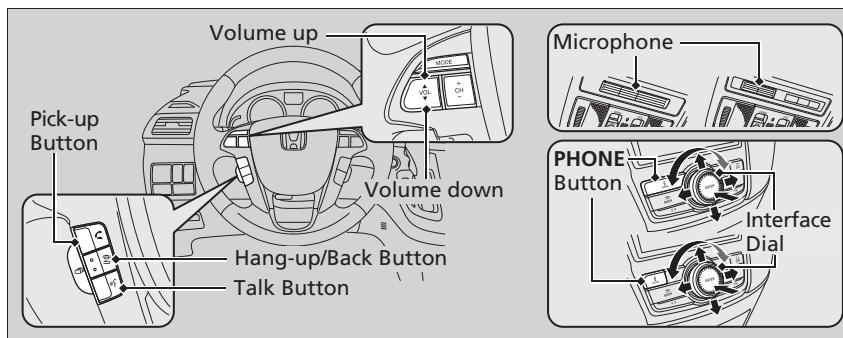
See the Navigation System Manual for how to operate the Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®.

## Non-navi models with two displays

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your cell phone.

## Using HFL

### HFL Buttons



**(Pick-up) button:** Press to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

**(Talk) button:** Press to give HFL voice commands.

**PHONE button:** Press to go directly to the Phone screen.

**Interface dial:** Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press . Move , , , or to select secondary menu.

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

For a list of compatible phones:

- U.S.: Visit [www.handsfreelink.honda.com](http://www.handsfreelink.honda.com), or call 1-888-528-7876.
- Canada: Visit [www.handsfreelink.ca](http://www.handsfreelink.ca), or call 1-888-528-7876.

To use HFL, the **Bluetooth Status** setting must be **On**.

### Customized Features P. 295

Voice control tips:

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press and release the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag, a phonebook name, or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, use the audio system's volume knob or the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

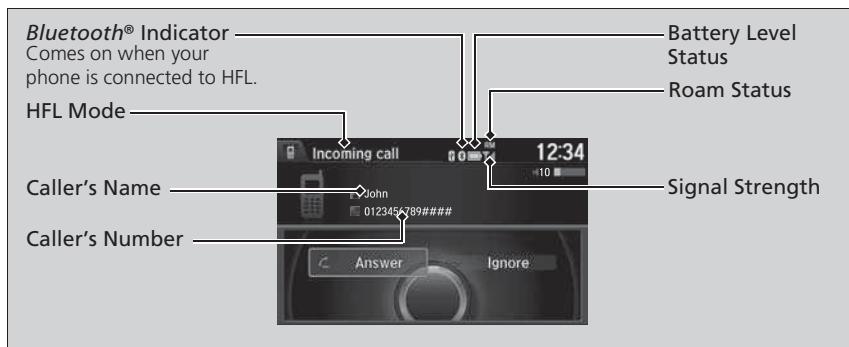
State or local laws may prohibit the operation of handheld electronic devices while operating a vehicle.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.



## HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## Limitations for Manual Operation



Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

⇒ **Speed Dial** P. 377

## Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFL Limitations

An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## HFL Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language to English, French, or Spanish.

⇒ **Customized Features** P. 295



## HFL Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use HFL.

### ■ Phone Settings screen

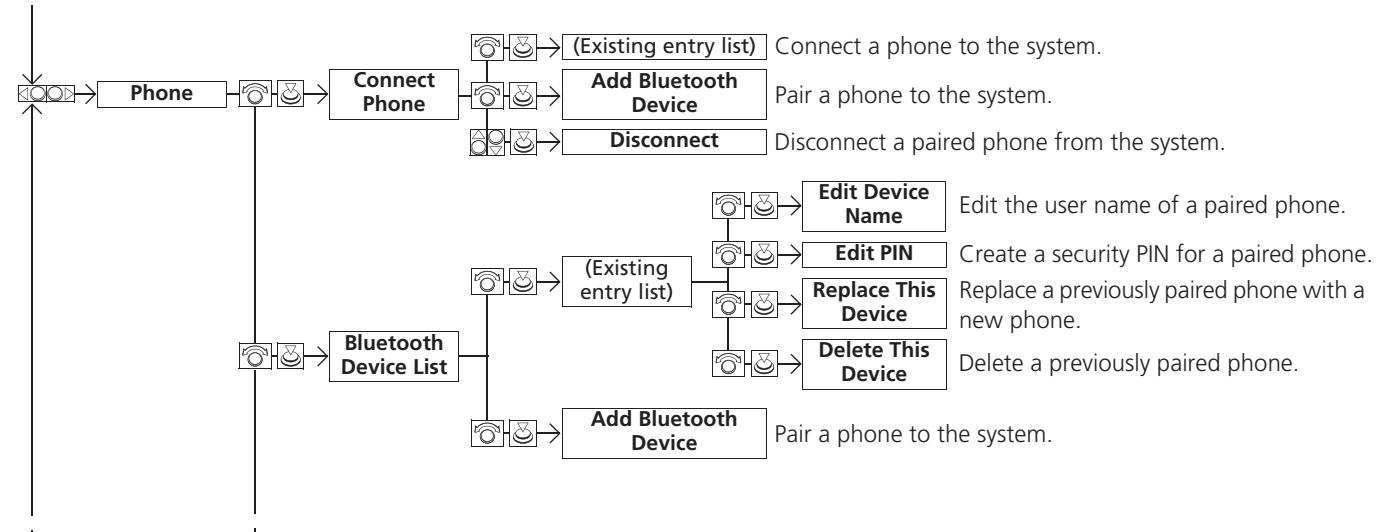


1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .

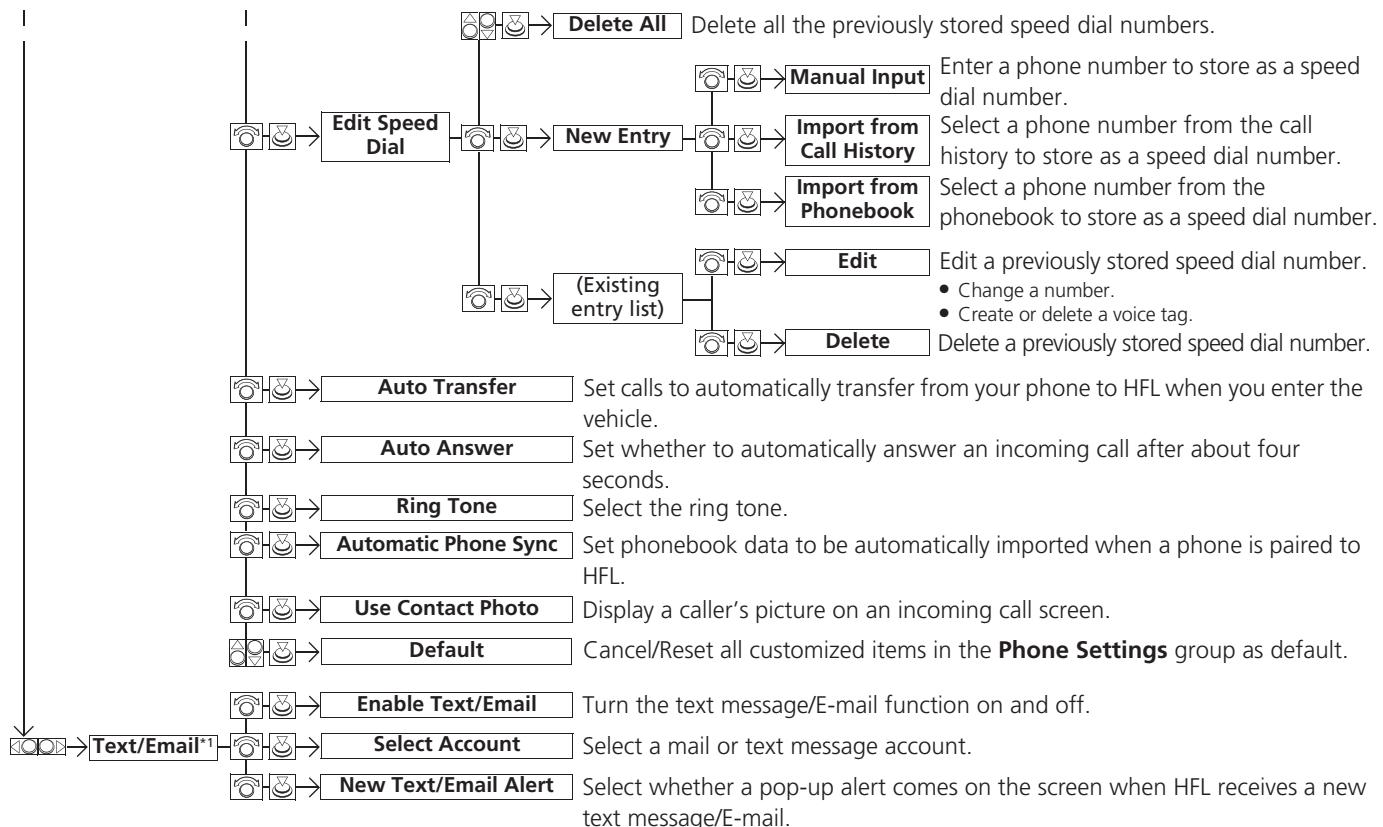
### ▶ HFL Menus

To use HFL, you must first pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is canceled.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.

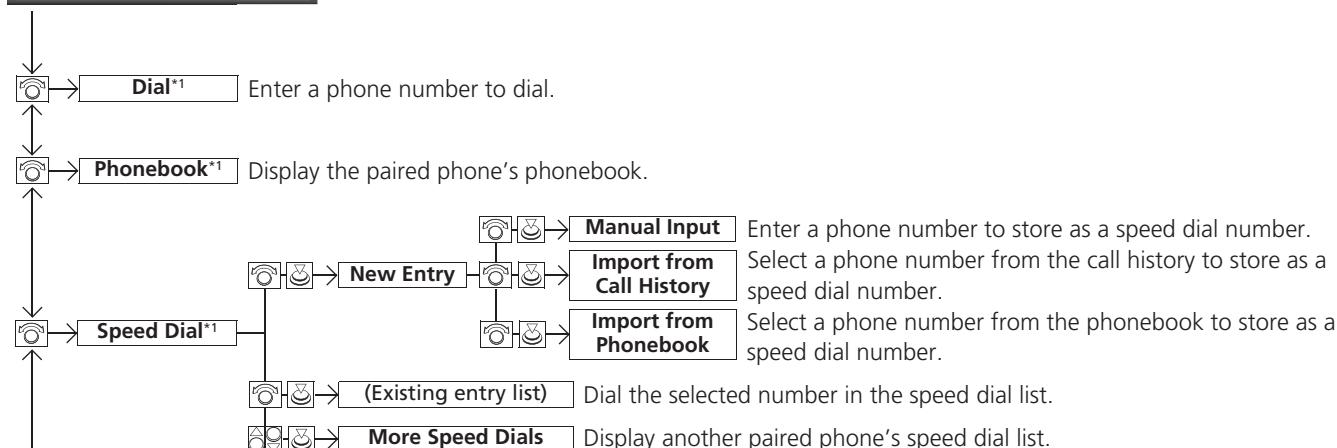


## ■ Phone screen

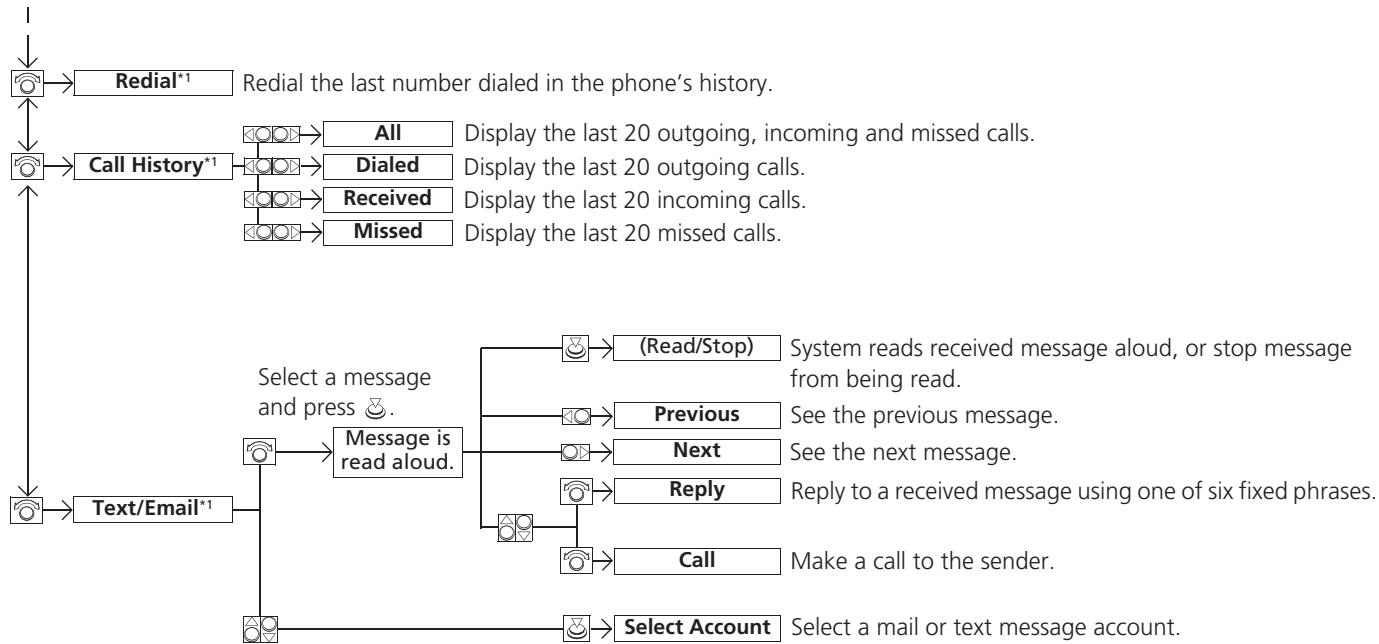


1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button to display the menu items.

### Features



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.



## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a cell phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth* device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, move to select **Phone not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
5. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.  
This may vary by phone.
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

### ▶ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

#### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is connected to HFL.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and returns to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFL.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When pairing is completed, an **Automatic Phone Sync** prompt appears. Select **On** if you want your call history and phonebook automatically imported to HFL.

### ▶ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting P. 376



■ **To pair a cell phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
5. If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
6. If your phone still does not appear, move to select **Phone not Found?** and search for *Bluetooth* devices using your phone. From your phone, select **HandsFreeLink**.
7. HFL gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
8. Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.  
This may vary by phone.
9. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Pairing Code**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed** or **Random**, then press .

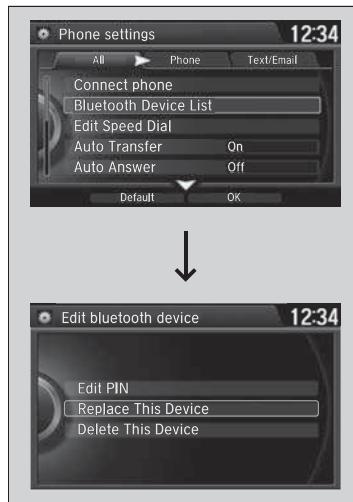
### ► To change the pairing code setting

The pairing code may be six or four digits depending on your phone.

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



## ■ To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
4. Rotate to select a paired phone you want to replace, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Replace This Device**, then press .
6. HFL enters the pairing process and searches a new phone.
  - Follow the prompts to pair a new phone.
7. You will receive a notification on the screen if pairing is successful.

### » To replace an already-paired phone with a new phone

The replaced phone will keep the same speed dial entries, and security PIN information from the previously paired phone.



### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete This Device**, then press .
5. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. You will receive a notification on the screen if it is successful.



## To Set Up a Text Message/E-mail Options



### ■ To turn on or off the text/E-mail function

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Enable Text/Email**.
- A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .



### ■ To turn on or off the text/E-mail notice

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **New Text/Email Alert**.
- A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

### ► To turn on or off the text/E-mail notice

**On:** A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new text message.

**Off:** The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.



### ■ To set up the auto reading option

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **System Settings**, then press .

► Repeat the procedure to select **Message Auto Reading**.

► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.

3. Rotate to select **On**, **Off** or **Auto**, then press .

#### >To set up the auto reading option

**On**: A text message/Email is always read aloud.

**Off**: A text message/Email is not read aloud.

**Auto**: A text message/Email is read aloud only when driving.



## To Create a Security PIN

You can protect each of the six cell phones with a security PIN.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Bluetooth Device List**.
3. Rotate to select a phone you want to add a security PIN to, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Edit PIN**, then press .
5. Enter a new four-digit number.
  - Rotate to select, then press .
  - Move to delete. Rotate to select **OK** to enter the security PIN.
6. Re-enter the four-digit number.
  - The screen returns to the screen in step 4.

## To Create a Security PIN

If the phone is already security PIN protected, you need to enter the current security PIN before clearing the PIN or creating a new one.



## ■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Transfer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .

## ■ Auto Answer

You can set HFL to automatically answer an incoming call in four seconds.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Auto Answer**.
3. Rotate to select **On**, then press .



## Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Ring Tone**.
3. Rotate to select **Fixed**, **Mobile Phone** or **Off**, then press .

## Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speaker.

**Mobile Phone:** The ring tone stored in the connected cell phone sounds from the speaker.

**Off:** No ring tones sound from the speaker.

## Use Contact Photo

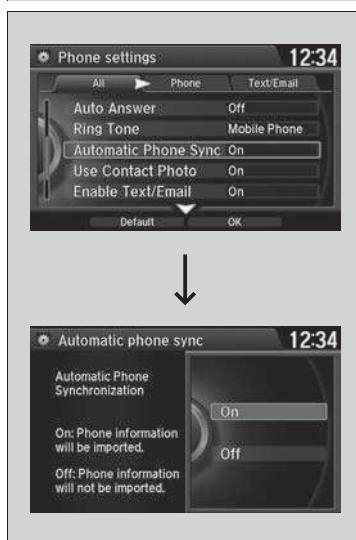
You can display a caller's picture on an incoming call screen.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Use Contact Photo**.
3. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .



## ■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFL.

### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
4. Rotate to select **On** or **Off**, then press .

### ■ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFL.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.



## Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Repeat the procedure to select **New Entry**.
- From **Import from Call History**:
  - Select a number from the call history.
- From **Manual Input**:
  - Input the number manually.
- From **Import from Phonebook**:
  - Select a number from the linked cell phone's imported phonebook.
5. When the speed dial is successfully stored from **Import from Call History** or **Import from Phonebook**, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Rotate to select **Yes** or **No**, then press .
6. Using the button, follow the prompts to store a voice tag for the speed dial entry.

### » Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag. Say "Call" and the voice tag name.



## ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .
6. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Record**, then press .
7. Using the button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.

Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.

It is easier for HFL to recognize a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Edit**, then press .
6. Rotate to select **Voice Tag**, then press .
7. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Clear**, then press .
8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .



### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
3. Repeat the procedure to select **Edit Speed Dial**.
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. From the pop-up menu, rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
6. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

*Continued*



## Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name, or number can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the button and say "Call" and the phonebook name, phone number, or stored voice tag.

The maximum range between your phone and vehicles is 30 feet (10 meters).

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



## ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
4. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Move to **Search**.
  - You can use the keyboard on the touch screen for an alphabetical search.
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- Dialing starts automatically.

### » To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 361
- **Speed Dial** P. 377



### ■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
5. Rotate to select , then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.



### ■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.

### ■ To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving. However, you can call a stored voice-tagged speed dial number, phonebook name, or number using voice commands.

- **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 361
- **Speed Dial** P. 377



## ■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Call History**, then press .
4. Move or to select **All**, **Dialed**, **Received**, and **Missed**.
5. Rotate to select a number, then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.



## ■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Speed Dial**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .

► Dialing starts automatically.

### » To make a call using the call history

The call history displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

(Appears only when a phone is connected to HFL.)

These icons next to the number indicate the following:

- : Dialed calls.
- : Received calls.
- : Missed calls.

### » To make a call using a speed dial entry

Move to select **More Speed Dials** to view another paired phone's speed dial list. You can make a call from that list using the currently connected phone.

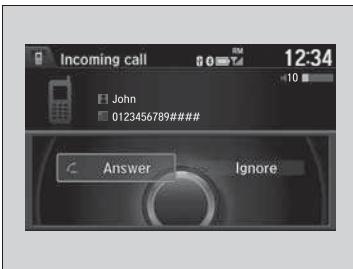
When a voice tag is stored, press the button to call the number using the voice tag.

→ **Speed Dial** P. 377

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry, phonebook name or number can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the button and follow the prompts.



## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

## ■ Receiving a Call

### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.



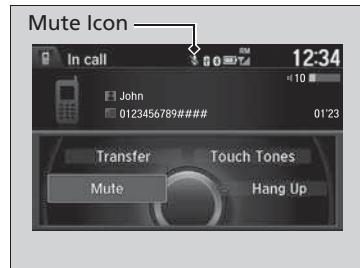
## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from HFL to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the Phone screen.  
Rotate to select the mute option, then press .

► The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## » Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.



## ■ Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

HFL can display newly received text messages and E-mails as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked cell phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



1. A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message or E-mail.
2. Rotate to select **Read** to listen to the message, then press .
- The text message or E-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
3. To discontinue the message read-out, press .

### ► Receiving a Text Message/E-mail

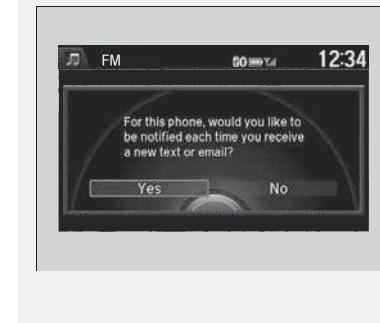
The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text messages and E-mails.

State or local laws may limit your use of the HFL text message/E-mail feature. Only use the text message/E-mail feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text message or E-mail for the first time since the phone is paired to HFL, you are asked to turn the **New Text/Email Alert** setting to **On**.

► **To turn on or off the text/E-mail notice**  
P. 371





## Selecting a Mail Account

If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



1. Press the **SETTINGS** button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone Settings**, then press .
- Repeat the procedure to select **Select Account**.
3. Rotate to select **Text Messages** or an E-mail account you want, then press .

### >Selecting a Mail Account

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.

Move to select **Select Account**, then press .



You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.



## Displaying Messages



### ■ Displaying text messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Text/Email**, then press .
4. ▶ Select account if necessary.
5. ▶ Rotate to select a message, then press .
6. ▶ The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

### ▶Displaying Messages

The icon appears next to an unread message.

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, move or on the text message screen.



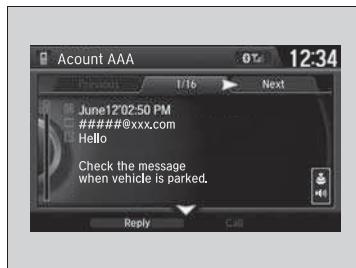
## ■ Displaying E-mails

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Press the **MENU** button.
3. Rotate to select **Text/Email**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a folder, then press .
5. Rotate to select a message, then press .

► The E-mail is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

## ►►Displaying E-mails

Received text messages and E-mails may appear in the message list screen at the same time. In this case, text messages are titled **No subject**.



## ■ Read or stop reading a message

1. Go to the text message or E-mail screen.  
► The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.  
☞ **Displaying Messages** P. 388
2. Press ☰ to stop reading.  
Press ☰ again to start reading the message from the beginning.

## ■ Reply to a message

1. Go to the text message or E-mail screen.  
► The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.  
☞ **Displaying Messages** P. 388
2. Move ☰ and rotate ☰ to select **Reply**, then press ☰.
3. Rotate ☰ to select the reply message, then press ☰.  
► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
4. Select **Send** to send the message.  
► **Message sent** appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

### ☞ Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- **Talk to you later, I'm driving.**
- **I'm on my way.**
- **I'm running late.**
- **OK**
- **Yes**
- **No**

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.



## ■ Making a call to a sender

1. Go to the text message screen.
  - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.
2. Move and rotate to select **Call**, then press .

### **Displaying text messages** P. 388



When you set the power mode to ON, the compass self-calibrates, and the compass display appears.

## Compass Calibration

If the compass indicates the wrong direction, or the **CAL** indicator blinks, you need to manually calibrate the system.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. On the top screen of any audio source, press and hold for five seconds.
  - ▶ The display switches to the **Compass Settings** screen.
3. Rotate to select **Calibration**, then press .
4. When the display changes to **Calibration Start**, press .
5. Drive the vehicle slowly in two circles.
  - ▶ The compass starts to show a direction after the calibration. The **CAL** indicator goes off.

### Compass\*

Compass operation can be affected under the following conditions:

- Driving near power lines or stations
- Crossing a bridge
- Passing a large vehicle, or driving near a large object that can cause a magnetic disturbance
- When accessories such as antennas and roof racks are mounted by magnets

### Compass Calibration

Calibrate the compass in an open area.

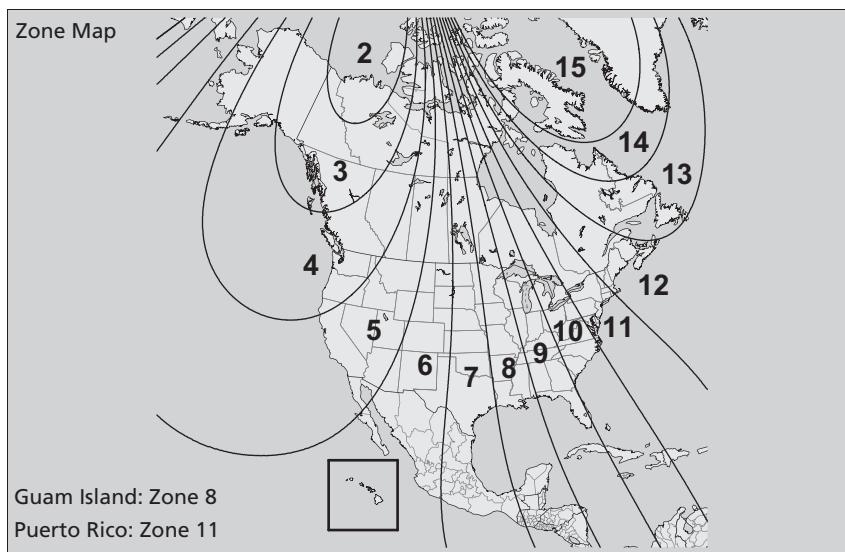
While setting the compass, press the **BACK** button to cancel the setting mode and return to the previous screen.



## Compass Zone Selection



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. On the top screen of any audio source, press and hold  for five seconds.
  - The display switches to the **Compass Settings** screen.
3. Rotate  to select **Zone Adjust**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the zone number of your area (See Zone Map), then press .



### »» Compass Zone Selection

The zone selection is done to compensate the variation between magnetic north and true north.

If the calibration starts while the audio system is in use, the display returns to normal after the calibration is completed.





# Driving

This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

## Before Driving

Driving Preparation .....	396
Maximum Load Limit.....	399

## Towing a Trailer

Towing Preparation.....	401
Driving Safely with a Trailer.....	405
Towing Your Vehicle.....	406

## When Driving

Starting the Engine .....	407, 409
Precautions While Driving.....	411
Automatic Transmission .....	412
Shifting .....	413

## Cruise Control .....

415  
Forward Collision Warning (FCW)\* .. 418

## Lane Departure Warning (LDW)\* ..

422  
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic

## Stability Control (ESC), System .....

426  
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)... 428

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) -

Required Federal Explanation .....

429  
Blind Spot Information (BSI) System\* .... 432

## LaneWatch™\* .....

434

## Braking

Brake System..... 436

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .. 438

Brake Assist System .. 439

## Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped .....

440  
Parking Sensor System\* .. 441

## Rearview Camera .....

## Refueling

Fuel Information .....

446  
How to Refuel .....

## Fuel Economy .....

449  
Accessories and Modifications .....

\* Not available on all models



## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressure, and check for damage and excessive wear.
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the hood, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal.

Also check under the hood for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.



## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.  
**⇒ Maximum Load Limit** P. 399
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close and lock all doors and the tailgate.
  - ⇒ **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 118
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - ⇒ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 161
    - ⇒ **Adjusting the Head Restraints** P. 164
  - ▶ Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
    - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
      - ⇒ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 158
      - ⇒ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 157

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.



- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - ☒ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 33
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.

☒ **Indicators** P. 70

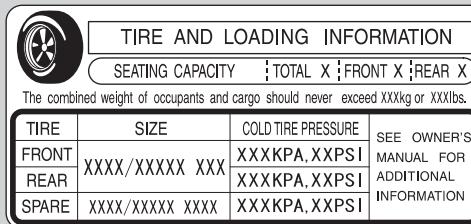




## Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 1,340 lbs (608 kg).  
See Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.  
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

- (1)** Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
- (2)** Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3)** Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
- (4)** The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.  
$$(1,400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})$$

►► Maximum Load Limit

### ⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):

The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.

☞ **Specifications** P. 542

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):

The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.

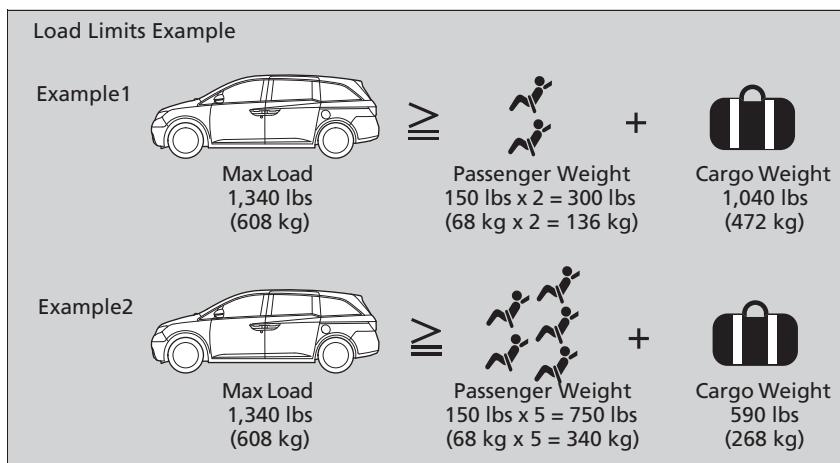
☞ **Specifications** P. 542



**(5)** Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

**(6)** If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

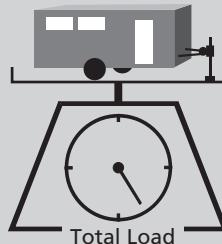




## Towing Preparation

### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum allowable weight of the trailer, cargo, and everything in or on it shown in the table.

Towing loads in excess of this can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

Number of occupants	Equip with ATF cooler
2	3,500 lbs (1,587 kg)
3	3,350 lbs (1,520 kg)
4	3,200 lbs (1,451 kg)
5	3,050 lbs (1,383 kg)
6	2,900 lbs (1,315 kg)
7	1,450 lbs (658 kg)
8	Towing not recommended

Each weight limit is calculated based on the following conditions:

- Occupants fill seats from the front of the vehicle to the back
- Each occupant weights 150 lbs (68 kg)

Any additional weight, cargo or accessories reduce the maximum trailer weight and maximum tongue load.

### » Towing Load Limits

## ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your cargo load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the tongue load.

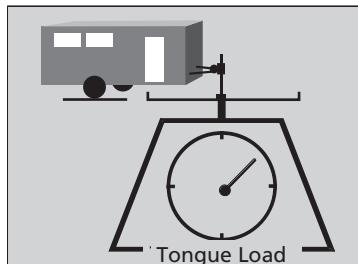
#### Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km).

Never exceed the gross weight ratings.

Gross weight information

#### ☒ Vehicle Specifications P. 542



### ■ Tongue load

The weight of the tongue with a fully loaded trailer on the hitch should be approximately 10% of the total trailer weight.

- Excessive tongue load reduces front tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

## Towing Equipment and Accessories

### ■ Hitches

The hitch must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Weight distribution hitches

A weight distributing hitch is not recommended for use with your vehicle.

An improperly adjusted weight distributing hitch may reduce handling, stability, and braking performance.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ▶Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.



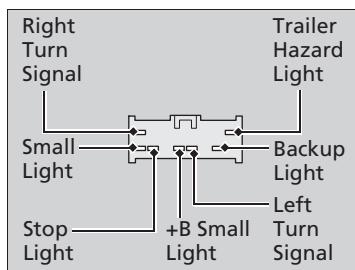
## ■ Trailer brakes

Recommended for any trailer with a total weight of 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or more:

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet. If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system, as it will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

## ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province/territory, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.



Your trailer lighting connector is located behind the left side panel in the cargo area. Each pin's purpose and wiring color code are shown in the image.

When using non-Honda trailer lighting harness and converter, get the connector and pins for your vehicle from a dealer.

## ■ Sway control

Recommended to use if your trailer tends to sway. Consult the trailer maker for what kind of sway control you need and how to install it.



### ■ Automatic transmission cooler

Install an additional ATF (automatic transmission fluid) cooler to help prevent the transmission from overheating, and damaging. You can get the additional ATF cooler at a dealer.

### ■ Trailer mirrors

Many states, provinces and territories require special exterior mirrors when towing a trailer. Install special mirrors whenever you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.





## Driving Safely with a Trailer

### Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.  
    **☒ Towing Load Limits** P. 401
- Securely attach the hitch, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tires, including the spare.

### Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailer.
- Use the **D** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

### Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

### Driving Safely with a Trailer

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

When towing a trailer, we recommend that you carry a full-size spare wheel and tire for your vehicle and trailer. If you use the compact spare tire that came with your vehicle, it could adversely affect vehicle handling.

**☒ Specifications** P. 543**☒ Changing a Flat Tire** P. 511

Remember to unhitch the trailer before changing a flat tire. Ask the trailer sales or rental agency where and how to store the trailer's spare tire.



## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn off the heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\* and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.
- Shift to the **D4** position if the transmission shifts frequently.

## Towing Your Vehicle

---

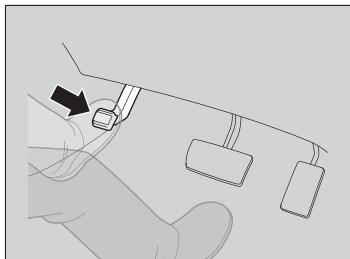
Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

☞ **Emergency Towing** P. 539

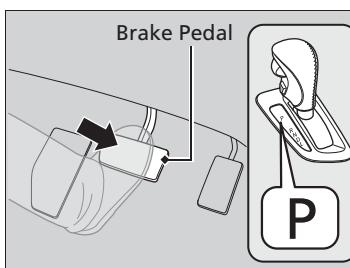


Models without smart entry system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.

- Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

### » Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

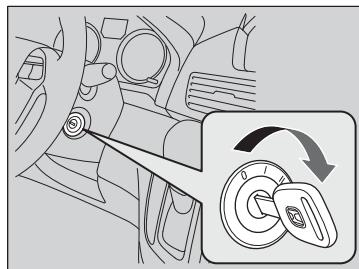
The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. If temperatures consistently below -22°F (-30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration to prevent freezing. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

\* Not available on all models



3. Turn the ignition switch to START  without depressing the accelerator pedal.

#### ▶Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START  for more than 15 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 10 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 10 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

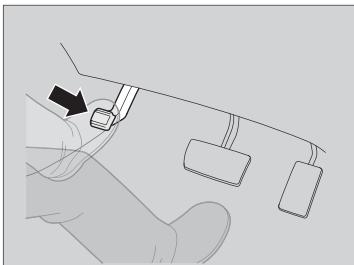
#### ▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 135

### Starting to Drive

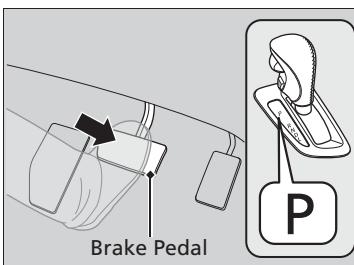
1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.  
☞ **Parking Brake** P. 436
2. Put the shift lever in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

Models with smart entry system

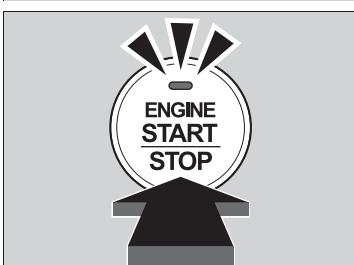
## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.  
► Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

### ▶▶Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce battery drain.

If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. If temperatures consistently below -22°F (-30°C) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration to prevent freezing. Consult a dealer for details.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

◀ **Immobilizer System** P. 135



## ■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Shift to **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

## ■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake indicator has gone off.

**Parking Brake** P. 436

2. Put the shift lever in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

### ▶Starting the Engine

Bring the smart entry remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the smart entry remote is weak.

**If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 521

The engine may not start if the smart entry remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.



## Precautions While Driving

### ■ In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

### ▶▶Precautions While Driving

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY [I] \*1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in [N], as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as to not damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Automatic Transmission

### ■ Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases.  
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### ■ Kickdown

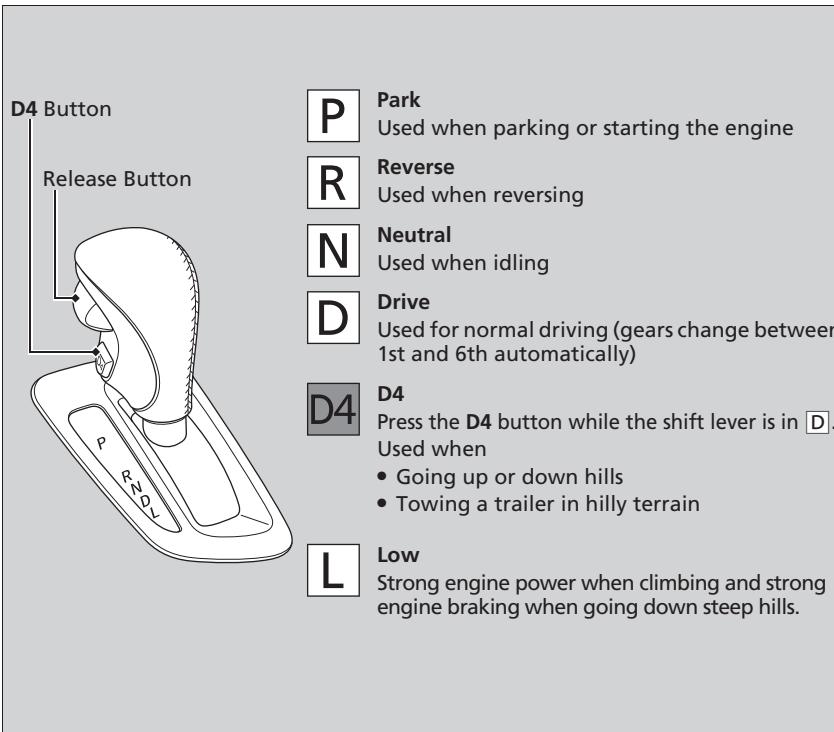
Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.



# Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

## ■ Shift lever positions



**P**

Park  
Used when parking or starting the engine

**R**

Reverse  
Used when reversing

**N**

Neutral  
Used when idling

**D**

Drive  
Used for normal driving (gears change between 1st and 6th automatically)

**D4**

Press the D4 button while the shift lever is in D.

Used when

- Going up or down hills
- Towing a trailer in hilly terrain

**L**

Low  
Strong engine power when climbing and strong engine braking when going down steep hills.

## ▶▶Shifting

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]<sup>\*1</sup> and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

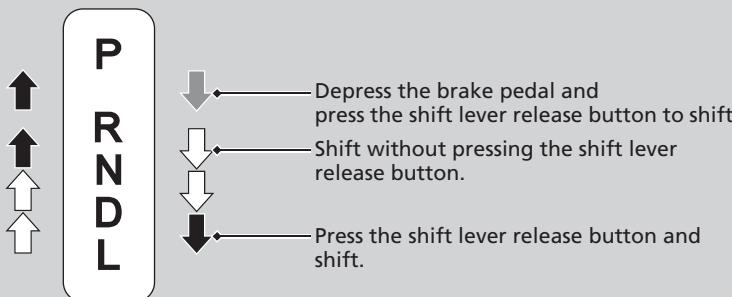
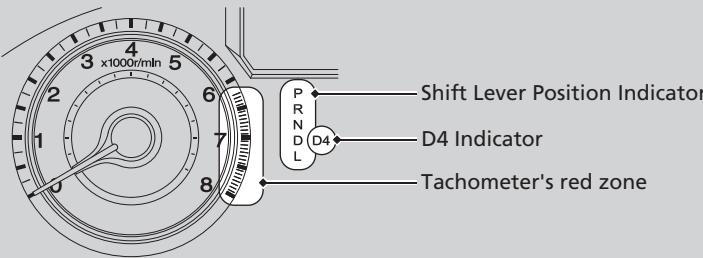
The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold.

Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



## Shift Lever Operation



## Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.

Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.

Depress the brake pedal first.



## Cruise Control

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on freeways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

#### ■ Vehicle speed for cruise control:

Desired speed in a range above roughly 25 mph (40 km/h) ~

#### ■ Shift positions for cruise control:

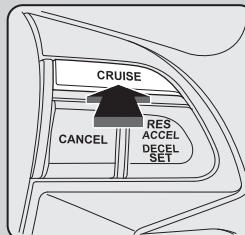
In **D** or **D<sub>4</sub>**

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.



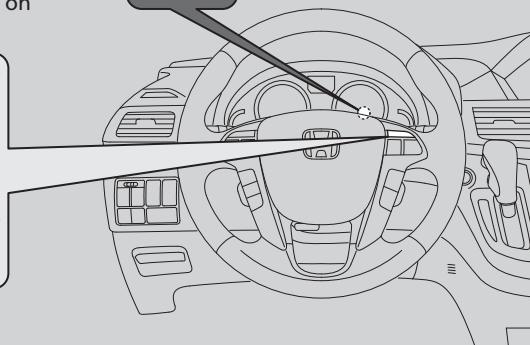
### How to use

#### ■ Press the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.



**CRUISE MAIN**

**CRUISE MAIN** is on in the instrument panel.  
Cruise control is ready to use.



### »Cruise Control

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

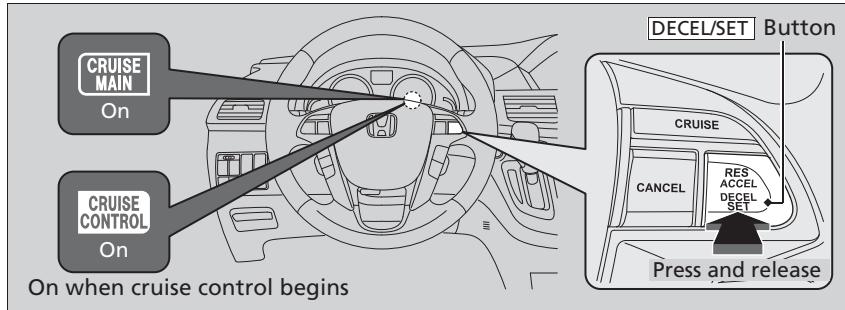
Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.



## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



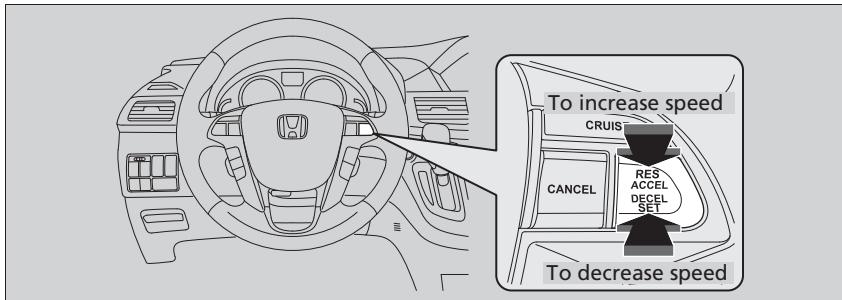
Take your foot off the pedal and press the **DECEL/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **DECEL/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.



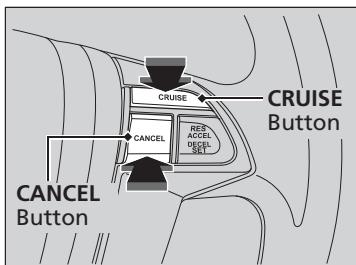
## To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/ACCEL** or **DECEL/SET** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

### » To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **DECEL/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

### » To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been canceled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/ACCEL** button while driving at a speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 25 mph (40 km/h)
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 22 mph (35 km/h) or less, cruise control is canceled automatically.



## Forward Collision Warning (FCW)\*

Alerts you when it determines that there is a possibility that your vehicle may collide with a vehicle detected in front of yours.

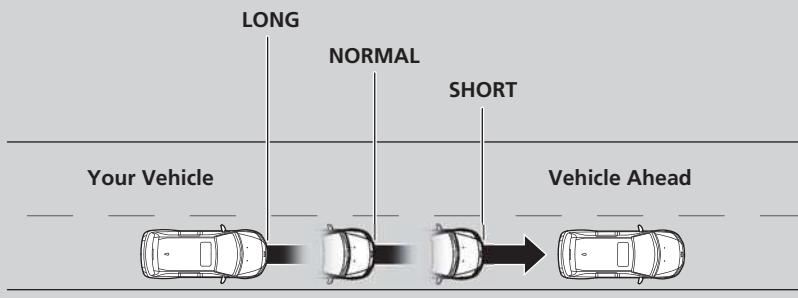
If the system determines a collision is possible, it gives both visual and audible alerts.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

### ■ How the system works

The system may give warnings of potential collisions when your vehicle speed is above 10 mph (15 km/h).

You can set **Long**, **Normal** or **Short** for when warnings start:



### ▶ Forward Collision Warning (FCW)\*

#### Important Safety Reminder

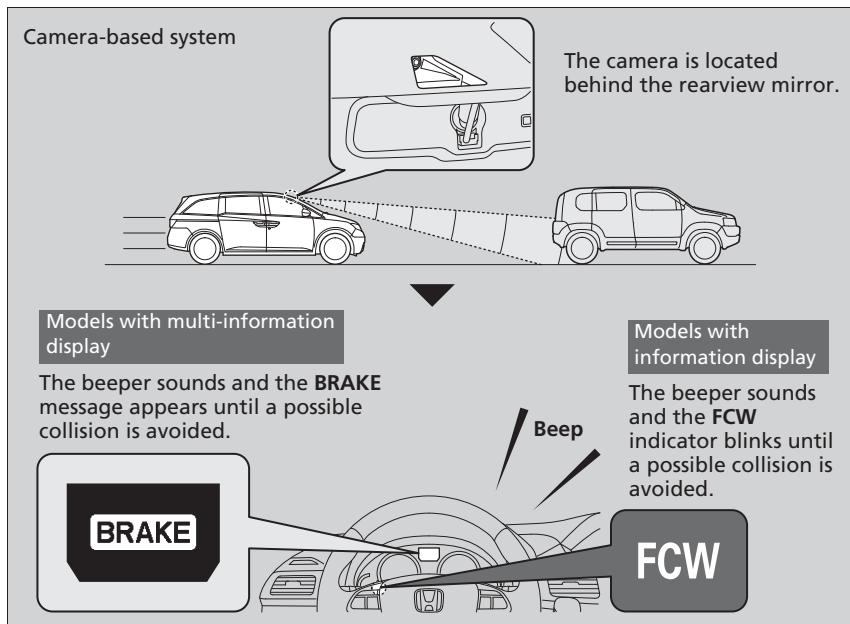
FCW cannot detect all objects ahead and may not detect a given object; accuracy of the system will vary based on weather, speed and other factors. FCW does not include a braking function. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can change the Forward Collision Warning Distance setting or turn the system on and off.

- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 99, 295

The camera is shared with Lane Departure Warning (LDW).

- ▶ **LDW Camera** P. 424



## » Forward Collision Warning (FCW)\*

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield that could obstruct the FCW camera's field of vision.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the FCW camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the FCW camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

\* Not available on all models



## ■ Automatic shutoff

FCW may automatically shut itself off and the **FCW** indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- The windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.

Once the conditions that caused FCW to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

### ►Automatic shutoff

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.

### Models with information display

If the **CAMERA HOT** message appears:

### Models with multi-information display

If the  symbol appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, the defroster mode when windows are fogged.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the FCW system.



## FCW Limitations

FCW may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle, and may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead under the following conditions.

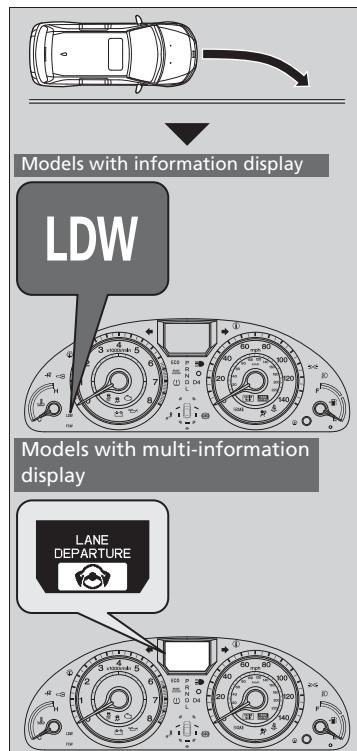
Condition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.</li><li>• A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.</li><li>• A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.</li><li>• When either your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you accelerates rapidly.</li><li>• The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, a small vehicle, or a unique vehicle such as a tractor.</li><li>• When you drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period that makes it difficult for the camera to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.</li><li>• When there are pedestrians or animals in front of your vehicle.</li><li>• When you drive in bad weather (rain, fog, etc.).</li><li>• A heavy load in the rear or modifications to the suspension tilts your vehicle.</li><li>• An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).</li><li>• When the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.</li><li>• When the temperature inside the system is high.</li><li>• A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.</li><li>• You drive into the sunlight (e.g. at dawn or dusk).</li><li>• When the windshield is dirty or cloudy.</li><li>• When streetlights are perceived as the taillight of a vehicle in front of yours.</li><li>• When driving at night, the vehicle ahead of you is running with either taillight bulb burned out.</li><li>• When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.</li><li>• When your vehicle is towing a trailer.</li></ul>



## Lane Departure Warning (LDW)\*

Alerts you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected side lane markings.

### How the System Works



If your vehicle is getting too close to detected left or right side lane markings without a turn signal activated, LDW will give audible and visual alerts.

#### Models with information display

The beeper sounds and the **LDW** indicator blinks, letting you know that you need to take appropriate action.

#### Models with multi-information display

The beeper sounds and the **LANE DEPARTURE** message appears on the multi-information display, letting you know that you need to take appropriate action.

### Lane Departure Warning (LDW)\*

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LDW has limitations. Over-reliance on LDW may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

LDW only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. LDW may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.



## How the System Activates

The system begins to search for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between 40-90 mph (64-145 km/h).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

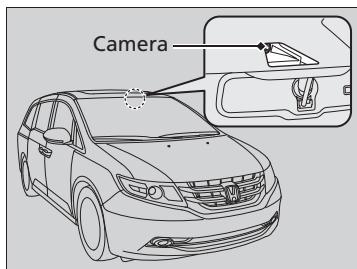
### How the System Activates

LDW may automatically shut off and the **LDW** indicator comes and stays on.

☞ **Indicators** P. 70



## LDW Camera



The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

## LDW Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield that could obstruct the LDW camera's field of vision. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the LDW camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the LDW camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on the camera.

### Models with information display

If the **CAMERA HOT** message appears:

### Models with multi-information display

If the  symbol appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, the defroster mode when windows are fogged.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the LDW camera.



## LDW Limitations

LDW may not activate or may not recognize lanes, and may activate even when keeping in the middle of a lane under the following conditions.

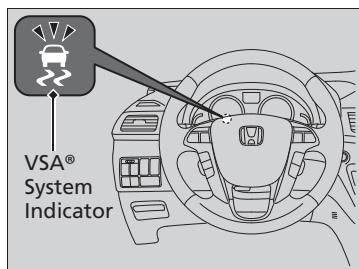
Condition
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When you drive in bad weather (rain, fog, etc.).</li><li>• A heavy load in the rear or modifications to the suspension tilts your vehicle.</li><li>• An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).</li><li>• When the windshield is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.</li><li>• When the temperature inside the system is high.</li><li>• A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.</li><li>• You drive into the sunlight (e.g. at dawn or dusk).</li><li>• When the windshield is dirty or cloudy.</li><li>• When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.</li><li>• When your vehicle is towing a trailer.</li><li>• When you drive on a wet road surface following another vehicle. ▶ The camera may perceive the tire tracks in the water as lane lines.</li><li>• When there is snow or wheel tracks on the side of the road.</li><li>• When the road has many repaired areas or erased lines.</li><li>• When the vehicle is running over painted signs or crosswalk markings.</li><li>• When you drive in a lane with worn-out lane markings.</li></ul>



## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

VSA® helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### VSA® Operation



When VSA® activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

#### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

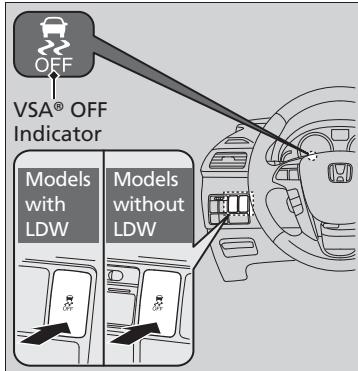
When the VSA® indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.



## VSA® On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To turn the VSA® system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

VSA® will stop and the indicator will come on.

To turn it on again, press the  (VSA® OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA® is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

Without VSA®, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA® traction and stability enhancement.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off.

When the VSA® system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA® off if you are not able to free it when the VSA® is on.

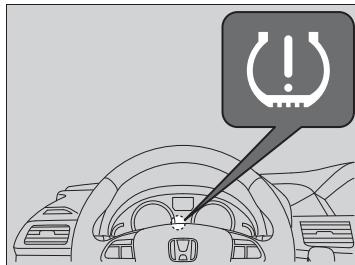
Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA® and traction control systems switched off.

If the low tire pressure/TPMS, low tire pressure, or TPMS indicator comes on or blinks, the VSA® system comes on automatically. In this case, you cannot turn the system off by pressing the  button.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

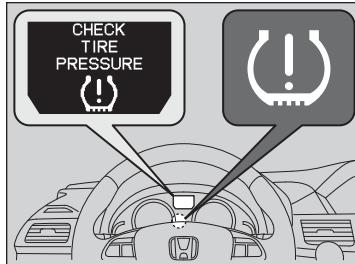


## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



### Models with information display

Monitors the tire pressure while you are driving. If your vehicle's tire pressure becomes significantly low, the low tire pressure indicator comes on.



### Models with multi-information display

Monitors the tire pressure while you are driving. If your vehicle's tire pressure becomes significantly low, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on and a message appears on the multi-information display.

**CHECK TIRE PRESSURE** is displayed when a tire has significantly low pressure.

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

#### Models with information display

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure indicator to come on.

#### ► If the Low Tire Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 531

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

#### Models with multi-information display

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

#### ► If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks P. 532

Tire pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.



## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.



Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

**Models with information display**

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is provided by a separate telltale, which displays the symbol "TPMS" when illuminated.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated,

**TPMS**

the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

**Models with multi-information display**

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



## Blind Spot Information (BSI) System\*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots."

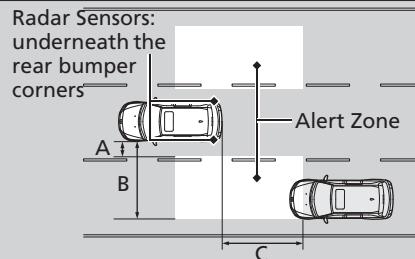
When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

### ■ How the system works

- The shift lever is in **D** or **D4**.
- Your vehicle speed is between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 100 mph (160 km/h)

#### Alert zone range

A: Approx. 1.6 ft. (0.5 m)  
B: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)  
C: Approx. 10 ft. (3 m)



### ▶ Blind Spot Information (BSI) System\*

## WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, BSI has limitations. Over reliance on BSI may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The BSI alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **BLIND SPOT NOT AVAILABLE** multi-information display appearing.
- The BSI alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

The BSI alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.



## ■ When the system detects a vehicle

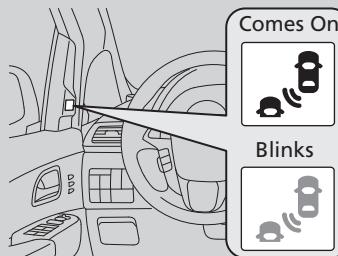
BSI Alert Indicator: Located near the outside door mirrors.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 31 mph (50 km/h) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Blinks and the beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.



## ▶Blind Spot Information (BSI) System\*

Turn the system off when towing a trailer. The system does not work properly for the following reasons:

- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the BSI alert indicators to come on.

BSI may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.,) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (Heavy rain, snow, and fog).

For proper BSI operation:

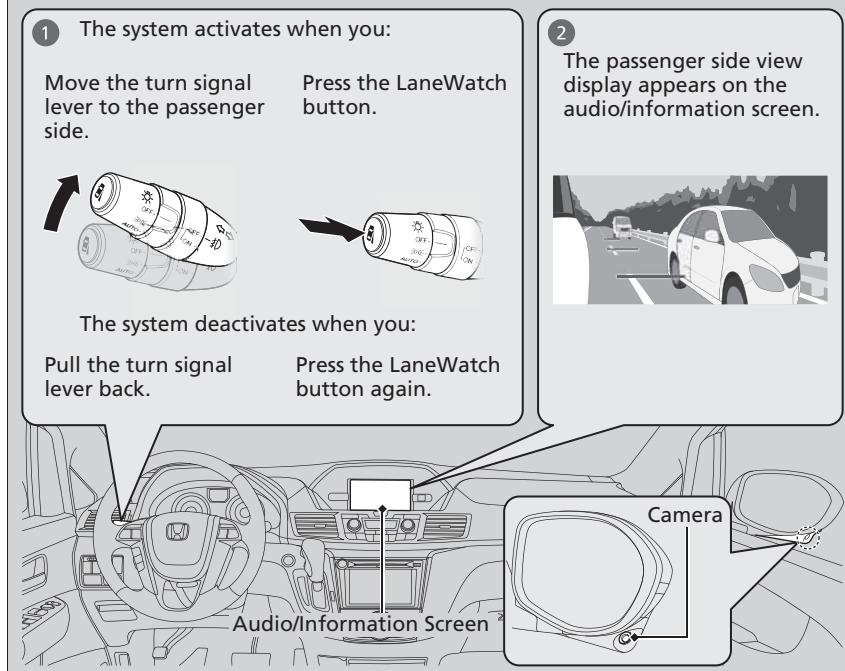
- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

\* Not available on all models



## LaneWatch™\*

Is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.



### ▶LaneWatch™\*

## ⚠️WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tires are over or under inflated.
- Your tires or wheels are of varied size or construction.



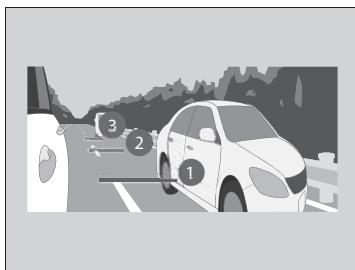
## ■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Reference Lines:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Next Maneuver Pop up\*:** Selects whether a turn direction screen of the navigation system interrupts the LaneWatch display.
- **Display:** Adjusts display settings.

⇨ **Customized Features** P. 295

## ■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

### » LaneWatch™\*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in **R**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

### » Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

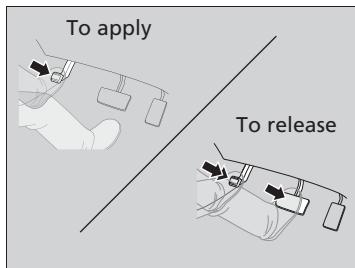
\* Not available on all models



## Brake System

### Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.



#### To apply:

Depress the parking brake pedal down with your foot.

#### To release:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Depress the parking brake.

### Parking Brake

#### NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **RELEASE PARKING BRAKE** appears on the multi-information display\*.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.



## Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

☒ **Brake Assist System** P. 439

☒ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 438

### Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.



## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 6 mph (10 km/h), the ABS stops.

Driving

### ■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use an incorrect tire type and size.

When the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.

While normal braking is not affected, there is a possibility of the ABS not operating. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during hard braking.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:

- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When snow chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.



## Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.



## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly with the shift lever in **D**.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Move the shift lever from **D** to **P**.
4. Turn off the engine.

Always set the parking brake firmly, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### »Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### »When Stopped

#### NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

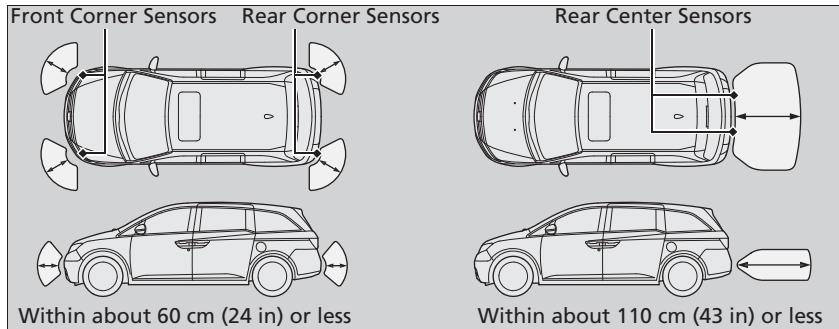
Raise the wiper arms when snow is expected.



## Parking Sensor System\*

The corner and rear center sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper and display let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



\* Not available on all models

Continued

### ▶▶Parking Sensor System\*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle is on an uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by some electric devices that generate ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

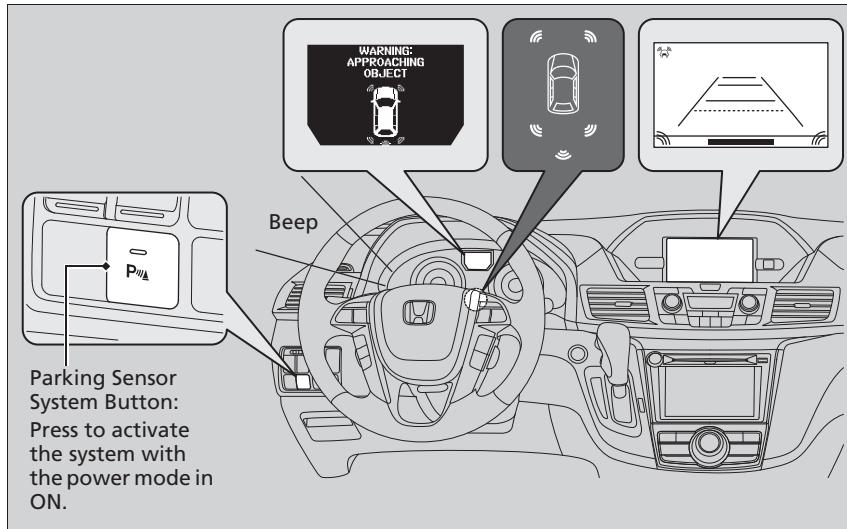
The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.



## ■ When you activate the system



The indicator in the button comes on and the beeper sounds when the system is on.

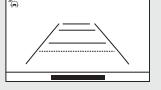
The corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **P**, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The rear center sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h).

## ▶Parking Sensor System\*

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

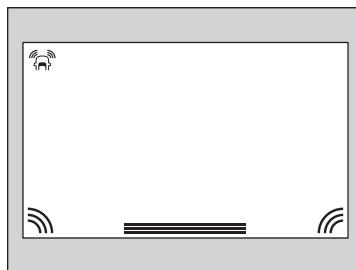
**■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter**

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Appropriate Indicator	Audio/information screen indicator color
	Corner Sensors	Center Sensors		
Long <sup>*1</sup>	—	About 43-28 in (110-70 cm)	Instrument panel 	Yellow
Short	About 24-18 in (60-45 cm)	About 28-22 in (70-55 cm)	Multi-information display 	Amber
Very short	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)	About 22-18 in (55-45 cm)	Audio/information screen 	Amber
Continuous	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	About 18 in (45 cm) or less	Stays on 	Red

\*1: At this stage, only the center sensors detect obstacles.



## ■ The parking sensor system on audio/navigation screen



- An appropriate indicator blinks when there are any obstacles around the parking sensors. The color of the indicator changes in accordance with the distance between your vehicle and obstacles.
- An appropriate indicator stays on in red when there is a problem with the corresponding parking sensor.

### Models with information display

☞ **Parking Sensor Indicator\*** P. 75

### Models with multi-information display

☞ **Multi-Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*** P. 86

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.  
▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

### ☞ Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you shift to **R**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.



## About Your Rearview Camera

### Models with navigation system

For models with the navigation system, see the Navigation System Manual.

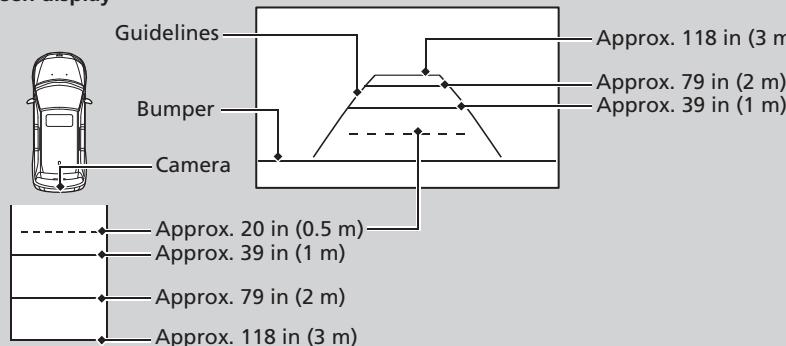
### Models without navigation system

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.

The display automatically changes to a rear view when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

## Rearview Camera Display Area

### Screen display



The rearview camera has a unique lens that makes objects appear closer or further than they actually are.

### About Your Rearview Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** setting.

#### Customized Features P. 295

**On:** Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.



## Fuel Information

### ■ Fuel recommendation

#### Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

### ■ Top tier detergent gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today's advanced engines.

### ■ Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.

Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service. Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

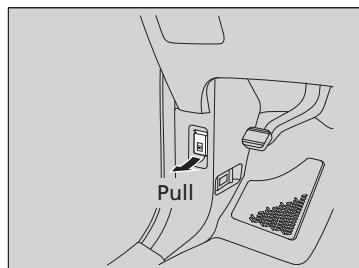


Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met "TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline" standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid build-up of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit [www.hondacars.com](http://www.hondacars.com). In Canada, visit [www.honda.ca](http://www.honda.ca) for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com).

### ■ Fuel tank capacity: 21 US gal (79.5 liters)

## How to Refuel



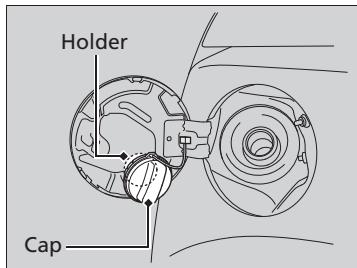
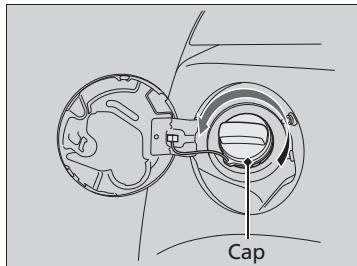
1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.  
► The fuel fill door opens.

» How to Refuel

### WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.

6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.

► When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.

7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.

► Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

#### ▶ How to Refuel

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.

Do not continue to add fuel after the nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.



## Improving Fuel Economy

Fuel economy depends on several conditions, including driving conditions, your driving habits, the condition of your vehicle, and loading. Depending on these and other conditions, you may or may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the information display\*/multi-information display\*.

- Use the recommended viscosity engine oil, displaying the API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### Improving Fuel Economy

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

$$\begin{array}{c} \boxed{\text{Miles driven}} \div \boxed{\text{Gallons of fuel}} = \boxed{\text{Miles per Gallon}} \\ \boxed{100} \times \boxed{\text{Liters of fuel}} \div \boxed{\text{Kilometers driven}} = \boxed{\text{L per 100 km}} \end{array}$$

In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit <http://oee.nrcan.gc.ca/>

\* Not available on all models



## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install accessories over areas marked **SRS AIRBAG**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

 **Fuses** P. 533

- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle or use non-Honda components that can affect its handling, stability, and reliability.

Overall vehicle performance can be affected. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.

### Accessories and Modifications

#### **WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.



# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance .....	452
Safety When Performing Maintenance.....	453
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service .....	454
<b>Maintenance Minder™</b> .....	455

## Maintenance Under the Hood

Maintenance Items Under the Hood.....	463
Opening the Hood .....	464
Recommended Engine Oil .....	465
Oil Check .....	466
Adding Engine Oil.....	467
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter .....	468

Engine Coolant .....	470
Transmission Fluid.....	472
Brake Fluid.....	473
Power Steering Fluid Check.....	474
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	474
<b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> .....	475
<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades</b> .....	486
<b>Checking and Maintaining Tires</b>	
Checking Tires .....	490
Tire and Loading Information Label .....	491
Tire Labeling .....	491
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles).....	493
Wear Indicators .....	495
Tire Service Life .....	495
Tire and Wheel Replacement .....	496
Tire Rotation .....	497
Winter Tires .....	498
<b>Battery</b> .....	499
<b>Remote Transmitter Care</b> .....	500
<b>Remote Control and Wireless Headphone Care*</b> .....	502
<b>Heating and Cooling System*/Climate Control System* Maintenance</b> .....	504
<b>Cleaning</b>	
Interior Care .....	505
Exterior Care.....	507

\* Not available on all models



## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.) Refer to the separate maintenance booklet for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.  
☞ **Brake Fluid** P. 473
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.  
☞ **Checking and Maintaining Tires** P. 490
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.  
☞ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 475
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.  
☞ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 486

#### Inspection and Maintenance

##### U.S. models

**Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the information display\*/multi-information display\*.

☞ **Maintenance Service Items** P. 457, 461

If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at [www.techinfo.honda.com](http://www.techinfo.honda.com).

☞ **Authorized Manuals** P. 551

If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.



## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here.

However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  - Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

»» Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.



## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.



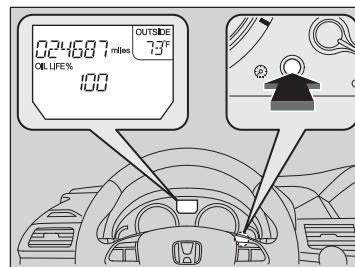


If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the information display\* or the multi-information display\* every time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Models with information display

## To Use Maintenance Minder™

### Displaying the Engine Oil Life



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup>.
2. Press the  (Select/Reset) knob repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the information display.

The Maintenance Minder indicator () stays on in the instrument panel after the engine oil life becomes **0%**. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

### Displaying the Engine Oil Life

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

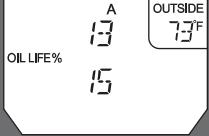
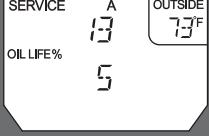
\* Not available on all models

Continued



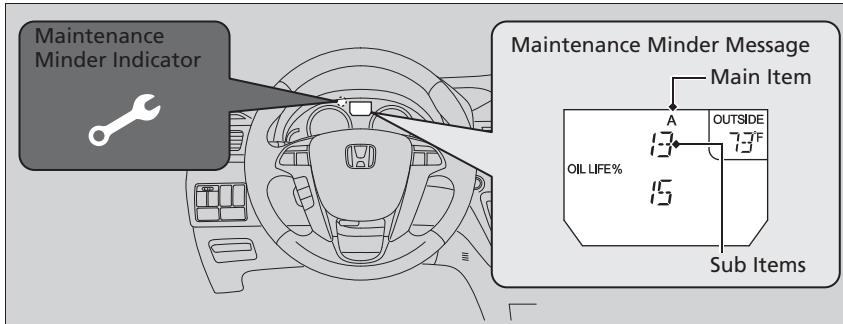
## Maintenance Minder Messages on the Information Display

To switch the display, press the  (Select/Reset) knob.

Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information	Maintenance Minder Indicator
	The engine oil life indicator starts to appear along with other due soon maintenance item codes when the remaining oil life becomes 15 percent.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.	 Starts to come on when the remaining engine oil life becomes 15 percent.
	The <b>SERVICE</b> message also starts to appear along with the engine oil life indicator and the maintenance item codes.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.	It goes off when the display is switched.
	The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.	 Stays on as a reminder even when the display is switched.



## Maintenance Service Items



### ►►Maintenance Service Items

- Independent of the Maintenance Minder information, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace engine oil*<sup>1</sup></li></ul>
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace engine oil*<sup>1</sup> and oil filter</li><li>• Inspect front and rear brakes/service as necessary</li><li>• Check parking brake adjustment</li><li>• Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots</li><li>• Inspect suspension components</li><li>• Inspect driveshaft boots</li><li>• Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA)</li><li>• Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids</li><li>• Inspect exhaust system<sup>#</sup></li><li>• Inspect fuel lines and connections<sup>#</sup></li></ul>

\*1: If a message **SERVICE** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rotate tires</li></ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace air cleaner element*<sup>2</sup></li><li>• Replace dust and pollen filter*<sup>3</sup></li><li>• Inspect drive belt</li></ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace transmission fluid</li></ul>
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace spark plugs</li><li>• Replace timing belt and inspect water pump*<sup>4</sup></li><li>• Inspect valve clearance</li></ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace engine coolant</li></ul>

\*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

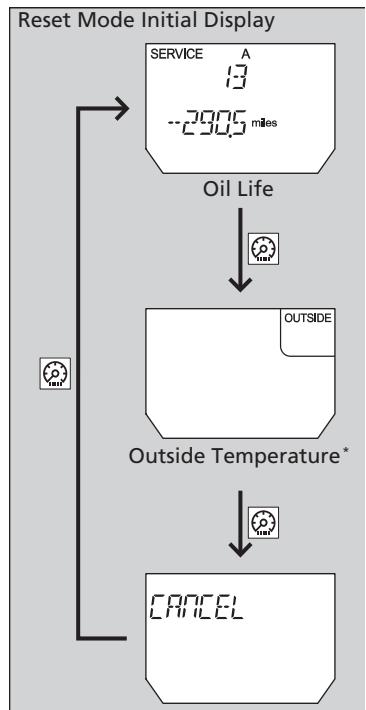
\*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

\*4: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), in very low temperatures (under -20 °F, -29°C), replace every 60,000 miles/100,000 km.



## Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil life display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup>.
2. Press and hold the (Select/Reset) knob for 10 seconds or more.
  - The information display shows the reset mode initial display.
3. Select oil life with the knob.
4. Press and hold the knob for a few seconds to enter the oil life reset mode.
5. Press and hold the knob for five seconds or more.
  - The displayed maintenance items disappear and the engine oil life display will return to 100%.

### ► Resetting the Display

#### NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

<sup>\*1</sup>: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

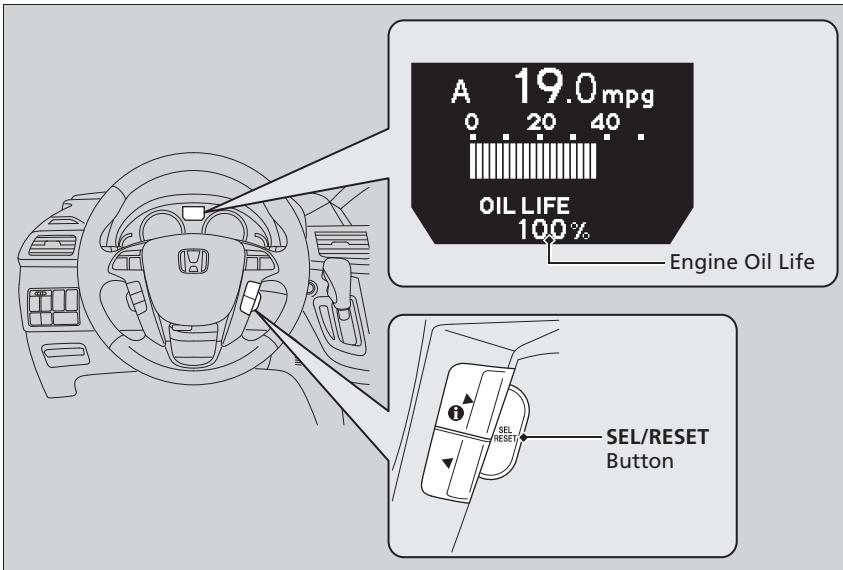


Models with multi-information display

## To Use Maintenance Minder™

### Displaying the Engine Oil Life

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the **SEL/RESET** button repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the multi-information display.



### Displaying the Engine Oil Life and Maintenance Items

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)	Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)
100	100 to 91
90	90 to 81
80	80 to 71
70	70 to 61
60	60 to 51
50	50 to 41
40	40 to 31
30	30 to 21
20	20 to 16
15	15 to 11
10	10 to 6
5	5 to 1
0	0



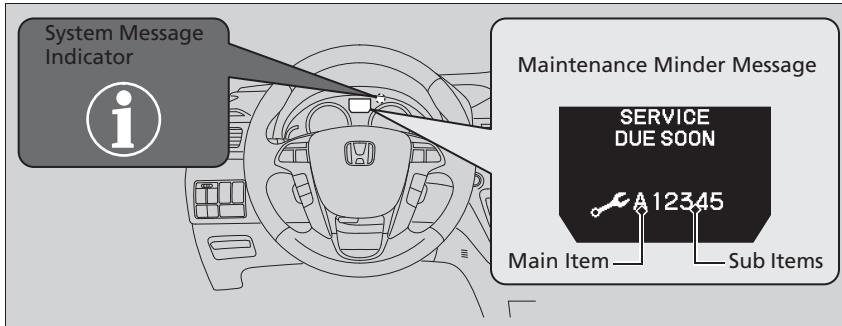
## Maintenance Minder Messages on the Multi-Information Display

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
<b>SERVICE DUE SOON</b>  A12345	15%  B12345 OIL LIFE 15%	The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Once you switch the display by pressing the <b>▲ (i) / ▼</b> (information) button, this message will go off.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.
<b>SERVICE DUE NOW</b>  A12345	5%  SERVICE B12345 OIL LIFE 5%	The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Press the <b>▲ (i) / ▼</b> button to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
<b>SERVICE PAST DUE</b>  A12345	Negative Distance  SERVICE B12345 -10 miles	The remaining engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). Press the <b>▲ (i) / ▼</b> button to switch to another display.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (i) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.



## Maintenance Service Items



CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace engine oil*1</li></ul>
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter</li><li>• Inspect front and rear brakes/service as necessary</li><li>• Check parking brake adjustment</li><li>• Inspect tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots</li><li>• Inspect suspension components</li><li>• Inspect driveshaft boots</li><li>• Inspect brake hoses and lines (Including ABS/VSA)</li><li>• Inspect all fluid levels and condition of fluids</li><li>• Inspect exhaust system#</li><li>• Inspect fuel lines and connections#</li></ul>

\*1: If a message **SERVICE** does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rotate tires</li></ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace air cleaner element*2</li><li>• Replace dust and pollen filter*3</li><li>• Inspect drive belt</li></ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace transmission fluid</li></ul>
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace spark plugs</li><li>• Replace timing belt and inspect water pump*4</li><li>• Inspect valve clearance</li></ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Replace engine coolant</li></ul>

\*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace the air cleaner element every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

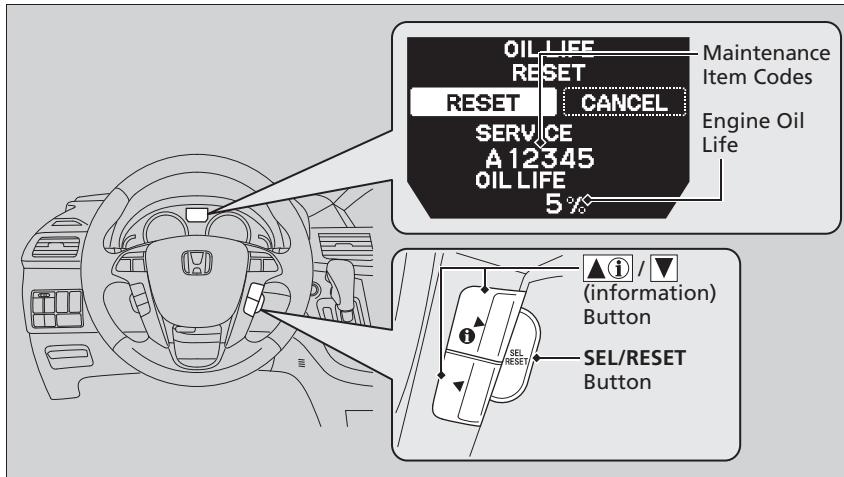
\*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace the dust and pollen filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

\*4: If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), in very low temperatures (under -20 °F, -29°C), replace every 60,000 miles/100,000 km.



## Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil life display if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Display the engine oil life by repeatedly pressing the **SEL/RESET** button.
3. Press and hold the **SEL/RESET** button for 10 seconds or more.
  - ▶ The oil life reset mode is displayed on the multi-information display.
4. Select **RESET** with the **▲ (i) / ▼** button, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.
  - ▶ The service code will disappear and the engine oil life display will return to **100%**.

To cancel the oil life reset mode, select **CANCEL**, then press the **SEL/RESET** button.

### ▶ Resetting the Display

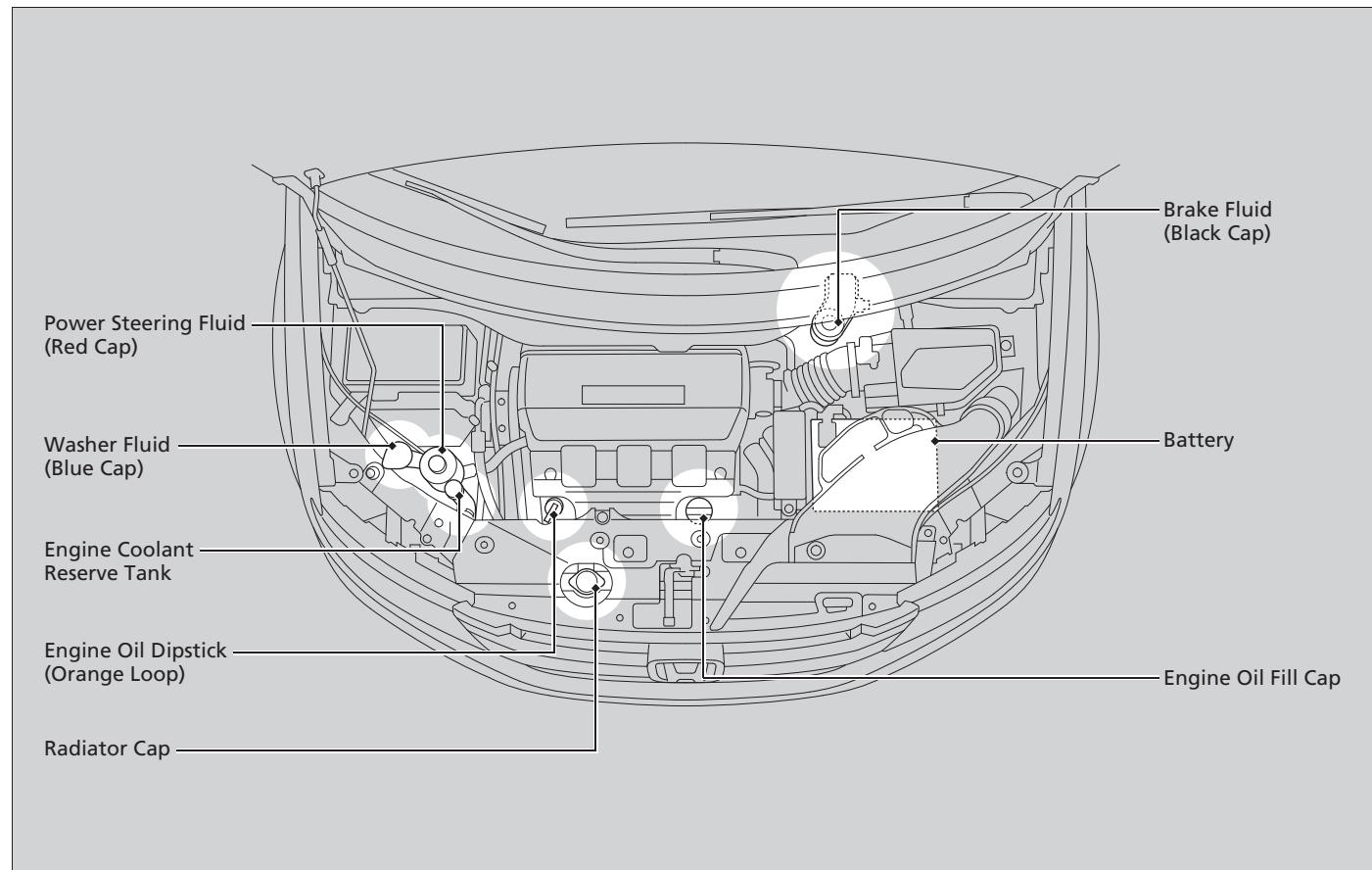
#### NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

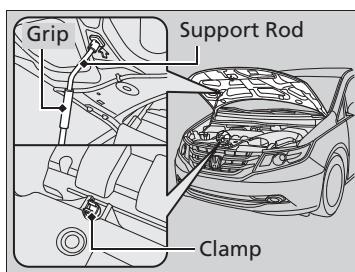
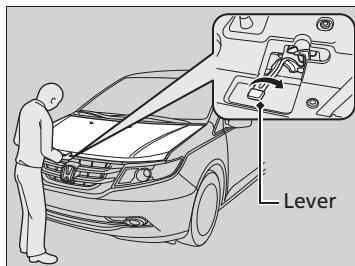
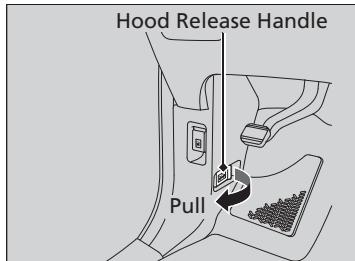


## Maintenance Items Under the Hood





## Opening the Hood



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the hood release handle under the lower left corner of the dashboard.  
► The hood will pop up slightly.

3. Slide the hood latch lever in the center of the hood to release the lock mechanism, and open the hood.

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the hood.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the hood. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 12 inches (30 cm) and let the hood close.

### ►Opening the Hood

#### NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised.

The hood will strike the wipers, and may damage either the hood or the wipers.

When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.

If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



## Recommended Engine Oil

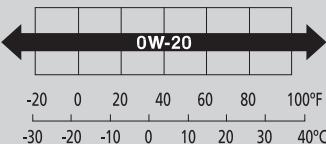
- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil with an API Certification Seal on the container.**



Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

Use a Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.



### ■ Synthetic oil

You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

### » Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

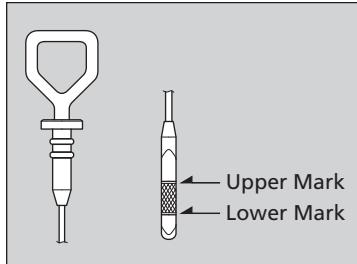
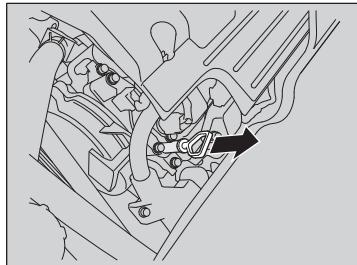


## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



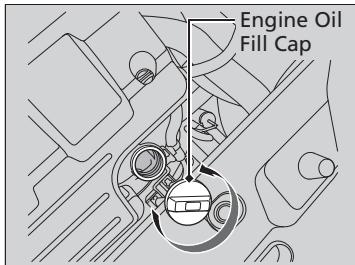
1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### ►Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil being careful not to overfill.



## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### »» Adding Engine Oil

If any oil spills, wipe it up immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

#### NOTICE

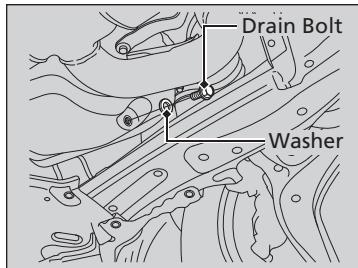
Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.



## Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the information display\*/multi-information display\*.

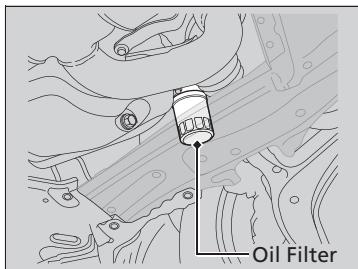


1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
2. Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
3. Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.

### ►Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

#### NOTICE

You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.



4. Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.
5. Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.
  - If it is stuck, you must detach it.
6. Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.
  - Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the filter gasket.
7. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.
  - Tightening torque:  
29 lbf·ft (39 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)
8. Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.
  - Engine oil change capacity (including filter):  
4.5 US qt (4.3 L)
9. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.
10. Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.
11. Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.
  - If necessary, add more engine oil.

#### »»Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.

When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter.

Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The low oil pressure indicator should go off within five seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.



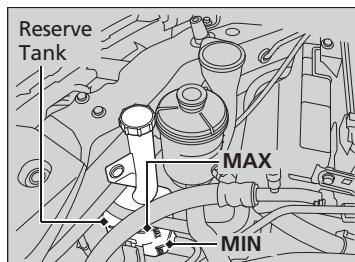
## Engine Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

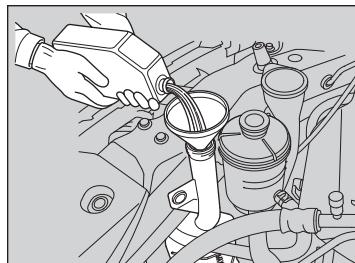
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

#### Reserve Tank



1. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.



2. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

#### ▶ Engine Coolant

##### NOTICE

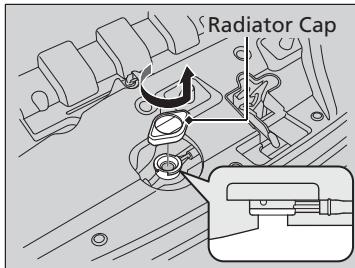
If temperatures consistently below  $-22^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult a dealer for more information.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.



## Radiator



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Turn the radiator cap counterclockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system. Do not push the cap down when turning.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap counterclockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.
6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

## Radiator

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.



## Transmission Fluid

### Automatic Transmission Fluid

#### Specified fluid: Honda Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

#### Automatic Transmission Fluid

##### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.**

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

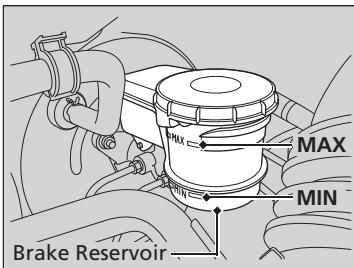
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.



## Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3**

### Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

»»Brake Fluid

#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

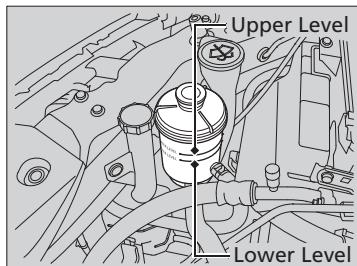
If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.



## Power Steering Fluid Check

### Specified fluid: Honda Power Steering Fluid

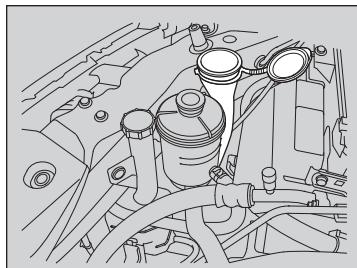
We recommend that you check the power steering fluid level every time you refuel. Check when the engine is not running.



1. Look at the side of the reservoir. The fluid should be between the **UPPER LEVEL** and **LOWER LEVEL**.
2. Add power steering fluid if necessary to the **UPPER LEVEL** mark.
  - Inspect the system for a leak. If the fluid level goes below the **LOWER LEVEL** frequently, have the system inspected as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

#### Canadian models with information display

If the washer fluid is low, the washer level indicator comes on.

#### Canadian models with multi-information display

If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the multi-information display.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ►Power Steering Fluid Check

#### NOTICE

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.

#### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

### ►Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.



# Replacing Light Bulbs

## Headlight Bulbs

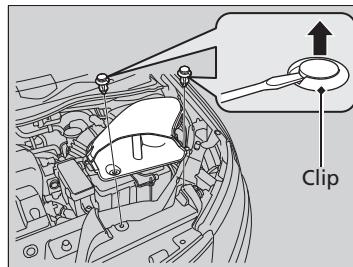
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)**

**Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)\***

**Low beam headlight: 35 W (D2S for high voltage discharge type)\***

### High Beam Headlight



Driver side

1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the upper part of the air intake duct.

» Headlight Bulbs

#### NOTICE

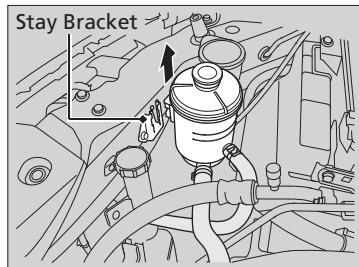
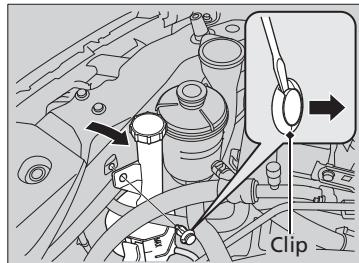
Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit.

Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

\* Not available on all models



#### Passenger side

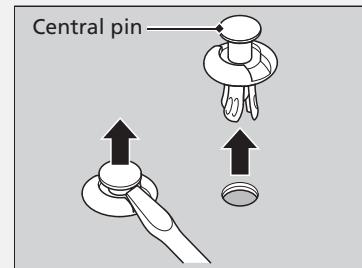
1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, then remove the engine coolant reservoir out of its stay.

Remove the power steering reservoir from the stay bracket.

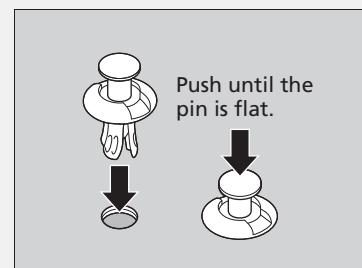
#### High Beam Headlight

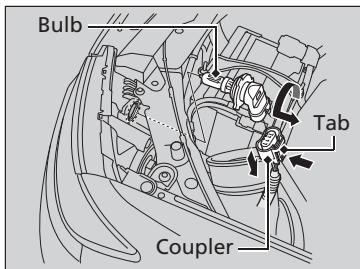
##### Holding clip

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the central pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the central pin raised, and push until it is flat.





2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.



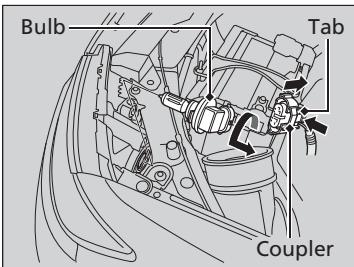
Models with high voltage discharge tube bulbs

## Low Beam Headlights

High voltage can remain in the circuit for a long period of time after the light is switched off. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the high voltage discharge type bulbs yourself. Ask a dealer to inspect and replace low beam headlights.

Models with halogen low beam headlight bulbs

## Low Beam Headlights



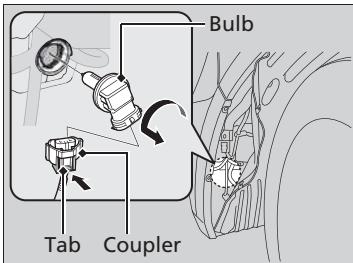
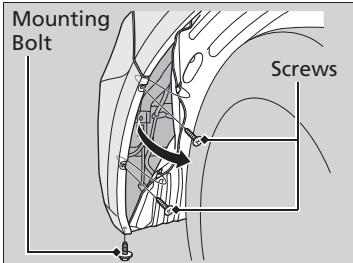
1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it to the right.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.



## Fog Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

### Fog Light: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)



1. Turn the steering wheel all the way to the opposite side from the fog light being replaced.  
**Passenger side:** Turn the steering wheel to the left.  
**Driver side:** Turn the steering wheel to the right.
2. Remove the mounting bolt and screws, and pull the inner fender back.
3. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
4. Rotate the old bulb to the left to remove.
5. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it to the right.
6. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

### »»Fog Light Bulbs\*

#### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

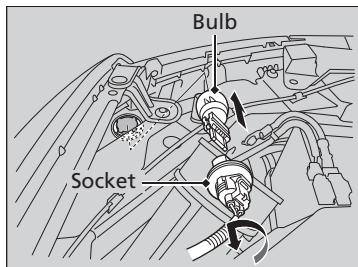
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.



## Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

### Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Light: 28/8 W



1. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Light Bulbs\*

Door mirrors have the side turn lights. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



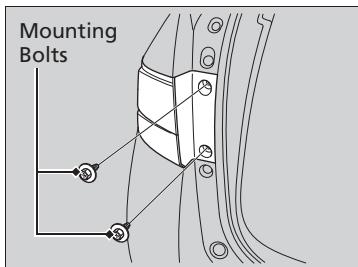
## Brake Light, Rear Side Marker/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Brake Light: 21 W**

**Rear Side Marker/Taillight: LED**

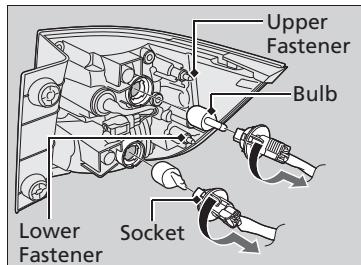
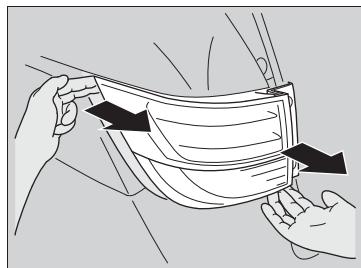
**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**



1. Remove the mounting bolts.

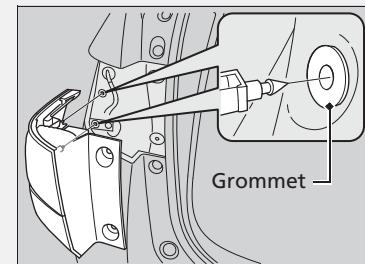
▶▶Brake Light, Rear Side Marker/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Rear Side Marker/Taillight bulbs are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



2. Place one hand on the outer corner of the taillight assembly and other hand on the lower edge of the taillight, near the cargo area.
3. Pull the outer corner of the taillight assembly toward you while supporting the assembly with the hand closest to the cargo area.
4. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
5. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

►Brake Light, Rear Side Marker/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs



To reinstall, insert the fasteners into the grommets and push the assembly back into place.

►Do not reinstall the assembly if the grommets are loose or out of the holes. Contact a dealer to replace them.

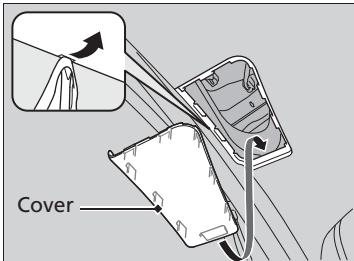


## Back-Up/Taillight Bulbs

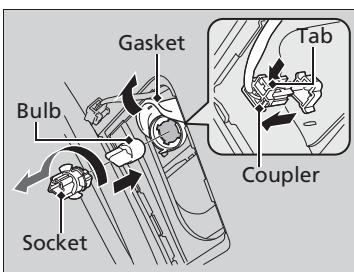
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Back-Up Light: 21 W**

**Taillight: LED**



1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Remove the base gasket.
4. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
5. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### »»Back-Up/Taillight Bulbs

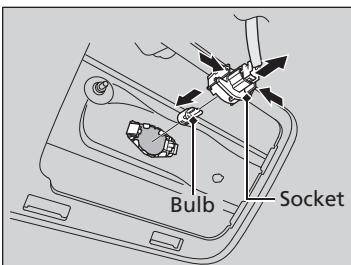
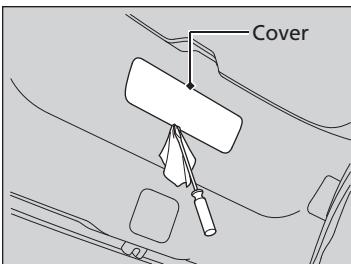
Taillight bulbs are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



## Rear License Plate Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

### Rear License Plate Light: 5 W



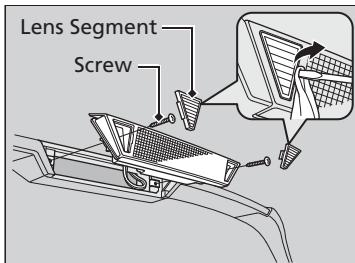
1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.
2. Remove the license plate light assembly by squeezing the tabs on both sides of the socket.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



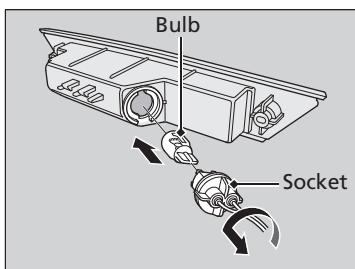
## High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

### High-Mount Brake Light: 16 W



1. Remove the lens segment by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



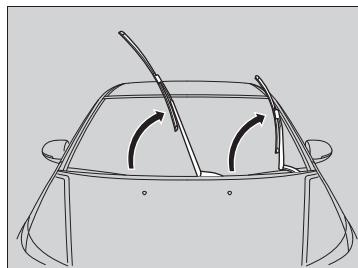
2. Turn the socket to the left and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



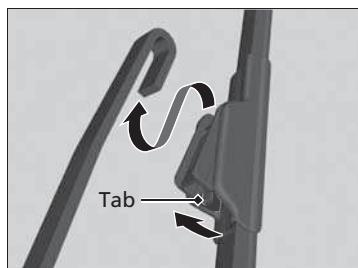
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

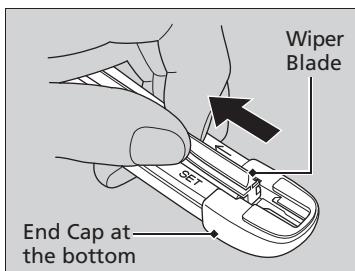


2. Press and hold the tab, then slide the blade out from the wiper arm.

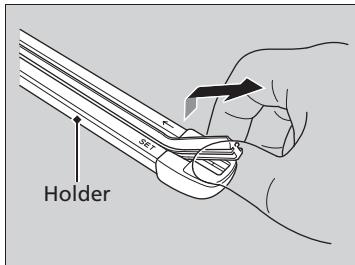
### » Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

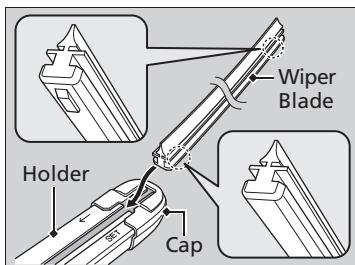
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windshield.



**3.** Pull the end of the wiper blade to the direction of the arrow in the image until it unfastens from the holder's end cap.



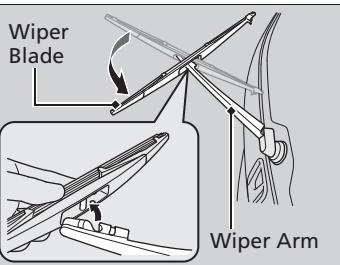
**4.** Pull the wiper blade to the opposite direction to slide it out from its holder.



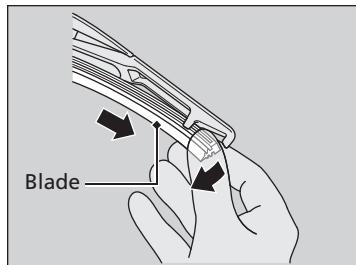
**5.** Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.  
**6.** Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.  
**7.** Slide the wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it locks.  
**8.** Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.



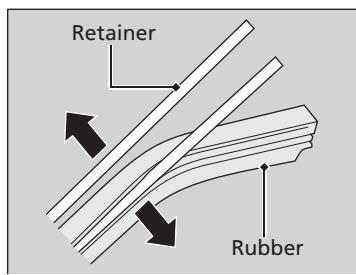
## Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

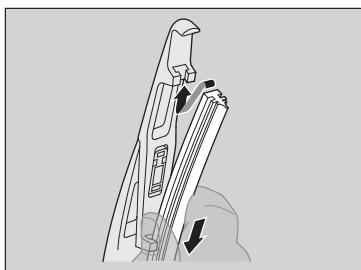


4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount it to a new rubber blade.

### ▶Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm, it may damage the rear window.



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.

▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.



## Checking Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specification's page for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires, including the spare. Even tires in good condition can lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

**Wear Indicators** P. 495

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

### Checking Tires

## WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

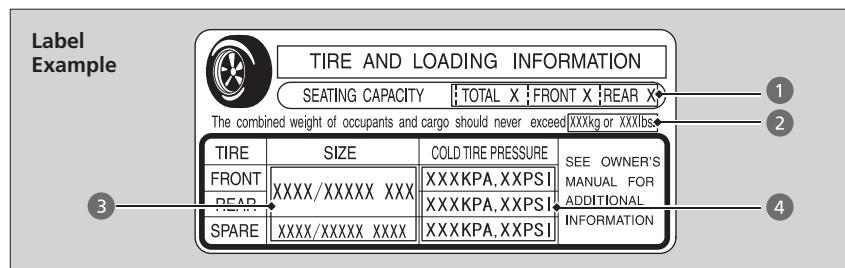
If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4–6 psi (30–40 kPa, 0.3–0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

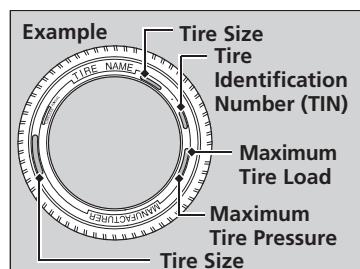


## Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.



## Tire Labeling



The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

### » Tire and Loading Information Label

The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

- 1 The number of people your vehicle can carry.
- 2 The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
- 3 The original tire sizes for front, rear, and spare.
- 4 The proper cold tire pressure for front, rear, and spare.

### » Tire Sizes

Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

#### P235/60 R18 102T

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).  
235: Tire width in millimeters.

60: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

18: Rim diameter in inches.

102: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

T: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

## Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size.



## Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the example in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

## Glossary of Tire Terminology

**Cold Tire Pressure** – The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

**Load Rating** – Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure** – The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

**Maximum Load Rating** – Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure** – The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

**Treadwear Indicators (TWI)** – Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

### Tire Identification Number (TIN)

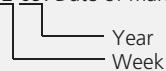
#### DOT B97R FW6X 2209

**DOT:** This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

**B97R:** Manufacturer's identification mark.

**FW6X:** Tire type code.

**22 09:** Date of manufacture.





## DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

#### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### Uniform Tire Quality Grading

For example:  
**Treadwear 200**  
**Traction AA**  
**Temperature A**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.



## Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

## Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### ▶Traction

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

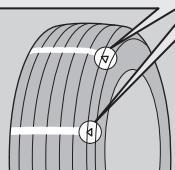
### ▶Temperature

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.



## Wear Indicators

### Example of a Wear Indicator mark



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire. **Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.**

### »» Checking Tires

#### High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 99 mph or 160 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tire failure.

Tire Size	P235/65R17 103T
Pressure	Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ) Rear: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )
Tire Size	P235/60R18 102T
Pressure	Front: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ) Rear: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

## Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.



## Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and VSA® (vehicle stability assist) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.

If you replace a wheel, only use TPMS specified wheels approved for your vehicle. Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ▶Tire and Wheel Replacement

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

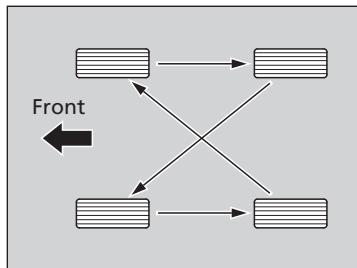
Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.



## Tire Rotation

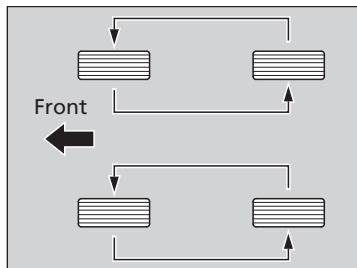
Rotating tires according to the maintenance messages on the information display\*/ multi-information display\* helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

### ■ Tires without rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

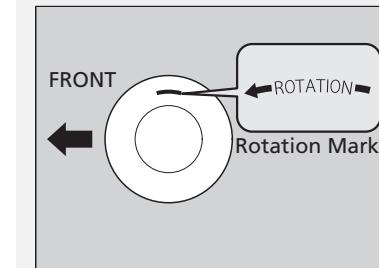
### ■ Tires with rotation marks



Rotate the tires as shown here.

### » Tire Rotation

Tires with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tires should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



\* Not available on all models



## Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tire chains, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tires:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains:

- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

### **Cable-type: SCC Super Z-6# SZ-429**

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

### ▶Winter Tires

## **WARNING**

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

### **NOTICE**

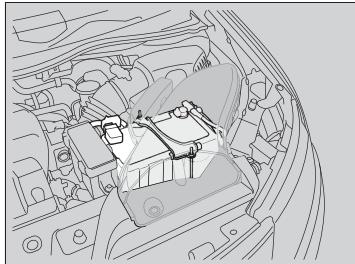
Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.



## Checking the Battery



The battery condition is being monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on information display\*/multi-information display\* will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.  
    **» Reactivating the audio system** P. 208
- The clock resets.  
    **» Clock** P. 108
- The navigation system\* is disabled.  
    **» Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

» Battery

### ⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

When conducting any battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

**WARNING:** Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.

**Wash your hands after handling.**

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Please consult a dealer for more information.

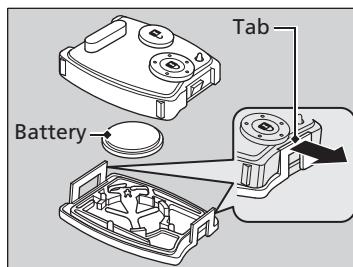
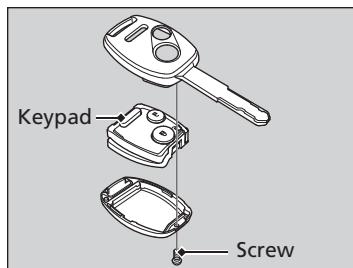
\* Not available on all models



## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

### Master Keys with Remote Transmitter\*



**Battery type: CR1616**

1. Unscrew the cover with a small Phillips-head screwdriver. Press a button to pry open the transmitter.
2. Open the keypad.
  - Separate the inner cover from the keypad by releasing the two tabs on the cover.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

### Replacing the Button Battery

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

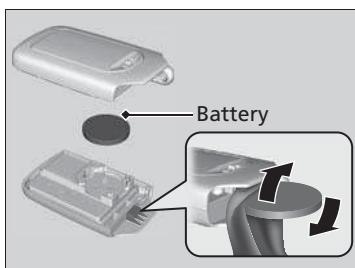
Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.



## Smart Entry Remote\*



**Battery type: CR2032**



1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
  - Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the smart entry remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

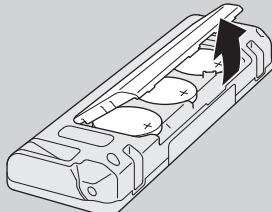


Models with Rear Entertainment System

## Replacing the Battery

### Remote Control

If it takes several pushes on the remote control buttons to operate the rear entertainment system.



**Battery type: BR3032**

1. Remove the cover.
2. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

➤Replacing the Battery

#### NOTICE

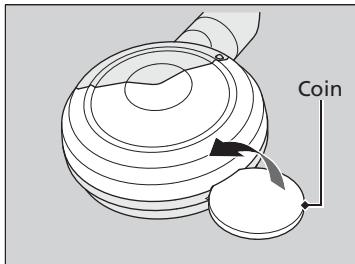
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.



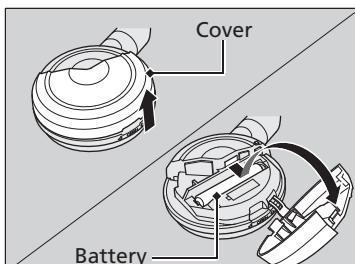
## Wireless Headphone

If there is no sound coming from the wireless headphone, replace the battery.



**Battery type: AAA**

1. To open the cover, insert a coin in the slot and twist it slightly to pry the cover away from the earpiece.



2. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



### Dust and Pollen Filter

The heating and cooling system/climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.

We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

#### ☒ Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the heating and cooling system/climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced. Please contact a dealer for replacement.



## Interior Care

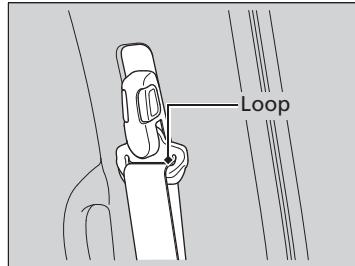
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



#### Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

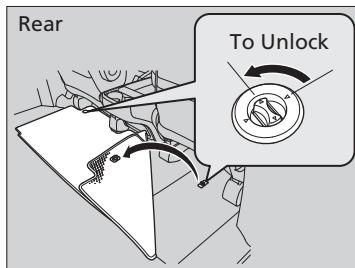
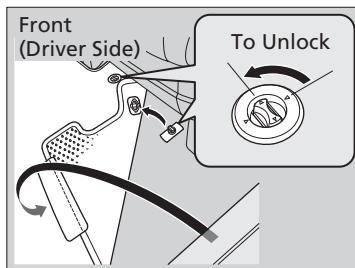
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them off using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.



## Floor Mats



The front and second row passenger's floor mats hook over the floor anchors, which keep the mats from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.**

## Floor Mats

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.

Position the rear seat floor mat properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mat can interfere with the front seat functions.

## Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.



## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### Using an Automated Car Wash

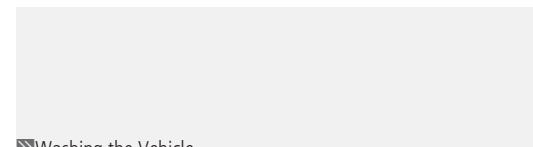
Fold in the door mirrors. Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.

### Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

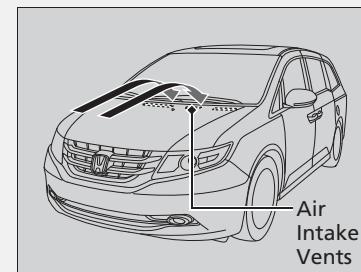
### Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.



#### »Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Air  
Intake  
Vents

#### »Applying Wax

##### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe up spills immediately.



## Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## Maintaining Aluminum Wheels\*

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly. Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminum alloy wheels that helps keep the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing.

## Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ▶Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ▶Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

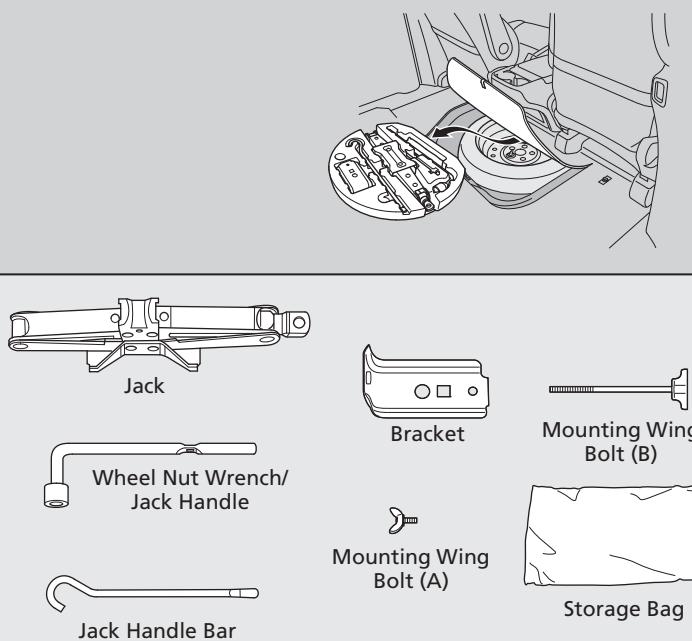
<b>Tools</b>	
Types of Tools.....	510
<b>If a Tire Goes Flat</b>	
Changing a Flat Tire.....	511
<b>Engine Does Not Start</b>	
Checking the Engine.....	520
If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak.....	521
Emergency Engine Stop .....	522
<b>Jump Starting</b> .....	523
<b>Shift Lever Does Not Move</b> .....	525
<b>Overheating</b>	
How to Handle Overheating.....	526

<b>Indicator, Coming On/Blinking</b>	
If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On .....	528
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On .....	528
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks .....	529
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On .....	530
If the Low Tire Pressure Indicator Comes On .....	531

<b>Fuses</b>	
Fuse Locations .....	533
Inspecting and Changing Fuses .....	538
<b>Emergency Towing</b> .....	539
<b>When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate</b> .....	540



## Types of Tools



### Types of Tools

The tools are stored under the second row seat.



### Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a compact spare tire. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tire repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever to **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to **LOCK** **0**\*1.

#### » Changing a Flat Tire

Periodically check the tire pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure. Specified Pressure: 60 psi (420 kPa, 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

When driving with the compact spare tire, keep the vehicle speed under 50 mph (80 km/h). Replace with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

The compact spare tire and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tire or wheel with your vehicle.

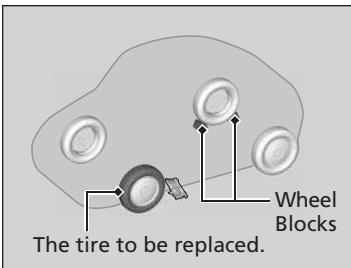
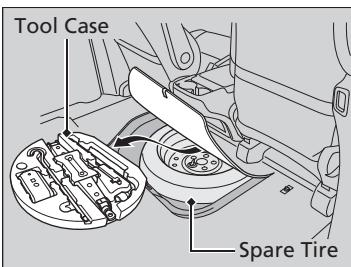
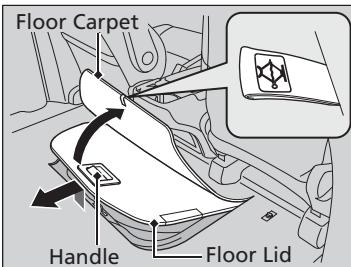
Do not mount tire chains on a compact spare tire. If a chain-mounted front tire goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tires and replace it with the compact spare tire. Remove the flat front tire and replace it with the full-size tire that was removed from the rear. Mount the tire chains on the front tire.

Do not use a puncture-repairing agent on a flat tire, as it can damage the tire pressure sensor.

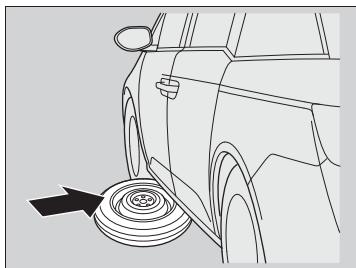
\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



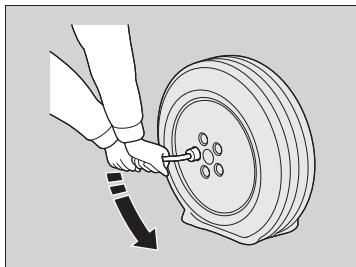
## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tire



1. Remove the floor mat under the second row seat.  
Floor Mats P. 506
2. Pull up the floor carpet.
3. Lift up the floor lid using the handle and remove it.
4. Take the tool case out of the spare tire well.  
Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
5. Unscrew the wing bolt, then remove the spare tire.
6. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tire.



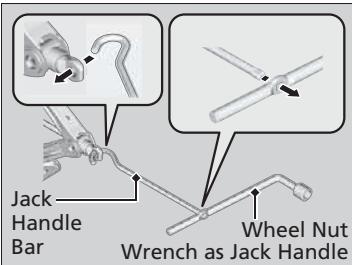
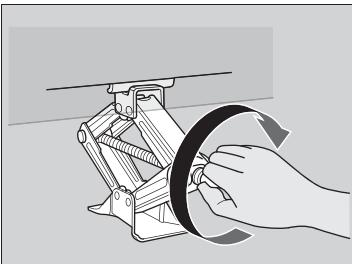
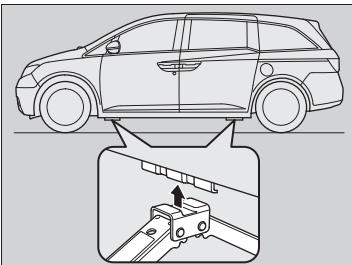
7. Place the compact spare tire (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tire that needs to be replaced.



8. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.



## How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tire to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.  
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tire is off the ground.

## How to Set Up the Jack

### WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

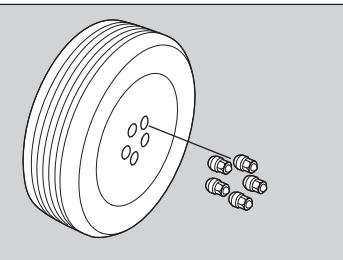
Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

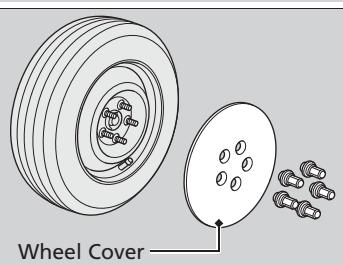


## Replacing the Flat Tire



### Models with aluminum wheels

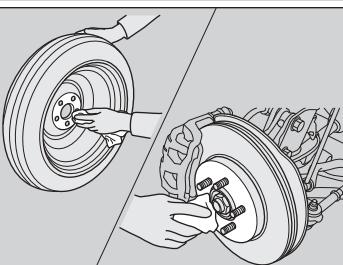
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tire.



Wheel Cover

### Models with wheel cover

1. Remove the wheel nuts, wheel cover, and flat tire.



### All models

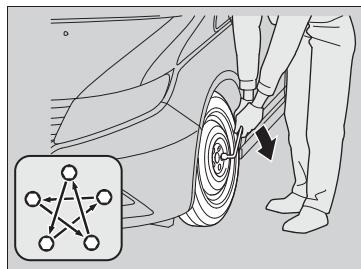
2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tire.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.

### Replacing the Flat Tire

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

### Models with wheel cover

Do not attempt to forcibly pry the wheel cover off with a screwdriver or other tool. The wheel cover cannot be removed without first removing the wheel nuts.

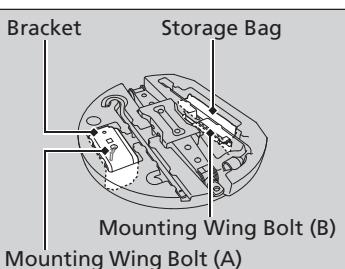


5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

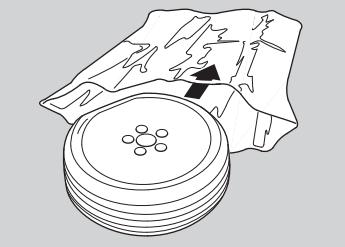
**Wheel nut torque:**

94 lbf·ft (127 N·m, 13 kgf·m)

## ■ Storing the Flat Tire



The storage bag, bracket, mounting wing bolt (A) and mounting wing bolt (B) are in the tool case.



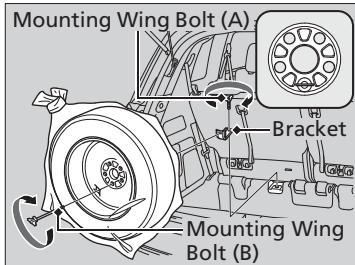
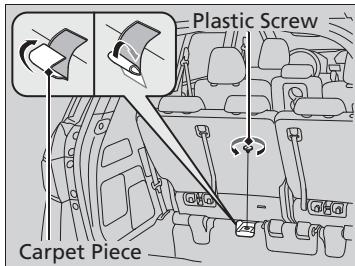
1. Put the flat tire in the storage bag provided with your vehicle.

## ■ Storing the Flat Tire

### ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

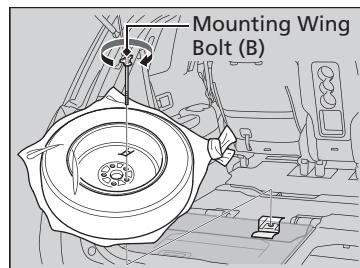
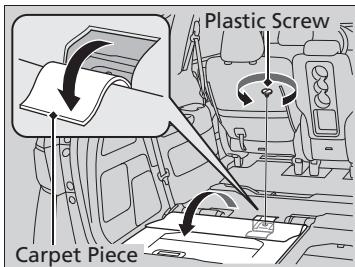


2. Pull down the U-shaped carpet piece, fold it, and tuck the end under the carpet.
3. Remove the plastic screw with a coin.

4. Install the bracket and the mounting wing bolt (A) on the attachment point, and tighten the bolt.
5. Install the flat tire on the bracket with the inside of the wheel facing toward you.
6. Install the mounting wing bolt (B) to the bracket through one of the five wheel nut holes, and tighten the bolt.
  - Poke a hole in the storage bag as needed.



## ■ Storing a flat tire on the folded third row seat



1. Turn over the flap on the left side of the cargo area floor.
2. Pull down the U-shaped carpet piece and remove the plastic screw with a coin.
3. Place the flat tire face down on the attachment point.
4. Put the tire mounting wing bolt (B) in the attachment point through one of the five wheel nut holes, and tighten the bolt.
  - ▶ Poke a hole in the storage bag as needed.



## TPMS and the Spare Tire

### Models with information display

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will go off and the TPMS indicator comes on, but this is normal.

If you replace the tire with a specified regular tire, the low tire pressure or TPMS indicator will go off after a few miles (kilometers).

### Models with multi-information display

If you replace a flat tire with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few miles (kilometers), the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on. **CHECK TPMS SYSTEM** appears on the multi-information display, but this is normal.

If you replace the tire with a specified regular tire, the warning message on the multi-information display and the TPMS indicator will go off after a few miles (kilometers).

### TPMS and the Spare Tire

The system cannot monitor the pressure of the spare tire. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure that it is correct.

Use the TPMS specific wheels. Each is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem.



## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

### Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle to jump start it.

**Jump Starting** P. 523

Starter condition	Checklist
<b>Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.</b> The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<p>Models with multi-information display</p> <p><b>Check for a message on the multi-information display.</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the <b>TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON</b> message appears<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 521</li><li>► Make sure the smart entry remote is in its operating range.</li></ul></li></ul> <p><b>Check the brightness of the interior lights.</b> Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Battery</b> P. 499</li></ul></li><li>• If the interior lights come on normally<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>➤ <b>Fuses</b> P. 533</li></ul></li></ul>
<b>The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.</b> There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	<p><b>Review the engine start procedure.</b> Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 407, 409</p> <p><b>Check the immobilizer system indicator.</b> When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.</p> <p>➤ <b>Immobilizer System</b> P. 135</p> <p><b>Check the fuel level.</b> There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➤ <b>Fuel Gauge</b> P. 92</p> <p><b>Check the fuse.</b> Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</p> <p>➤ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 538</p> <p><b>If the problem continues:</b></p> <p>➤ <b>Emergency Towing</b> P. 539</p>



Models with smart entry system

## If the Smart Entry Remote Battery is Weak

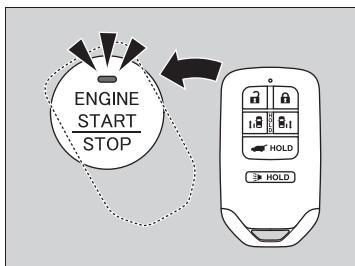
If the beeper sounds, the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start.

Models with multi-information display

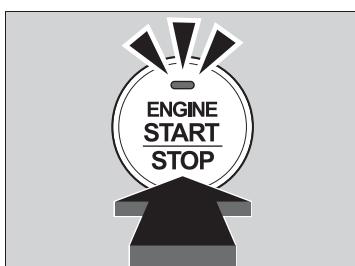
The **TO START, HOLD REMOTE NEAR START BUTTON** message appears on the multi-information display.

All models

Start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the center of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the smart entry remote while the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the smart entry remote should be facing you.
  - ▶ The indicator flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the indicator stays on.
  - ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.



Models with smart entry system

## Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.

The steering wheel will not lock.

However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

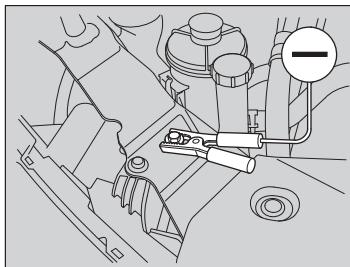
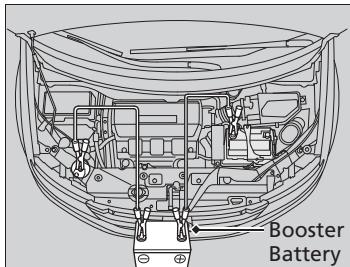
### ▶Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be switched off.



## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the hood.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the grounding point as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

»Jump Starting

### WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

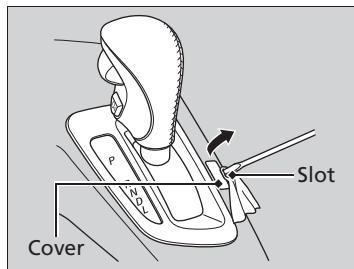
Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.



# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

## Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

**Models without smart entry system**

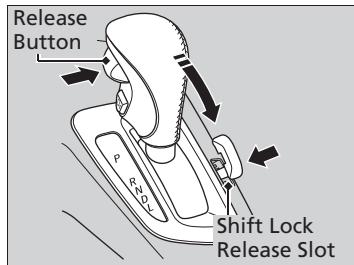
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

**Models with smart entry system**

2. Remove the built-in key from the smart entry remote.

**All models**

3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.



4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

5. While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.

► The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge needle is at the  mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

► **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the hood.

► **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides.  
Then open the hood.

### » How to Handle Overheating

#### **WARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

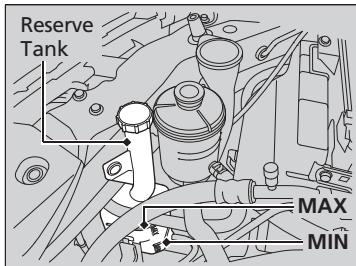
Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

#### **NOTICE**

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge needle at the  mark may damage the engine.



## ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge needle comes down.
  - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

## ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge needle has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

## »How to Handle Overheating

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.



## If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.

2. Open the hood and check the oil level.

► Add oil as necessary.

#### ❑ Oil Check P. 466

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.

► The indicator goes off: Start driving again.

► The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

### ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

## If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the heating and cooling system\*/climate control system\*, rear defogger, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

### ☒ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.



## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system, or the fuel fill cap is missing, or loose.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### ▶If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 31 mph (50 km/h) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## Check/Tighten Fuel Cap Message

### ■ The message appears on when:

An evaporative system leak is detected. This may be caused by the fuel fill cap being loose or not being installed.

### ■ What to do when the message appears:

1. Stop the engine.
2. Check if the fuel fill cap is fully installed.
  - ▶ If not, loosen the cap, and then retighten it until it clicks at least once.
3. Drive for several days of normal driving.
  - ▶ The message should go off.

### ■ When the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The malfunction indicator lamp comes on if the system continues to detect a leak of gasoline vapor. If this happens, follow the procedures described earlier to check the fuel fill cap.



## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

U.S.



Canada



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

### ■ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.



Models with information display

## If the Low Tire Pressure Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

A tire pressure is significantly low. If the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator stays on for a while, then goes off after driving a few miles (kilometers).

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

Models with information display

## If the TPMS Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the TPMS.
- If the compact spare is installed, the indicator comes on after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to come on, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator goes off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

»»If the Low Tire Pressure Indicator Comes On

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.



Models with multi-information display

## If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tire pressure is significantly low. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tire is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tire pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tire pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

Have the tire inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tire causes the indicator to blink, change the tire to a full-size tire. The indicator goes off after driving for a few miles (kilometers).

▶If the Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tire can cause it to overheat. An overheated tire can fail. Always inflate your tires to the prescribed level.



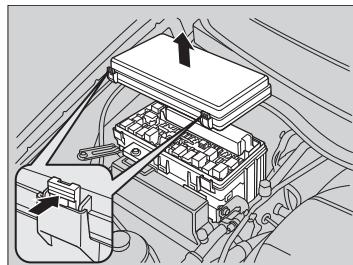
## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]<sup>\*1</sup> and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Passenger Side)

Located near the windshield washer reservoir. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

Circuit Protected	Amps
1	—
2	—
3	ACG FR
4	Washer
5	VB SOL
6	ECU FR
7	—
8	FI Sub
9	DBW
10	FI Main
11	Ignition Coil
12	—
13	—
14	—
15	Radio
16	Back Up
17	MG Clutch
18	Front Fog Lights* (20 A)
19	—
20	Right Headlight High Beam
21	—
22	Small Lights
23	—
24	Left Headlight High Beam
25	—

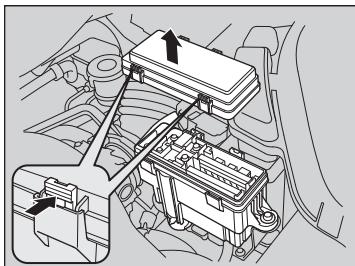
Circuit Protected	Amps
26	Right Headlight Low Beam
27	Left Headlight Low Beam
28	Oil Level
29	Main Fan
30	Sub Fan
31	Wiper Main



## ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Driver Side)

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Main Fuse	125 A
2-1	Fan Main	60 A
2-2	Passenger Side Fuse Box 2	50 A
2-3	HondaVAC™*	(60 A)
2-4	Interior Light, FI Main	30 A
2-5	Stop & Horn, Hazard	30 A
2-6	Rear Blower, Battery Management System	30 A
2-7	VSA FSR	30 A
2-8	VSA Motor	40 A
3-1	Driver Side Fuse Box 2	50 A
3-2	IG1 Main* <sup>1</sup>	50 A
3-2	Starter Motor* <sup>2</sup>	40 A
3-3	Rear Fuse Box 1	60 A
3-4	Passenger Side Fuse Box 1	50 A
3-5	Driver Side Fuse Box 1	50 A
3-6	Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Passenger Side) Main	60 A
3-7	Passenger's Side Power Sliding Door Motor*	(40 A)
3-8	Front Blower	40 A
4	Rear Defroster	40 A
5	—	—
6	IG Main 2*	30 A
7	IG Main 1*	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
8	Battery Management System	7.5 A
9	Stop & Horn	20 A
10	Hazard	15 A
11	Interior Lights	7.5 A

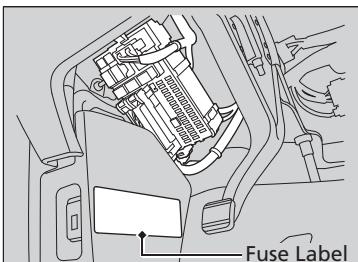
\*1:Models without smart entry system

\*2:Models with smart entry system



## Driver Side Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Front Passenger's Door Lock	7.5 A
2	Rear Passenger's Door Lock	7.5 A
3	Driver's Door Lock	7.5 A
4	Front Passenger's Door Unlock	7.5 A
5	Rear Passenger's Door Unlock	7.5 A
6	Driver's Door Unlock	7.5 A
7	Door Lock Main	20 A
8	HAC Option*	10 A
9	Driver's Side Power Sliding Door Closer*	(20 A)
10	Rear Fuse Box	15 A
11	Meter	7.5 A
12	Engine Compartment Fuse Box (Passenger Side)	20 A
13	Accessory	7.5 A
14	STS*	7.5 A
15	Driver's Power Seat Sliding	20 A
16	Moonroof*	(20 A)
17	Rear Driver's Side Power Window	20 A
18	Smart Entry System*	(10 A)
19	Driver's Power Window	20 A
20	—	—

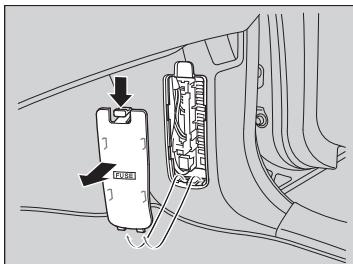
	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Fuel Pump	20 A
22	Passenger Side Fuse Box	15 A
23	VSA	7.5 A
24	ACG AS	7.5 A
25	STRLD	7.5 A
26	HAC	7.5 A
27	DRL	(7.5 A)
28	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
29	Driver's Power Seat Lumbar Support*	(7.5 A)
30	TPMS	7.5 A
31	—	—
32	Driver's Power Seat Reclining	20 A
33	Driver's Side Power Sliding Door Motor*	(40 A)
34	—	—

\* Not available on all models



## Passenger Side Fuse Box

Located on the lower side panel. Take off the cover to open.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Premium Amp*	(30 A)
2	Rear Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
3	ACM	10 A
4	—	—
5	Seat Heaters*	(15 A)
6	—	—
7	Front Passenger's Power Seat Sliding	(20 A)
8	Front Passenger's Power Seat Reclining	(20 A)
9	—	—
10	—	—
11	—	—
12	—	—
13	Passenger's Side Power Sliding Door Closer*	(20 A)
14	Rear Accessory Power Socket	15 A
15	—	—
16	—	—
17	—	—
18	Front Passenger's Power Window	20 A
19	SRS	10 A
20	ECU AS	7.5 A

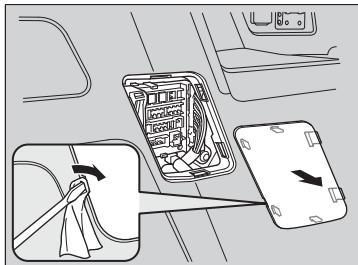
	Circuit Protected	Amps
21	Headlight Adjuster*	(7.5 A)
22	—	—
23	OPDS*	(7.5 A)
24	OPDS*	(7.5 A)
25	Illumination (Interior)	7.5 A
26	—	—
27	Front Accessory Power Socket	15 A
28	—	—



## Rear Fuse Box

Located on the left side of cargo area.  
Remove the cover by prying on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver.

► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

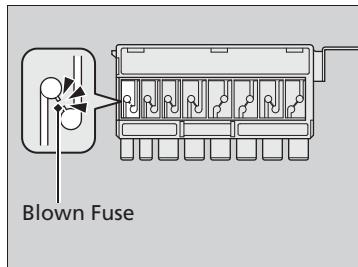
### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Power Tailgate Closer*	(20 A)
2	Trailer Small Light*	(7.5 A)
3	—	—
4	Tailgate*	(10 A)
5	Rear Driver's Side Door Lock	7.5 A
6	—	—
7	—	—
8	Trailer*	(10 A)
9	Trailer Charge*	(20 A)
10	Trailer Back Light*	(7.5 A)
11	Trailer Hazard*	(7.5 A)
12	Rear Wiper	10 A
13	ECU RR	7.5 A
14	Power Tailgate Motor*	(40 A)
15	AC Inverter*	(30 A)
16	—	—
17	—	—
18	—	—

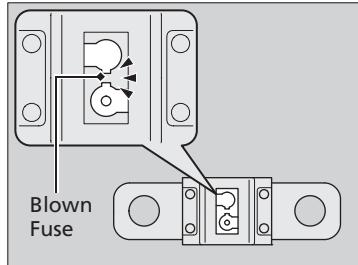
\* Not available on all models



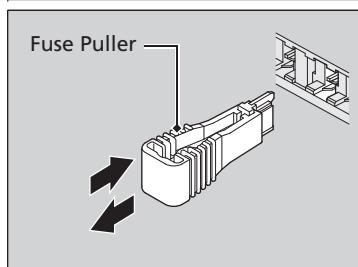
## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]<sup>\*1</sup>. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.



4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.



### ▶ Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Confirm the specified amperage using the charts on P. 533 to 537.

There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse box (passenger side).

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



# Emergency Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

### NOTICE

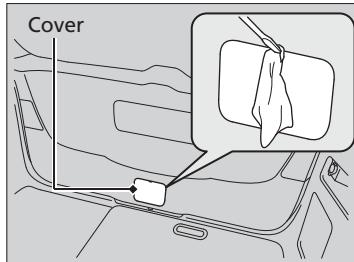
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

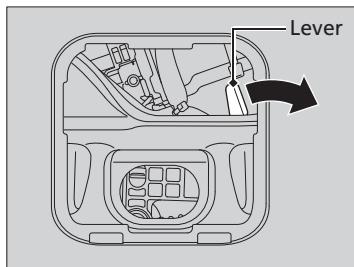


## When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate

If you cannot open or close the tailgate or power tailgate, use the following procedure.

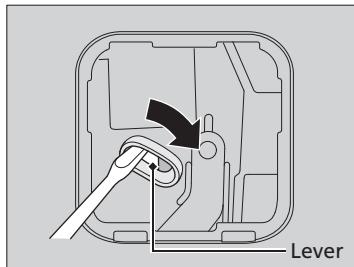


1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



**Models with power tailgate**

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right.



**Models without power tailgate**

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing down the lever with the flat-tip screwdriver.

### When You Cannot Open or Close the Tailgate

#### What to do following up

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.



# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.



<b>Specifications</b> .....	542
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number ....	544
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	545
<b>Reporting Safety Defects</b> .....	546
<b>Emissions Testing</b>	
Testing of Readiness Codes.....	547
<b>Warranty Coverages</b> .....	549
<b>Authorized Manuals</b> .....	551
<b>Customer Service Information</b> .....	552



# Specifications

## Vehicle Specifications

Model	Honda Odyssey
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	2nd Row 3 (2 <sup>nd</sup> ) 3rd Row 3
Total	8 (7 <sup>th</sup> )
Weights:	
Gross Vehicle	U.S.: 6,019 lbs (2,730 kg)
Weight Rating	Canada: 2,730 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Front)	U.S.: 2,910 lbs (1,320 kg) Canada: 1,320 kg
Gross Axle Weight Rating (Rear)	U.S.: 3,197 lbs (1,450 kg) Canada: 1,450 kg
Gross Combined Weight Rating	U.S.: 8,477 lbs (3,845 kg) Canada: 3,845 kg
Air Conditioning:	
Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	24.9 – 26.6 oz (705 – 755 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL8

\*1: LX model

## Engine Specifications

Displacement	212 cu-in (3,471 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Spark Plugs	NGK DILZKR7A11G
<b>Fuel</b>	
Fuel Type	Unleaded gasoline, Pump octane number of 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	21 US gal (79.5 ℥)
<b>Washer Fluid</b>	
Tank Capacity	U.S.: 2.6 US qt (2.5 ℥) Canada: 4.5 US qt (4.3 ℥)

## Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	35W (D2S)* 55W (H11)*
Headlights (High Beam)	60W (HB3)
Fog Lights*	55W (H11)
Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Lights	28/8W
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)*	LED
Brake Lights	21W
Rear Side Marker/Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	21W
Taillights	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	16W
Rear License Plate Lights	5W
Map Lights (Front)	5W
Map Lights (Rear)	5W
Cargo Area Light	8W
Vanity Mirror Lights	1.4W
Door Courtesy Lights	3.8W (2CP)
Glove Box Light	1.4W
Foot Light*	LED

**■ Brake Fluid**

Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3	
-----------	------------------------------------	--

**■ Automatic Transmission Fluid**

Specified	Honda Automatic Transmission Fluid ATF DW-1	
Capacity	Change	3.3 US qt (3.1 ℥)

**■ Engine Oil**

Recommended	•Genuine Honda Motor Oil 0W-20 •API Premium-grade 0W-20 detergent oil	
	Change	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℥)
Capacity	Change including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℥)

**■ Engine Coolant**

Specified	Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type2	
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
	1.93 US gal (7.3 ℥)	
Capacity	(change including the remaining 0.225 US gal (0.85 ℥) in the reserve tank)	

**■ Tire**

	Size	P235/65R17 103T
Regular	Pressure psi(kPa[kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ])	33 (230 [2.3]) 35 (240 [2.4]) <sup>*1</sup>
Compact	Size	T135/80D17 103M
Spare	Pressure psi(kPa[kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> ])	60 (420 [4.2])
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7J 18 x 7J <sup>*1</sup>
	Compact Spare	17 x 4T

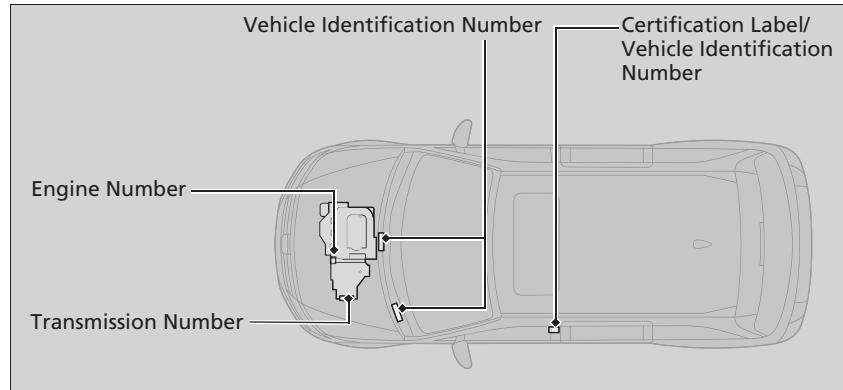
\*1: Touring models



### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.

The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.





## Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Audio System

Bluetooth® Audio

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

Immobilizer System

Parking Sensor System (Canadian models only)

Remote Transmitter

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Models with Rear Entertainment System

Rear Entertainment System Remote Control

Each of the above complies with the appropriate requirements or the required standards of FCC (Federal Communications Commission) and Industry Canada Standard, described below:

As required by the FCC:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-Gen/210/310. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.



### In the U.S.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety>.



## Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle uses "readiness codes," as part of its onboard self diagnostic system. Some states refer to these codes during testing to see if your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.

The codes may not be read if you go through the testing just after the battery has gone dead or been disconnected.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to ON **[II]**<sup>\*1</sup>, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for several seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested before the readiness codes are ready, prepare the vehicle for retesting by doing the following:

1. Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
2. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for six hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
4. Start the engine without touching the accelerator pedal, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in **[P]**. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about three minutes).
6. Let the engine idle with your foot off the accelerator for 20 seconds.

### » Testing of Readiness Codes

The readiness codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

\*1: Models with the smart entry system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



7. Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in **D**. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Park the vehicle and leave the engine off for 30 minutes.



## ■ U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

**New Vehicle Limited Warranty** – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

***Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance***

**Warranty** – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

**Seat Belt Limited Warranty** – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

**Rust Perforation Limited Warranty** – all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

**Accessory Limited Warranty** – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

**Replacement Parts Limited Warranty** – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.



**Replacement Battery Limited Warranty** – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from a dealer.

**Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty** – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

#### ■ Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.



Manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at (800) 782-4356 (credit card orders only), or online at [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

### **»»Authorized Manuals**

#### **Service Manual:**

Covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the journeyman technician, but it is simple enough for most mechanically inclined owners to understand.

#### **Electrical Troubleshooting Manual:**

Complements the Service Manual by providing in-depth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

#### **Body Repair Manual:**

Describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.

#### **For Canadian Owners:**

Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.



Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals.

They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's service manager or general manager. If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Honda Customer Services.

## **U.S. Owners:**

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.  
Honda Automobile Customer Services  
Mail Stop 500-2N-7A  
1919 Torrance Blvd.  
Torrance, CA 90501-2746  
Tel: (800) 999-1009

## **Canadian Owners:**

Honda Canada Inc.  
Customer Relations  
180 Honda Boulevard  
Markham, ON  
L6C 0H9  
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9  
Fax: 1-877-939-0909  
E-mail: [Honda\\_cr@ch.honda.com](mailto:Honda_cr@ch.honda.com)

## **In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:**

Bella International  
P.O. Box 190816  
San Juan, PR 00919-0816  
Tel: (787) 620-7546

## **Customer Service Information**

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number  
**Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),  
Engine Number and Transmission  
Number** P. 544
- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you



## A

<b>AAC</b> .....	221, 229, 252, 262
<b>ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)</b> .....	438
<b>AC Power Outlet</b> .....	185
<b>Accessories and Modifications</b> .....	450
<b>Accessory Power Sockets</b> .....	183
<b>Additives</b>	
Coolant .....	470
Engine Oil.....	465
Washer .....	474
<b>Additives, Engine Oil</b> .....	465
<b>Adjusting</b>	
Armrest .....	175
Front Seats.....	161
Head Restraints.....	164
Mirrors.....	158
Rear Seats.....	162, 169
Steering Wheel .....	157
Temperature .....	95, 98
<b>Aha™ Menu</b> .....	261
<b>Aha™ Radio</b> .....	271
<b>Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)</b> .....	198
Changing the Mode.....	198
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows.....	199
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	504
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	198
Sensors.....	203
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	198

## Air Conditioning System (Heating and Cooling System)

<b>Cooling</b> .....	196
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows .....	196
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	504
Heating .....	195

## Air Pressure

<b>491, 543</b>
-----------------

## Airbags

Advanced Airbags .....	45
Airbag Care .....	51
Event Data Recorder .....	0
Front Airbags (SRS) .....	42
Indicator .....	49, 74
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator .....	50
Sensors.....	39
Side Airbags .....	46
Side Curtain Airbags .....	48

## AM/FM Radio

<b>218, 245</b>	
<b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> .....	438
Indicator .....	73

## Armrest

<b>175</b>
------------

## Audio Remote Controls

<b>210</b>
------------

## Audio System

Adjusting the Sound .....	216, 237, 243
Auxiliary Input Jack .....	207
Error Messages .....	267
General Information .....	272
Internet Radio.....	227, 259
iPod.....	224, 255
MP3/WMA/AAC .....	221, 229, 252, 262

Reactivating .....

208

Recommended CDs.....

273

Recommended Devices.....

275

Remote Controls .....

210

Security Code.....

208

Shortcuts.....

236

Theft Protection .....

208

Touch Screen .....

235

USB Flash Drives.....

275

USB Port.....

207

## Audio with Touch Screen

**235**

## Authorized Manuals

551

## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

120

    Customize.....

103, 307, 317

## Automatic Lighting

148

## Automatic Transmission

412

    Creeping .....

412

    Fluid .....

472

    Kickdown.....

412

    Operating the Shift Lever.....

18, 414

    Shift Lever Does Not Move .....

525

    Shifting .....

413

## Auxiliary Input Jack

207

## Average Fuel Economy

94, 97

## Average Speed

98

## B

## Battery

499

    Charging System Indicator.....

72, 528

    Jump Starting.....

523



Maintenance (Checking the Battery) .....	499
Maintenance (Replacing).....	500, 502
<b>Belts (Seat) .....</b>	<b>30</b>
Beverage Holders.....	181
<b>Blind Spot Information (BSI) System.....</b>	<b>432</b>
<i>Bluetooth® Audio .....</i>	<i>232, 265</i>
<i>Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® .....</i>	<i>327, 360</i>
<b>Booster Seats (For Children).....</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>Brake System.....</b>	<b>436</b>
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	438
Brake Assist System .....	439
Fluid .....	473
Foot Brake .....	437
Indicator .....	70, 530
Parking Brake .....	436
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) .....</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>BSI (Blind Spot Information) System.....</b>	<b>432</b>
<b>Bulb Replacement.....</b>	<b>475</b>
Back-Up/Taillight.....	483
Brake Light, Rear Side Marker/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Lights .....	481
Fog Lights.....	479
Front Turn Signal/Parking/Side Marker Lights.....	480
Headlights .....	475
High-Mount Brake Light .....	485
Rear License Plate Lights .....	484
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights.....	480
<b>Bulb Specifications.....</b>	<b>542</b>

## C

<b>Carbon Monoxide Gas .....</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>Cargo Hooks .....</b>	<b>186</b>
<b>Carrying Cargo .....</b>	<b>397, 399</b>
<b>CD Player.....</b>	<b>221, 252</b>
<b>Center Pocket .....</b>	<b>180</b>
<b>Certification Label.....</b>	<b>544</b>
<b>Changing Bulbs .....</b>	<b>475</b>
<b>Charging System Indicator.....</b>	<b>72, 528</b>
<b>Child Safety.....</b>	<b>52</b>
Childproof Door Locks.....	119
<b>Child Seat.....</b>	<b>52</b>
Booster Seats .....	65
Child Seat for Infants.....	54
Child Seat for Small Children.....	55
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	60
Larger Children .....	64
Rear-facing Child Seat .....	54
Selecting a Child Seat .....	56
Using a Tether.....	62
<b>Childproof Door Locks .....</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>Cleaning the Exterior .....</b>	<b>507</b>
<b>Cleaning the Interior .....</b>	<b>505</b>
<b>Climate Control System.....</b>	<b>198</b>
Changing the Mode .....	198
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows .....	199
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	504
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode .....	198
Sensors .....	203
<b>Using Automatic Climate Control.....</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>Clock .....</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>Coat Hooks .....</b>	<b>186</b>
<b>Compact Spare Tire.....</b>	<b>511, 543</b>
<b>Compass.....</b>	<b>392</b>
<b>Controls .....</b>	<b>107</b>
<b>Coolant (Engine) .....</b>	<b>470</b>
Adding to the Radiator .....	471
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	470
Overheating.....	526
Temperature Gauge .....	92
<b>Creeping (Automatic Transmission).....</b>	<b>412</b>
<b>Cruise Control .....</b>	<b>415</b>
Indicator .....	82
<b>Cup Holders .....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>Customer Service Information .....</b>	<b>552</b>
<b>Customized Features .....</b>	<b>99, 295</b>

## D

<b>Daytime Running Lights .....</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>Dead Battery .....</b>	<b>523</b>
<b>Defrosting the Windshield and Windows .....</b>	<b>196, 199</b>
<b>Detachable Anchor .....</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....</b>	<b>545</b>
<b>Dimming .....</b>	
Headlights .....	147
Rearview Mirror .....	158
<b>Dipstick (Engine Oil) .....</b>	<b>466</b>
<b>Directional Signals (Turn Signal) .....</b>	<b>147</b>



Display Button	212, 238
Door Mirrors	159
Doors	110
Auto Door Locking	120
Auto Door Unlocking	120
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator	29, 75
Keys	110
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	118
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside	113
Lockout Prevention System	117
DOT Tire Quality Grading	493
Driving	395
Automatic Transmission	412
Braking	436
Cruise Control	415
Shifting Gear	413
Starting the Engine	407, 409
Driving Position Memory System	155
Dust and Pollen Filter	504

## E

Elapsed Time	97
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	426
Emergency	539
Emergency Engine Stop	522
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes)	547
Engine	544
Coolant	470

Jump Starting	523
Oil	465
Starting	407, 409
Switch Buzzer	142
Engine Coolant	470
Adding to the Radiator	471
Adding to the Reserve Tank	470
Overheating	526
Temperature Gauge	92
Engine Oil	465
Adding	467
Checking	466
Displaying Oil Life	455, 459
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	71, 528
Recommended Engine Oil	465
ENGINE START/STOP Button	143
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)	66
Expanded View Driver's Mirror	160
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	507
Exterior Mirrors	159

## F

Features	205
Filters	
Dust and Pollen	504
Oil	468
Flat Tire	511
Flip-up Trash Bag Ring	179
Floor Mats	506

## Fluids

Automatic Transmission	472
Brake	473
Engine Coolant	470
Power Steering	474
Windshield Washer	474
Fog Light Indicator	78
Folding Down the Rear Seats	162, 173
Foot Brake	437
Forward Collision Warning (FCW)	418
Front Airbags (SRS)	42
Front Seats	161
Adjusting	161
Fuel	19, 446
Economy	449
Gauge	92
Instant Fuel Economy	94, 97
Low Fuel Indicator	73
Range	94, 97
Recommendation	446
Refueling	446
Fuel Economy	449
Fuel Fill Cap	19, 448
Message	529
Fuel Fill Door	19, 447
Fuses	533
Inspecting and Changing	538
Locations	533, 534, 535, 536, 537

**G****Gasoline (Fuel)**

Economy .....	449
Gauge .....	92
Information .....	446
Instant Fuel Economy .....	94, 97
Low Fuel Indicator .....	73
Refueling .....	446
<b>Gauges</b> .....	92
<b>Gear Shift Lever Positions</b>	
Automatic Transmission .....	413
<b>Glass (care)</b> .....	508
<b>Glove Box</b> .....	178
<b>Grocery Bag Hooks</b> .....	187

**H**

<b>Halogen Bulbs</b> .....	475, 479
<b>Handling the Unexpected</b> .....	509
<b>HandsFreeLink® (HFL)</b> .....	327, 360
Auto Answer .....	342, 374
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History .....	344, 376
Automatic Transferring .....	342, 374
Displaying E-mails .....	389
Displaying Text Messages .....	356, 388
HFL Buttons .....	327, 360
HFL Menus .....	329, 362
HFL Status Display .....	328, 361
Limitations for Manual Operation .....	328, 361
Making a Call .....	348, 380

Options During a Call .....	354, 385
Phone Setup .....	334, 366
Receiving a Call .....	353, 384
Receiving a Text Message .....	355
Receiving a Text Message/E-mail .....	386
Ring Tone .....	343, 375
Selecting a Mail Account .....	387
Speed Dial .....	345, 377
To Create a Security PIN .....	341, 373
To Set Up a Text Message Options .....	339
To Set Up a Text Message/E-mail Options .....	371
Use Contact Photo .....	375
<b>Hazard Warning Button</b> .....	4
<b>Head Restraints</b> .....	164
<b>Headlights</b> .....	147
Aiming .....	475
Automatic Operation .....	148
Dimming .....	147, 150
Operating .....	147
<b>Heaters (Seat)</b> .....	189
<b>Heating and Cooling System</b> .....	194
Cooling .....	196
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows .....	196
Dust and Pollen Filter .....	504
Heating .....	195
<b>HFL (HandsFreeLink®)</b> .....	327, 360
<b>High Beam Indicator</b> .....	77
<b>HondaVAC™</b> .....	191

**I**

<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Engine and Transmission .....	544
Vehicle Identification .....	544
<b>Ignition Switch</b> .....	142
<b>Illumination Control</b> .....	153
Knob .....	153
<b>Immobilizer System</b> .....	135
Indicator .....	78
<b>Indicators</b> .....	70
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	73
Brake System (Amber) .....	70
BSI (Blind Spot Information) System .....	83
Charging System .....	72, 528
CRUISE CONTROL .....	82, 416
CRUISE MAIN .....	82, 415
Daytime Running Lights .....	75
Door and Tailgate Open .....	29, 75
Fog Light .....	78
Forward Collision Warning (FCW) .....	80
Fuel Economy .....	82
Hazard Warning .....	77
High Beam .....	77
Immobilizer System .....	78
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) .....	81
Lights On .....	77
Low Fuel .....	73
Low Oil Pressure .....	71, 528
Low Tire Pressure .....	76, 428
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS .....	76, 428, 429
Maintenance Minder .....	82, 455



Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	71, 529
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) .....	70, 530
Parking Sensor .....	75
Power Sliding Door .....	83
Power Tailgate .....	82
Seat Belt Reminder .....	31, 73
Security System Alarm .....	79
Shift Lever Position .....	72
Smart Entry System .....	79
Starter System .....	79
Supplemental Restraint System .....	49, 74
System Message .....	77
TPMS .....	76, 430
Transmission .....	72
Turn Signal .....	77
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) System .....	74, 426
VSA® OFF .....	74, 427
Washer Level .....	82
Information .....	541
Information Button .....	96
Information Display .....	93
Instant Fuel Economy .....	94, 97
Instrument Panel .....	69
Brightness Control .....	153
Integrated Sunshades .....	190
Interface Dial .....	234
Interior Lights .....	176
Interior Rearview Mirror .....	158

## J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) .....	514
Jump Starting .....	523

## K

Key Number Tag .....	111
Keyless Lockout Prevention .....	117
Keys .....	110
Lockout Prevention .....	117
Master Keys .....	110
Number Tag .....	111
Rear Door Won't Open .....	119
Remote Transmitter .....	113
Types and Functions .....	110
Valet Key .....	111
Won't Turn .....	22
Kickdown (Automatic Transmission) .....	412

## L

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) .....	422
LaneWatch™ .....	434
Language (HFL) .....	328, 361
LATCH (Child Seats) .....	57
Lights .....	147, 475
Automatic .....	148
Bulb Replacement .....	475
Daytime Running Lights .....	150
Fog Lights .....	150
High Beam Indicator .....	77

Interior .....	176
Light Switches .....	147
Lights On Indicator .....	77
Turn Signals .....	147
Load Limits .....	399
Locking/Unlocking .....	110
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking .....	120
Childproof Door Locks .....	119
From Inside .....	118
From Outside .....	113
Keys .....	110
Using a Key .....	117
Lockout Prevention System .....	117
Low Battery Charge .....	528
Low Fuel Indicator .....	73
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	71, 528
Low Smart Entry Remote Signal Strength .....	112
Lower Anchors .....	57
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) .....	399

## M

Maintenance .....	451
Battery .....	499
Brake Fluid .....	473
Cleaning .....	505
Climate Control System .....	504
Coolant .....	470
Heating and Cooling System .....	504
Maintenance Minder™ .....	455



Oil	466
Power Steering Fluid	474
Precautions	452
Radiator	471
Remote Control and Wireless Headphone	502
Remote Transmitter	500
Replacing Light Bulbs	475
Safety	453
Service Items	457, 461
Tires	490
Transmission Fluid	472
Under the Hood	463
<b>Malfunction Indicator Lamp</b>	71, 529
Map Lights	177
Maximum Load Limit	399
Meters, Gauges	92
Mirrors	158
Adjusting	158
Door	159
Exterior	159
Interior Rearview	158
Modifications (and Accessories)	450
Moonroof	141
MP3	221, 229, 252, 262
Multi-Information Display	96

## N

Numbers (Identification)	544
--------------------------	-----

## O

Odometer	93, 97
Oil (Engine)	465
Adding	467
Checking	466
Displaying Oil Life	455, 459
Low Oil Pressure Indicator	71, 528
Recommended Engine Oil	465
Viscosity	465
<b>Opening/Closing</b>	
Hood	464
Moonroof	141
Power Windows	138
Sliding Doors	127
Tailgate	121
Outside Temperature Display	95, 98
Overheating	526

## P

Pandora®	228, 260
Panic Mode	137
Parking	440
Parking Brake	436
<b>Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator</b>	70
Parking Sensor System	441
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator	50
Passing Indicators	147
Power Sliding Doors	129
Power Tailgate	123
<b>Power Windows</b>	138
<b>Precautions While Driving</b>	411
Rain	411
<b>Pregnant Women</b>	37
<b>Puncture (Tire)</b>	511
<b>R</b>	
Radiator	471
Radio (AM/FM)	218, 245
Radio (SiriusXM®)	249
Radio Data System (RDS)	219, 247
Range	94, 97
RDS (Radio Data System)	219, 247
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing)	547
<b>Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button</b>	154
Rear Entertainment System	276
Rear Seats (Folding Down)	162, 173
Rearview Camera	445
Rearview Mirror	158
<b>Refueling</b>	446
Fuel Gauge	92
Gasoline	446, 542
Low Fuel Indicator	73
<b>Regulations</b>	429, 493, 545
<b>Remote Transmitter</b>	113
Removable Center Console	178
Removing a Second Row Outer Seat	170
Removing the Second Row Center Seat	172



<b>Replacement</b>	
Battery	500, 502
Bulbs	475
Fuses	533, 534, 535, 536, 537
Tires	496
Wiper Blade Rubber	486
<b>Reporting Safety Defects</b>	546
<b>Resetting a Trip Meter</b>	94, 97

## S

<b>Safe Driving</b>	25
<b>Safety Check</b>	29
<b>Safety Labels</b>	67
<b>Safety Message</b>	1
<b>Seat Belts</b>	30
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor	34
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners	32
Checking	38
Detachable Anchor	35
Fastening	33
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	60
Pregnant Women	37
Reminder	31
Warning Indicator	31, 73
<b>Seat Heaters</b>	189
<b>Seats</b>	161
Adjusting	161
Front Seats	161
Rear Seats	169

<b>Seat Heaters</b>	189
<b>Security System</b>	135
Immobilizer System Indicator	78
Security System Alarm Indicator	79
<b>SEL/RESET Button</b>	96
<b>Select Lever</b>	18, 413
Operation	18, 414
Releasing	525
Won't Move	525
<b>Select/Reset Knob</b>	93
<b>Selecting a Child Seat</b>	56
<b>Selector Knob (Audio)</b>	211
<b>Shift Lever</b>	18, 413
<b>Shift Lever Position Indicator</b>	72, 414
<b>Shifting (Transmission)</b>	413
<b>Shoulder Anchor</b>	34
<b>Side Airbags</b>	46
<b>Side Curtain Airbags</b>	48
<b>Sliding Doors</b>	127
Power Sliding Doors	129
<b>Sliding the Second Row Outer Seats</b>	
Outward	171
<b>Smart Entry with Push Button Start</b>	
System	115
<b>Snow Tires</b>	498
<b>Spare Tire</b>	511, 543
<b>Spark Plugs</b>	542
<b>Specifications</b>	542
<b>Specified Fuel</b>	446, 542
<b>Speedometer</b>	92
<b>SRS Airbags (Airbags)</b>	42
<b>Starting the Engine</b>	407, 409
Does Not Start	520
Engine Switch Buzzer	142
Jump Starting	523
<b>Steering Wheel</b>	157
Adjusting	157
<b>Stopping</b>	440
<b>Summer Tires</b>	498
<b>Sunglasses Holder</b>	188
<b>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)</b>	42
<b>Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)</b>	4, 5, 142
<b>System Message Indicator</b>	77
<b>T</b>	
<b>Tachometer</b>	92
<b>Tailgate</b>	121
Unable to Open	540
<b>Temperature</b>	
Gauge	92
Outside Temperature Display	95, 98
<b>Temperature Gauge</b>	92
<b>Temperature Sensor</b>	95, 98, 203
<b>Third Row Seat Access</b>	169
<b>Time (Adjusting)</b>	108
<b>Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</b>	428
Indicator	76, 531, 532
<b>Tires</b>	490
Air Pressure	491, 543



Checking and Maintaining .....	490
Inspection .....	490
Labeling .....	491
Puncture (Flat Tire) .....	511
Regulations .....	493
Rotation .....	497
Spare Tire .....	511, 543
Summer .....	498
Tire Chains .....	498
Wear Indicators .....	495
Winter .....	498
<b>Tools .....</b>	<b>510</b>
<b>Towing a Trailer .....</b>	<b>401</b>
Equipment and Accessories .....	402
Load Limits .....	401
<b>Towing Your Vehicle .....</b>	<b>406</b>
Emergency .....	539
<b>TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) .....</b>	<b>428</b>
Indicator .....	76, 531, 532
<b>Transmission .....</b>	<b>413</b>
Automatic .....	412
Fluid .....	472
Number .....	544
Shift Lever Position Indicator .....	72, 414
<b>Trip Meter .....</b>	<b>94, 97</b>
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>509</b>
Blown Fuse .....	533, 534, 535, 536, 537
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	22
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	23
Emergency Towing .....	539

Engine Won't Start .....	520
Noise When Braking .....	23
Overheating .....	526
Puncture/Flat Tire .....	511
Select Lever Won't Move .....	525
Sliding Door Won't Open .....	23, 119
Warning Indicators .....	70
<b>Tucking away the One-Motion Third row magic Seat .....</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>Turn Signals .....</b>	<b>147</b>
Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	77
<b>U</b>	
<b>Unlocking the Doors .....</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside .....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>USB Flash Drives .....</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>USB Port .....</b>	<b>207</b>
<b>Using the Smart Entry with Push Button Start System .....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>V</b>	
<b>Vacuum .....</b>	<b>191</b>
<b>Valet Key .....</b>	<b>111</b>
<b>Vanity Mirrors .....</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Vehicle Identification Number .....</b>	<b>544</b>
<b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®) .....</b>	<b>426</b>
Off Button .....	427
Off Indicator .....	74

System Indicator .....	74
<b>Ventilation .....</b>	<b>194, 198</b>
<b>Viscosity (Oil) .....</b>	<b>465, 543</b>
<b>VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist) .....</b>	<b>426</b>

## W

<b>Warning and Information Messages ..</b>	<b>84, 86</b>
<b>Warning Indicator On/Blinking .....</b>	<b>528</b>
<b>Warning Labels .....</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) .....</b>	<b>549</b>
<b>Watts .....</b>	<b>542</b>
<b>Wear Indicators (Tire) .....</b>	<b>495</b>
<b>Wheel Cover .....</b>	<b>515</b>
<b>Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) .....</b>	<b>514</b>
<b>Window Washers .....</b>	<b>151</b>
Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	474
Switch .....	151
<b>Windows (Opening and Closing) .....</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>Windshield .....</b>	<b>151</b>
Cleaning .....	508
Defrosting .....	196, 199
Washer Fluid .....	474
Wiper Blades .....	486
Wipers and Washers .....	151
<b>Winter Tires .....</b>	<b>498</b>
Snow Tires .....	498
Tire Chains .....	498



<b>Wipers and Washers .....</b>	151
Checking and Replacing the Rear Wiper	
Blade .....	488
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades.....	486
<b>WMA.....</b>	221, 229, 252, 262
<b>Worn Tires.....</b>	490





